

A Student Grammar of Euskara

**Jon D. Patrick &
Ilari Zubiri Ibarondo**

LINCOM EUROPA

LINCOM Student Grammars 01

All correspondence concerning *LINCOM Student Grammars* should be addressed to:

LINCOM EUROPA
Freibadstr. 3
D-81543 Muenchen

LINCOM.EUROPA@t-online.de
<http://home.t-online.de/home/LINCOM.EUROPA>
www.lincom-europa.com

All rights reserved, including the rights of translation into any foreign language. No part of this book may be reproduced in any way without the permission of the publisher.

Printed in E. C.

Printed on chlorine-free paper

Die Deutsche Bibliothek - CIP Cataloguing-in-Publication-Data

A catalogue record for this publication is available from Die Deutsche Bibliothek (<http://www.ddb.de>)

ISBN 3 89586 444 7

PREFACE.....	xvii
--------------	------

INTRODUCTION.....	xix
-------------------	-----

OBJECTIVES OF THE BOOK	xix
STRUCTURE OF THE BOOK.....	xix
UNIFIED EUSKARA - BATUA AND THE DIALECTS	xx
A BRIEF HISTORY OF WRITTEN EUSKARA.....	xxi
HOW TO USE THIS GRAMMAR.....	xxi
OTHER SOURCE MATERIAL ON EUSKARA.....	xxiii

I. PHONETICS - Fonetika..... 1

1.1 ORTHOGRAPHY AND PRONUNCIATION - Ortografia eta Ahoskera.3

1.1.1 THE ALPHABET - Alfabetoa.....	3
1.1.2 VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS - Bokalak Eta Diptongoak.....	4
1.1.3 OTHER CONSONANTS - Beste Konsonanteak	4
1.1.4 THE PRONUNCIATION OF "G" - « G »Ren Hotsaren Ahoskera	4
1.1.5 THE PRONUNCIATION OF "J" - « J »Ren Hotsaren Ahoskera	4
1.1.6 THE PRONUNCIATION OF "S", "Z", AND "X" - « S », « Z », Eta « X »Ren Hotsen Ahoskera	5
1.1.7 PRONUNCIATION OF "R" - « R »Ren Hotsaren Ahoskera	5
1.1.8 PALATAL CONSONANTS - Kontsonante Sabaikariak	6
1.1.9 USE OF THE LETTER "H" - « H » Letraren Erabilera.....	6
1.1.10 THE PARTICLE "EZ" - «Ez » Partikula	10
1.1.11 BORROWED WORDS - Maileguak.....	11
1.1.12 PHONETICS - Fonetika	12

1.2 WORD ACCENT - Azentua13

1.2.1 GENERAL RULES - Arau Orokorrak	13
1.2.2 THE PLURAL - Plurala	14
1.2.3 VERBS - Aditzak.....	14
1.2.4 STRESSED WORDS - Hitz Markatuak.....	15

II. INTRODUCTION TO MORPHOLOGY

- Morfologiari Sarrera 17

2.1 WORDS of EUSKARA - Hitz-motak Euskaraz.....19

2.2 NOUNS - Izenak.....19

2.3 ADJECTIVES - Adjektiboak.....21

2.3.1 Participles - Partizipioak	21
--	----

2.4 PERSONAL PRONOUNS - Pertsona Izenordainak.....22

2.5 THE ARTICLE - Artikulua	23
2.5.1 THE DEFINITE ARTICLE - Artikulu Zehaztua	23
2.5.2 INDEFINITE ARTICLE - Artikulu Zehaztugabea	24
2.6 DEMONSTRATIVES - Erakusleak	26
2.7 SIMPLE SENTENCES - Esaldiak	28
2.7.1 FOCUS - Galdegaia	28
2.7.2 TOPIC.....	29
2.8 ADVERBS - Adberbioak	30
2.9 NUMERALS - Zenbakiak	31
2.9.1 CARDINALS - Kardinalak	31
2.9.2 ORDINALS - Ordinalak.....	32
2.10 INDEFINITE DETERMINANTS - Mugatzaile Zehaztugabeak	33
2.11 INTERROGATIVES - Galdetzaileak	35
III. DECLENSION - Deklinabidea	37
3.1 INTRODUCTION - Sarrera	39
3.1.1 DECLENSION CASES - Deklinabide Kasuak	39
3.1.2 WORD ORDER - Hitzen Ordena	40
3.1.3 NUMBER - Numeroa	40
3.1.4 THE INDEFINITE CASE - Mugagabea	41
3.1.4.1 PROPER NOUNS - Izen Bereziak	41
3.1.5 INTERROGATIVES: WHAT, WHICH, HOW MANY, HOW MUCH	
- Galdetzaileak: ZER, ZEIN, ZENBAT	42
3.1.5.1 NUMBERS - Zenbakiak	42
3.1.5.2 SOME INDEFINITE EXPRESSIONS - Zenbait Esapide	
Mugagabe	43
3.1.5.3 SPECIAL CASES - Kasu Bereziak	43
3.1.6 CLOSE PROXIMITY - Plural Hurbila	44
3.1.7 ANIMATES / INANIMATES - Bizidunak/Bizigabeak	45
3.1.8 MORPHOLOGY OF COMPOSITION - Hitz Elkarketa	46
3.1.8.1 -AU diphthong - AU diptongoa	46
3.1.8.2 Words ending in -R	47
3.1.9 WORDS ENDING IN “-A” - <<A>>Z Amaitutako Hitzak	47
3.1.9.1 ORGANIC -A	48
3.1.9.2 BORROWINGS.....	48
3.1.9.3 SUFFIXES - Atzizkiak	49
3.1.9.4 PROPER NOUNS	49
3.2 DECLENSION CASES - Deklinebide Kasuak	50
3.2.1 NOR (ABSOLUTIBOA) - WHO (ABSOLUTIVE)	51
3.2.2 PARTITIVE - PARTITIBOA.....	53
3.2.2.1 Negative Sentences - Ezezko Perpausak.....	53
3.2.2.2 Interrogative Sentences - Galde Perpausak.....	54

3.2.2.3 Other cases - Beste Kasuak	54
3.2.2.4 Partitive <i>is not</i> NOR	54
3.2.3 NORK (Ergatiboa) - WHO (Ergative).....	56
3.2.4 NORI (DATIBOA) - TO WHOM, FOR WHOM, FROM WHOM (DATIVE).....	58
3.2.5 NOREN - WHOSE (Possessive-Genitive)	60
3.2.6 NORENTZAT - FOR WHOM (Benefactive)	64
3.2.7 NOREKIN - WITH WHO(M) (Comitative)	66
3.2.8 ZERTAZ/ZEREZ - ABOUT WHAT, BY MEANS OF WHAT (Instrumental).....	68
3.2.9 WHERE (Inessive) - NON	72
3.2.10 NONDIK - FROM WHERE, THROUGH WHERE, SINCE WHEN (Ablative).....	74
3.2.11 NORA - TO WHERE (Allative).....	76
3.2.12 NORANTZ - TOWARDS (Directional).....	78
3.2.13 NORAINO - UP TO WHERE, AS FAR AS WHERE (Terminative).....	80
3.2.14 NONGO - OF WHERE, FROM WHERE (Locative-Genitive).....	82
3.2.14.1 NONGO/NONDIK	84
3.2.14.2 NONGO/NOREN	84
3.2.14.3 USING -KO AND NOT USING -KO	85
3.2.15 NORAKO - FOR WHERE, FOR WHAT PURPOSE (Destinative).....	86
3.2.16 NORENGAN - WHERE (for animates - bizidunentzat) (Inessive/Locative).....	88
3.2.17 NORENGANDIK - FROM WHOM(for animates - bizidunentzat) (Ablative).....	90
3.2.18 NORENGANA - TO WHOM (for animates - bizidunentzat) (Allative).....	92
3.2.19 NORENGANANTZ - TOWARDS WHOM (for animates - bizidunentzat) (Directional)	94
3.2.20 NORENGAINO - UP TO WHOM (for animates - bizidunentzat) (Terminative).....	96
3.2.21 NORENGATIK - FOR WHOM (Causal)	97
3.2.22 NORTZAT - AS (SOMETHING ELSE), FOR (SOMETHING ELSE), TO BE (SOMETHING ELSE), AS BEING (SOMETHING ELSE) (Essive/Translative)	100

3.3 SUMMARY - Laburpena102

IV. MORPHOLOGY - Morfologia 105

4.1 HOW/ WHAT IT'S LIKE - NOLA/NOLAKO(A/AK)107

4.1.1 HOW - NOLA (ZELAN).....	107
4.1.1.1 ADVERBS - Adberbioak.....	107
4.1.1.2 PARTICIPLES - Partizipioak	108
4.1.1.3 ADJECTIVES - Adjektiboak.....	110
4.1.1.4 OTHER FORMS - Beste Formak	111
4.1.2 HOW, WHAT SORT OF - NOLAKO (ZELAKO).....	111
4.1.3 NOLA <i>is not</i> NOLAKO.....	112
4.1.4 HOW IS IT?/ WHAT IS IT LIKE? - ZER MODUZ? / ZER MODUZKO (A/AK)?	114

4.2 INTENSIFIERS - OSO, NAHIKO, SAMAR...	116
4.2.1 NAHIKO (ASKI) - QUITE, ENOUGH, SUFFICIENTLY, RATHER, FAIRLY	116
4.2.2 SAMAR - SOMEWHAT, QUITE, A LITTLE, RATHER	117
4.2.3 DEXENTE (SANO) - QUITE, ENOUGH	118
4.2.4 OSO, BIZIKI - VERY	119
4.2.5 IZUGARRI (IKARAGARRI, ITZEL) - TREMENDOUS, EXTREMELY	119
4.2.6 ERABAT, ARRAS, ARRUNT, TXIT; BATERE - COMPLETELY; ABSOLUTELY, NOT AT ALL	120
4.2.7 GUZTIZ (ZEHARO), ARRUNT - COMPLETELY, TOTALLY, ENTIRELY	120
4.2.8 TXIKI - TXIKIA - Repetition & Emphasis - Very, Very Small	121
4.2.9 alfer HUTSA - TOTALLY, UTTERLY, NOTHING BUT (he's nothing)	122
4.3 ONE; SOME - BAT; BATZUK	124
4.3.1 BAT - A, AN	124
4.3.2 BATZUK -SOME, SEVERAL, A FEW	125
4.3.3 -(R)EN BAT , -(R)EN BATZUK -ANY, SOME	126
4.4 OTHER / ANOTHER - BESTEA / BESTE BAT	127
4.5 POSTPOSITIONS - Posposizioak	129
4.5.1 GABE (BARIK) - WITHOUT, LESS, UN-	130
4.5.2 GAINEAN; AZPIAN - ON, ON TOP OF, ABOUT; UNDER, UNDERNEATH	130
4.5.3 AURREAN; ATZEAN, OSTEAN - IN FRONT OF; BEHIND, BACK	132
4.5.4 ONDOAN (ALBOAN, ALDAMENEAN) - NEXT TO, BESIDE	132
4.5.5 BARRUAN, BARNEAN; KANPOAN, AT - INSIDE; OUTSIDE, OUT OF	133
4.5.6 ARTEAN - IN BETWEEN, AMONG	134
4.5.7 ZEREN ALDE, -ALDE; KONTRA, AURKA - WHAT SIDE, IN FAVOUR OF; AGAINST, IN FRONT OF	135
4.5.8 ZEREN BIDEZ (BITARTEZ) - THROUGH, BY WAY OF	136
4.5.9 ZEREN ZAIN - WAIT FOR, WAITING FOR	136
4.5.10 ZEREN BILA - SEARCH FOR, LOOK FOR, SEEK, LOOKING FOR	136
4.5.11 ZEREN ARABERA - ACCORDING TO, DEPENDING ON	137
4.5.12 NON ZEHAR - ACROSS, BY, BESIDE, OVER, THROUGH, THROUGHOUT, VIA, DURING	137
4.5.13 ZERI BURUZ - WHAT ABOUT ..., ON	138
4.5.14 ZERI ESKER - THANKS TO	139
4.5.15 NOREN KONTURA (aldetik, kasa, kabuz) - ON OWN ACCOUNT, UP TO ME, ON OWN ACCORD, BY OWN MEANS	139
4.5.16 NOREN ESKU - IN THE HANDS OF, IN WHOM, IN THE CARE OF	140
4.5.17 NOREN INGURUAN - AROUND, NEARBY, SURROUND	140
4.5.18 NOREN MENPEAN - UNDER THE COMMAND OF, DOMINATION	141
4.5.19 ZEREN TRUKE - INSTEAD OF, FOR	141
4.5.20 NON GORA; NON BEHERA - UP; DOWN	142

4.6 USES OF ERE - ERE-ren Erabilera	144
4.6.1 ERE - ALSO	144
4.6.2 ERE BAI / ERE EZ; BAITA... ERE / EZTA...ERE - TOO, AS WELL.....	145
4.6.3 BAITA / EZTA - AS WELL, NEITHER	145
4.6.4 OTHER USES OF ERE.....	146

4.7 SOMEONE; SOMEBODY; WHOEVER - INOR; NORBAIT;	
EDONOR	148
4.7.1 INOR; INOR EZ - SOMEONE; NO-ONE.....	148
4.7.1.1 INONGO, INOLAKO - NO, NONE OF	149
4.7.2 NORBAIT (NOR EDO NOR) - SOMEBODY, SOMEONE.....	149
4.7.3 EDONOR (NORNAHI, NORGURA) - ANYONE.....	152

4.8 COUNTABLE NOUNS, MEASURABLE NOUNS - ASKO is not	
HANDIA	155

4.9 INTENSIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS - Pertsona-Izenordain	
Indartuak	159
4.9.1 I MYSELF - NI / NEU	159
4.9.2 MINE, MY OWN - NIRE / NEURE	160
4.9.3 HER'S, HIS, ITS - HAREN / BERE / BERAREN	161
4.9.4 VARIOUS OTHER USES - Beste Zenbait Erabilera	162
4.9.4.1 I PERSONALLY - NIK NEUK.....	162
4.9.4.2 ALSO, NOT EVEN I - NEUK ERE	162
4.9.4.3 REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	163
4.9.5 RECIPROCAL PRONOUN - ELKAR.....	163

4.10 AFFIXES - Atzizkiak	165
4.10.1 SUFFIXES	165
4.10.1.1 DIMINUTIVES.....	165
4.10.1.2 NOUN AND ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES	165
4.10.1.3 VERB SUFFIXES.....	166
4.10.1.4 ADVERB SUFFIXES	167
4.10.2 PREFIXES	167
4.10.3 PSUEDO SUFFIXES	168

4.11 COMPOUND WORDS - Hitz Elkartuak	169
4.11.1 FIRST ELEMENTS.....	169
4.11.1.1 VOWELS	169
4.11.1.2 CONSONANTS.....	170
4.11.2 SECOND ELEMENTS.....	171
4.11.3 COMPOUNDS with NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	171
4.11.4 COMPOUNDS WITH VERBS	172

V. THE VERB - Aditza

5.1 THE VERB OF EUSKARA - Euskal Aditza	175
5.1.1 PERIPHRASTIC VERBS - Adizki Perifrastikoak	176
5.1.2 SYNTHETIC VERBS - Adizki Trinkoak	176

5.2 ASPECT - Aspektua	177
5.2.1 ETORRI - IMPERATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, POTENTIAL.....	177
5.2.2 ETORRI - NEAR PAST	177
5.2.3 ETORTZEN - HABITUAL	178
5.2.4 ETORRIKO - FUTURE	179
5.2.5 ETORRIA - PERFECT	180
5.3 THE AUXILIARY VERB - Aditz Laguntzailea	182
5.3.1 PERSON - Pertsona	185
5.3.2 TIIE IMPERSONAL - Inpertsionala	185
5.3.3 NUMBER/AMOUNT - Numeroa	186
5.3.3.1 Asko DAGO / asko DAUDE	186
5.3.3.2 ETA - AND	186
5.3.3.3 BALIO IZAN	186
5.3.3.4 JAN, GOSALDU, BAZKALDU, AFALDU	187
5.3.3.5 PARE BAT	187
5.3.4 TENSE - Aldia	187
5.3.5 MODE - Modua	188
5.4 INDICATIVE - Indikatiboa	189
5.4.1 INDICATIVE : PRESENT - Indikitibozko Orainaldia	191
5.4.1.1 NOR (izan)	192
5.4.1.2 NOR-NORI (izan)	192
5.4.1.3 NOR-NORK (ukan)	194
5.4.1.4 NOR-NORI-NORK (ukan)	195
5.4.2 INDICATIVE: PAST - Indikatibozko Lehenaldia	197
5.4.2.1 NOR (izan)	199
5.4.2.2 NOR-NORI (izan)	199
5.4.2.3 NOR-NORK (ukan)	200
5.4.2.4 NOR-NORI-NORK (ukan)	201
5.5 POTENTIAL - Ahalera	203
5.6 IMPERATIVE - Agintera	207
5.6.1 THE PARTICIPLE - ETORRI	207
5.6.2 PERIPHRASTIC FORM - ETOR ZAITEZ	208
5.6.3 SYNTHETIC FORM - ZATOZ	208
5.6.4 OTHER WAYS TO EXPRESS THE IMPERATIVE	209
5.7 SYNTHETIC VERBS - Adizki Trinkoak.....	212
5.7.1 PRESENT TENSE - Orainaldia	212
5.7.2 PAST TENSE - Lehenaldia	214
5.8 COMPOUND VERBS - Aditz Lokuzioak	216
5.8.1 USE OF ACCOMPANYING VERBS WITH COMPOUND VERBS	218
5.8.1.1 THE ORDER - Ordena	218
5.8.1.2 THE AUXILIARY VERB - Aditz Laguntzailea	219
5.8.1.3 THE ASPECT - Aspektua	220

5.9 VARIOUS PROBLEMATIC VERBS - Zenbait Aditz Problematiko224

5.9.1 NOR/NORK.....	224
5.9.2 EGON / IZAN / ARI IZAN	225
5.9.3 SPECIAL VERBS - Aditz Bereziak.....	227
5.9.3.1 Lagundu - Help, Accompany	227
5.9.3.2 Utzi - Leave, Let, Stop	227
5.9.3.3 Ulertu - Understand, Comprehend	228
5.9.3.4 Deitu - Call	228
5.9.3.5 Hasi, hasi nahi, hasi nahian - Begin/start	228
5.9.3.6 Pasa, kosta, falta izan, laga - Pass time, Cost, Lack, Leave	229
5.9.3.7 Gogoratu / Ahaztu - Remember / Forget.....	230
5.9.3.8 Baliatu, jabetu, konturatu, aldatu, arduratu, kezkatu.....	231
5.9.3.9 Behar, Beharra - Must, Should, Need to	231
5.9.3.10 Uste, pensatu - Believe, think	232
5.9.3.11 Ezin - Cannot, Can't.....	232
5.9.3.12 Ohi - in the custom of.....	232
5.9.3.13 Erazi, -arazi, -erazo, -arazo - to be made to	233
5.9.3.14 Iraun, irakin, ihardun/jardun - remain, boil, be occupied in	233
5.9.3.15 Other Verbs - iritzi/eritzi, ekin, eutsi, jarraitu, itxaron, begiratu, gustatu/laket	233
5.9.4 Particles OTE and OMEN (Ei).....	235
5.9.4.1 Ote - I wonder, if by any chance	235
5.9.4.2 Omen - They say, Apparently	236

5.10 NOMINALISATION - Nominalizazioa238

5.10.1 ZER?: -T(Z)EA - WHAT	239
5.10.2 ZERTAN?: -T(Z)EN - IN DOING WHAT?	241
5.10.3 ZERTARA?: -T(Z)ERA - TO WHAT (OUTCOME)?	243
5.10.4 ZERTARAKO?: -T(Z)EKO - FOR WHAT (PURPOSE)?	244
5.10.5 VERBS THAT DON'T ACCEPT NOMINALIZATIONS.....	244
5.10.6 PROBLEM CASES	245
5.10.7 NOMINALISATION AND RELATIVE CLAUSES	246

VI. SYNTAX - Sintaxis 251

6.1 THE SIMPLE CLAUSE - Perpaus Bakuna253

6.1.1 INTERROGATIVES - Galdezkoak.....	253
6.1.2 AFFIRMATIVES - Baiezkoak	254
6.1.3 NEGATIVES - Ezezkoak	254
6.1.4 EXCLAMATIONS - Harri durazkoak	255
6.1.4.1 HAU da HAU! - USING DEMONSTRATIVES.....	255
6.1.4.2 BAI...-LA!	256
6.1.4.3 ZEIN...-N!	256
6.1.4.4 A ZER NOLAKO...-N! (ZELAKO...-N!) - WHAT A... !	256
6.1.4.5 ZE... -N! - HOW! WHAT!.....	257
6.1.4.6 ZENBAT ...-N! - HOW MUCH, HOW LITTLE, HOW MANY.....	257
6.1.4.7 Handia da GERO! - ... Be careful	257
6.1.4.8 AlferrA HALAKOA! - SIMILAR, LIKE THAT, THAT KIND OF THING	258
6.1.4.9 BAIETZ! / EZETZ!.....	258
6.1.4.10 ESKERRAK ...-N - Just as well / thank goodness.....	258
6.1.4.11 Interjections	259

6.2 WORD ORDER - Hitz Ordena.....	261
6.2.1 INTERROGATIVE - Galdezkoak.....	262
6.2.1.1 PARTIAL INTERROGATIVES	262
6.2.1.2 GENERAL INTERROGATIVES.....	262
6.2.2 AFFIRMATIVE - Baiezkoak	262
6.2.2.1 THE INQUIRED ELEMENT - Galdegaia	263
6.2.2.2 THE PROPER AFFIRMATION.....	263
6.2.2.3 THE VERB - Aditza	264
6.2.3 NEGATIVES - Negitiboak.....	265
6.3 COORDINATION - Koordinazioa.....	271
6.3.1 CONJUNCTION - Elkarritzak	271
6.3.1.1 ETA - AND	271
6.3.1.2 ERE, ERE BA, ERE EZ - ALSO, EITHER, AS WELL	272
6.3.1.3 BAITA...ERE - AND...ALSO/SO, EVEN.....	272
6.3.1.4 EZTA...ERE - NOT...ALSO, EVEN, NEITHER	272
6.3.2 ADVERSE - Aurkariak	272
6.3.2.1 BAINA - BUT.....	272
6.3.2.2 ORDEA, OSTERA, ALDIZ, BERRIZ - ON THE OTHER HAND, HOWEVER	273
6.3.2.3 BAIZIK, BAIZIK ETA - RATHER, BUT, IF NOT	273
6.3.2.4 HALA ERE - EVEN SO	274
6.3.2.5 HALA ETA GUZTIZ ERE - IN SPITE OF ALL..., EVEN SO	274
6.3.2.6 DENA DELA (DENA DEN) - ANYWAY, AS IT IS, EVEN SO	274
6.3.2.7 BARIK - INSTEAD OF, IN PLACE OF	275
6.3.3 DISJUNCTIVE - Hautakariak	275
6.3.3.1 EDO - OR (NON-EXCLUDING).....	275
6.3.3.2 EDO...EDO - EITHER ... OR	276
6.3.3.3 ALA - OR (EXCLUDING).....	276
6.3.4 DISTRIBUTIVE - Distributiboak	277
6.3.4.1 BAL...BAL... - AS WELL AS... , BOTH ... AND.....	277
6.3.4.2 EZ...EZ... - NEITHER... NOR.....	277
6.3.4.3 HALA...NOLA... - BOTH... AS WELL AS.....	277
6.3.4.4 BATA...BESTEA... - THE ONE.. THE OTHER	277
6.3.4.5 (ALDE) BATETIK...BESTETIK... - ON ONE SIDE... FROM THE OTHER.....	278
6.3.5 ELATIVE - Ilatiboak	278
6.3.5.1 BERAZ (HORTAZ) - SO	278
6.3.5.2 ORDUAN - SO	278
6.3.5.3 HORREGATIK - THAT IS WHY, FOR THAT	279
6.4 SUBORDINATION - Menperakuntza.....	280
6.4.1 COMPLETIVE CLAUSE- Konpletiboko Perpausak	280
6.4.1.1 -LA / -NIK - THAT.....	280
6.4.1.2 -NA.....	282
6.4.1.3 -T(Z)EKO.....	283
6.4.1.4 BAIETZ / EZETZ	284
6.4.2 INDIRECT INTERROGATIVE CLAUSE - Zehar Galderako Perpaua	285
6.4.3 DESTINATIVE CLAUSES - Helburuzko Perpausak.....	288
6.4.3.1 ZERTARA? -T(Z)ERA - FOR WHAT INTENTION, TO GO TO DO SOMETHING	288

6.4.3.2 ZERTARAKO?:-T(Z)EKO - FOR WHAT PURPOSE/OUTCOME	289
6.4.3.3 -T(Z)EARREN - SO AS TO	290
6.4.3.4 -T(Z)EKOTAN, -T(Z)EKO ASMOTAN - THINKING ABOUT DOING SOMETHING.....	290
6.4.4 CAUSAL SENTENCES - Kausazko Perpausak	291
6.4.4.1 ZERGATIK?: -LAKO - FROM WHAT, WHY; BECAUSE	291
6.4.4.2 ETA	292
6.4.4.3 BAIT-	293
6.4.4.4 -NEZ GERO - SINCE, AS FOR WHAT, CONCERNING WHAT	294
6.4.4.5 -LA ETA - BECAUSE OF	295
6.4.4.6 -T(Z)EARREN -AS, BECAUSE	295
6.4.5 CONDITIONAL CLAUSES - Baldintzazko Perpausak	296
6.4.5.1 BA-	296
6.4.5.2 -Z GERO - IN CASE, IN THE CASE THAT, BY	297
6.4.5.3 EZIK, IZAN EZIK - EXCEPT FOR, APART FROM	298
6.4.5.4 ..EZEZIK...ERE - ...NOT ONLY ...BUT ...(ALSO)...	298
6.4.6 RELATIVE CLAUSES - Erlatibozko Perpausak.....	299
6.4.6.1 -N - THAT/WHO	299
6.4.6.2 -TAKO (-RIKO).....	301
6.4.7 TEMPORAL CLAUSES - Denborazko Perpausak.....	303
6.4.7.1 BAINO LEHEN(AGO), AURRETIK, AITZIN - BUT FIRST, BEFORE	303
6.4.7.2 ORDUKO - BEFORE, AS SOON AS, FOR WHEN	304
6.4.7.3 -T(Z)ERA KOAN	304
6.4.7.4 -T(Z)EAN, -NEAN, -N BITARTEAN, BITARTEAN.....	305
6.4.7.5 BEZAIN LASTER, -TAKOAN- AS SOON AS, JUST AFTER	308
6.4.7.6 ETA GERO, ONDOREN - AFTER.....	309
6.4.7.7 -N BAKOITZEAN / -N GUZTIETAN / -N GEHIENETAN - EACH TIME / WHENEVER / MOST OF THE TIME	309
6.4.7.8 -N ARTE - UNTIL WHEN.....	310
6.4.8 CONCESSIVE - Kontzesiboa	312
6.4.8.1 ARREN, AGATIK - ALTHOUGH, EVEN THOUGH, EVEN IF, IN SPITE OF.....	312
6.4.8.2 NAHIZ ETA - ALTHOUGH, EVEN THOUGH, EVEN IF	313
6.4.8.3 BA...ERE - ALTHOUGH, EVEN THOUGH, EVEN IF	314
6.4.8.4 TA/DA ERE - ALTHOUGH, EVEN THOUGH, EVEN IF	314
6.4.9 MODAL CLAUSES - Moduzko Perpausak.....	315
6.4.9.1 -N BEZALA / -N BEZALAKO(A) - AS/HOW/LIKE/SAME	315
6.4.9.2 -N MODUAN / -N MODUKO(A) - AS, IN THE WAY, HOW	318
6.4.9.3 -T(Z)EKO MODUAN / -T(Z)EKO MODUKO(A) - ABOUT TO, ABOUT ENOUGH	319
6.4.9.4 -NEZ - ACCORDING TO (WHAT), APPARENTLY, AS, LIKE, FROM WHAT	319
6.4.9.5 -N LEGEZ - LIKE, AS	320
6.4.9.6 OTHER FORMS.....	320
6.4.10 COMPARATIVE CLAUSES - Konparaziozko Perpausak.....	321
6.4.10.1 -AGO / -EGI / -EN - MORE, TOO MUCH, MOST	322
6.4.10.2 HAIN, HAINBESTE - SO / THAT, SO MUCH / THAT MANY	324
6.4.10.3 BAINO ...-AGO	325
6.4.10.4 BEZAIN / BESTE(ADINA) - AS...AS.....	326
6.4.10.5 COMPARATIVE EXPRESSIONS	328

VII. NOTIONS & ELEMENTS

- Nozioak eta Osagaiak..... 331

7.1 THE NOTION OF TIME - Denbora-Nozioa	333
7.1.1 NOIZ - WIEN.....	333
7.1.2 NOIZTIK (NOIZDANK) - SINCE WHEN	334
7.1.3 NOIZKO - FROM WHEN, FOR WHEN.....	335
7.1.3.1 NOIZKO? (FROM WHEN?).....	335
7.1.3.2 NOIZKO? (FOR WHEN?)	335
7.1.4 NOIZ ARTE - UNTIL WHEN	336
7.1.5 MAIZTASUNA - FREQUENCY.....	337
7.1.5.1 NOIZETIK, NOIZERA - FROM WHEN, TO WIEN.....	337
7.1.5.2 NOIZERO - HOW OFTEN	338
7.1.5.3 ZENBATETAN? ASKOTAN - HOW MANY TIMES? MANY TIMES.....	339
7.1.5.4 ZENBAT ALDIZ? (ZENBAT BIDER?) - HOW MANY TIMES	339
7.1.5.5 ORAINGOAN / GAURKOAN - THIS TIME.....	340
7.1.5.6 OTHER FORMS	341
7.2 THE TIME - Ordua, Tenore.....	343
7.2.1 ZER ORDUA DA? - WHAT IS THE TIME {HOUR; lit.}	343
7.2.2 ZER ORDUTAN? - AT WHAT TIME	345
7.2.3 ZER ORDUTATIK? - FROM/SINCE WHAT TIME?	345
7.2.4 ZER ORDUTARA? - TO/UNTIL WHAT TIME?.....	346
7.2.5 ZER ORDUTAKO? - AT/OF WHAT TIME?	347
7.2.6 ZER ORDUTARAKO? - FOR WHAT TIME?	347
7.2.7 ZER ORDUTARA ARTE? - UNTIL WHAT TIME?.....	348
7.2.8 EXPRESSIONS - Esapideak.....	348
7.2.8.1 HIRU-HIRURAK - EXACTLY, ON-THE-DOT, PRECISELY	348
7.2.8.2 HIRURAK JOTA	349
7.2.8.3 HIRURAK JOTZEKO - GOING TO BE	349
7.2.8.4 ZAZPIAK INGURU - ABOUT/AROUND.....	349
7.2.8.5 ZAZPIAK ALDERA - AT ABOUT, AROUND ABOUT	350
7.3 TEMPORAL EXPRESSIONS - Denborazko Esapideak.....	352
7.3.1 THE MOST USUAL ADVERBS.....	352
7.3.2 THE DAY - EGUNA.....	353
7.3.3 THE DAYS - EGUNAK.....	353
7.3.4 THE WEEK - ASTEA.....	354
7.3.5 THE MONTHS - HILABETEA.....	355
7.3.6 THE SEASONS - URTAROAK	355
7.3.7 THE YEARS - URTEAK	356
7.3.8 DATORREN <i>is not</i> HURRENGO.....	356
7.3.9 DAGOENEKO; HONEZKERO - ALREADY; BY NOW	357
7.3.10 EXPRESSIONS - ESAPIDEAK	358
7.4 THE DATE - Data.....	361
7.4.1 1987.eko urriAREN 17a	361
7.4.2 1988.eko urriAK 17	363
7.4.3 ERA LABURTA - REDUCED FORM	363

7.5 THE WEATHER - Eguraldia	364
7.5.1 ORTZI (OSTE) - GOD OF THE FIRMAMENT	364
7.5.2 EURIA EGITEN DU - IT IS RAINING	365
7.5.3 EGUZKIA DAGO - IT IS SUNNY	366
7.5.4 EURIA DAKAR - IT IS GOING TO RAIN	366
7.5.5 EURIA HASI DU - THE RAIN HAS STARTED	367
7.5.6 ILARGIA - THE MOON	367
7.5.7 OTHER EXPRESSIONS - Zenbait Esapideak	367
7.6 THE SENSATIONS / FEELINGS - Sentipenak	369
7.6.1 GOSE NAIZ - I AM HUNGRY	369
7.6.2 HOTZAK NAGO - I AM COLD	369
7.6.3 GURA - WANTING TO/CURIOUS	370
7.6.4 BURUKO MINA DAUKAT - I HAVE A HEADACHE	371
7.6.5 IZAN / EDUKI	371
7.7 THE SENSES - Ahalmenak	373
7.7.1 COLOURS - Koloreak	373
7.7.2 TASTES - Zaporeak	376
7.8 COURTESY EXPRESSIONS - Kortesiako Esapideak	377
7.8.1 GREETINGS AND FAREWELLS - Agurrak	377
7.8.2 SAYING THANK YOU -Esekerrak Ematen	380
7.8.3 ASKING FORGIVENESS, SAYING SORRY - Barkamena Eskatzen	380
7.9 NUMBERS - Zenbakiak	381
7.10 MEASUREMENTS - Zenbatasuna	384
7.10.1 PRICES - Salneurriak	384
7.10.2 WEIGHT - Pisua	385
7.10.3 CAPACITY - Edukiera	385
7.10.4 QUANTITY - Kantitatea	386
7.10.5 DIMENSIONS - Dimentsioak	387
7.10.6 FRACTIONS - Zatikiak	388
7.10.7 MATHEMATICAL OPERATIONS - Eragiketa Matematikoak	388
7.10.8 VELOCITY - Abiadura	389
7.10.9 PERCENTAGES - Ehunekoak	389
7.10.9.1 BATEZ BESTE - ON AVERAGE	390
7.10.10 CALCULATION/SCORING - Tanteoa	390
7.10.11 VARIOUS EXPRESSIONS - Zenbait Esapide	391
7.10.11.1 Josu ETA BLOK - JOSU AND THE TWO OF US	391
7.10.11.2 ZazpiNA / zazpiNAKA - EACH, BOTH	392
7.10.11.3 BANAKA - ONE BY ONE, ONE AT A TIME, IN ONES	392
7.10.11.4 hoge BAT - APPROXIMATE NUMBERS, ABOUT	393
7.10.11.5 GUTXI GORABEHERA - MORE OR LESS	393
7.10.11.6 ehun INGURU - AROUND 100	393

APPENDIX 1 : CONJUGATION OF AUXILIARY VERBS	
- Aditz Languntzailea.....	396

APPENDIX 2 : IMPERATIVE VERB CONJUGATION	
- Agintera	399

APPENDIX 3 : CONJUGATION OF SYNTHETIC VERBS.....	400
---	------------

1. ATXIKI - TO HOLD, HOLD ONTO, HOLD BACK	400
2. EDUKI - TO HAVE, TO POSSESS	400
3. EGIN - TO DO, TO MAKE	401
4. EGON - TO BE (LOCATION, PRESENT STATE), TO STAY, TO WAIT	401
5. EKARRI - TO BRING	402
6. EMAN - TO GIVE, TO SEEM, TO DEVOTE ONESELF	402
7. ENTZUN - TO LISTEN, TO HEAR	403
8. ERABILI - TO USE	403
9. ERAMAN - TO CARRY, TO TRANSPORT, TO ENDURE	404
10. ERION - TO FLOW, TO POUR.....	404
11. EROAN - TO TAKE, TO ENDURE	405
12. ESAN (ERRAN) - TO SAY, TO TELL.....	405
13. ETORRI - TO COME	405
14. ETZAN- TO LAY DOWN, TO SET	406
15. EZAGUTU - TO KNOW (SOMEONE), TO RECOGNISE	406
16. IBILI - TO GO, TO MOVE, TO WALK, TO BE OCCUPIED.....	406
17. IHARDUN - TO SPEND TIME.....	407
18. IKUSI - TO SEE, TO VISIT, TO NOTICE	407
19. IRAKIN - TO BOIL, TO FERMENT	407
20. IRAUN - TO ENDURE, TO LAST	408
21. IRITZI - TO THINK OF, TO HAVE AN OPINION ABOUT	408
22. IRUDI - TO SEEM.....	409
23. JAKIN - TO KNOW (ABOUT), TO DISCOVER.....	409
24. JARIO - TO FLOW, TO POUR OUT.....	409
25. JARRAIKKI/JARRAITU - TO FOLLOW	410
26. JOAN - TO GO, TO LEAVE	410

APPENDIX 4 : THE FIRST FOUR LEVELS OF THE HABE	
CURRICULUM.....	411

LEVEL ONE	411
LEVEL TWO	412
LEVEL THREE.....	413
LEVEL FOUR.....	414

APPENDIX 5 : DECLENSION TABLES..... 415

DEMONSTRATIVES415
INTERROGATIVES415
DECLENSION OF NOUN PHRASES416
MORPHOLOGICAL RULES FOR DECLENSIONS416
PERSONAL PRONOUNS417
ADVERBS OF PLACE417

APPENDIX 6 - COMPOUND VERBS -

Eman, Hartu, Izan, Ukan418

INDEX..... 421

PREFACE

This book is the product of two independent labours. The first labour is that of Ilari Zubiri Ibarondo who produced the Spanish edition of *Gramática Didáctica del Euskara*. This book was first published in 1994 and has since that time been recognized as the paramount reference text for teaching Euskara in Euskal Herria.

The second labour was that of myself who found it so difficult to learn Euskara with no English texts available. Hence, in my passion to create greater accessibility to Euskara for the English speaker, I have translated and adapted Ilari's book from both the point of view of the English speaker and the new speaker of Euskara or *euskaldun berri*.

I first began learning Euskara at HABE in Donostia in 1991 during a six month sabbatical. Those early days were difficult as I had no knowledge of Spanish and still don't, and although the course was an immersion program the instructors and students could always use Spanish to seek explanations. I have been attending classes in Euskal Herria almost every year since then. I must say that over all those years I have had nothing but the most resounding support from every student and teacher I have ever had contact with.

I first gravitated to Euskara out of necessity, curiosity and opportunity but now my involvement is fuelled by an intense affection for the people, the music, and the traditions of life in Euskal Herria. I hope this book will help others develop the same affection.

In preparing the text I have made the unconventional decision to use the word "Euskara" rather than "Basque" when talking about the language. This has been done for three reasons, firstly, to promote the name of the language in the English speaking world. Secondly, to promote the grammatical feature of Euskara where words are inflected to be used in speech. This is in contrast with English where the word "Basque" can refer to a person, a language or act as an adjective. Thirdly, to promote a value in the language as something that is precious and unique and so warrants a unique label to identify it. Likewise I have chosen to use the name *Euskal Herria* rather than Basque Country.

The conversion of the original book written by Ilari has gone through three stages. Firstly, a draft translation was prepared with the assistance of a number of Spanish speaking students. This was reviewed for appropriateness to the English speaker and a few small sections were deleted and other sections added, particularly a set of Appendices of materials that are freely available in Euskal Herria but not elsewhere. The second phase consisted of editing and rewriting the text in an appropriate English style, and precisely translating the Euskara based on my experience as a novice learner.

These activities were repeated a total of six times to ensure a strong accuracy and consistency in presentation throughout the whole book. I think it can be said that the structure and heart of the book has been Ilari's labour whereas mine has been the reworking, styling, fleshing out, shaping and honing for the English speaking audience. The third stage was to review all the modern writings about Euskara in English and glean from them material that

is relevant to a book of this standard and coverage.

I would like to thank many friends who have helped me on my travels through the landscape of Euskara. Firstly, to Roslyn Frank who introduced me to Euskara and nursed me through the huge difficulties of second-language infancy, then later by all my friends at Informatika Fakultatea, EHU, Donostia who have encouraged and supported me and particularly those who have extended their hospitality by welcoming me into their homes, Xabier Arregi and his parents Josepa Iparragirre and Joxe Luis Arregi, Xabier Artola Zubillaga and Arantza Diaz de Illaraza, and Arantza Illaramendi.

Thirdly, I wish to thank all the staff at schools of Maizpide in Lazkao, Aurten Bai in Zornotza and AEK in Forua, all of whom have gone out of their way to give me extra support and unending patience in and out of the classroom.

Fourthly, I have been befriended and assisted greatly by the late Nekane Castillo Mateos, Luix Zaldua Etxabe, and Felix Menchacatorre, Jatsu Azkue, Jose Ignacio Calpasoro and his wife Maria Angeles, and their daughters Onditz and Olatz.

Lastly, I wish to thank all my friends and associates on the Internet BASQUE-L list who have answered so many of my questions about Euskara and Basque society in general. In particular I have been assisted at various times by Larry Trask, Jon Altuna, Jonmikel Insausti, Mikel Susperregi, Sergio Gonzalez, Jose Mallea Olaetxe, Juan Etxenike, Inaki Ekaitz Agirre, Miguel Carrasquer Vidal, Mikel Haranburu, Luistxo Fernandez, Nerea Ezeiza Ramos, Mikel Morris, Jean-Pierre Etchechury, Jon Aske. Marta Lourdes Llano.

I have been especially encouraged by the Basque linguists Beñat Oyharcabal, Jon Ortiz de Urbina, Miriam Uribe-Extebarria, Javier Ormazabal, Jose Ignacio Hualde, and Joseba Lakarra. Philology students Oroitz Jauregi Nazabal, Jon Elordi Akordarrementeria, Karmele Etxabe Azkarate and Nerea Balda Sanjuan have come to Australia and provided me with exceptional and enthusiastic help. I would also like to thank Michele Zappavigna for her patience and editorial support in working through endless changes to the final text.

Lastly, I would like to thank my co-author Ilari Zubiri who was completely supportive through all the efforts to use his text as the basis for a more extensive English text for students of Euskara.

ondo ibili

Jon Patrick
University of Sydney
Sydney, Australia

jonpat@cs.usyd.edu.au

September, 2001

INTRODUCTION

OBJECTIVES OF THE BOOK

The primary objective of this book is to offer the student a sensible, practical grammar, that is not overwhelming with fine details. It is a text created for those who are starting to learn Euskara from scratch, and it should be accessible to all, whether or not they possess a knowledge of grammar. This text is not a teaching method, but an enhanced reference book with extra examples and discussion which makes the learning of Euskara easier for students.

The treatment of the material has been rigorous, but on some occasions the rigor has been sacrificed for common sense in the hope of avoiding complications. Sometimes when explaining a concept we have opted to leave out the complicated explanations, and show the point through examples. A minimal amount of formal grammatical terminology has been used. However if you are learning Euskara, ultimately it will be necessary to learn grammatical terminology so it has been included in all section headings to facilitate this learning.

This book is an elementary grammar that covers linguistically at least the first four levels of the official program of HABE, which can be consulted if you want to find out about the more advanced levels, or to achieve a different perspective on the basic levels covered in this book. A few extra sections have been added to extend the HABE curricula as these topics are commonly found in the reading texts at the fourth level of the HABE program but are not explicitly incorporated in that curricula. A review of the few English texts that describe Euskara has also led to the addition of a few other sections and added commentary in many sections.

STRUCTURE OF THE BOOK

This grammar is divided into seven chapters. The first covers some basic concepts about pronunciation of Euskara and word stress. The second is an introduction to morphology. The third extends the introduction by presenting the declension of nouns in detail. The fourth extends the grammatical morphology. In the fifth chapter the verb and other related subjects are described. The sixth chapter is dedicated to syntax: simple clauses, the order of the parts of a clause, coordinated clauses and subordinate clauses. The seventh chapter covers a series of diverse grammatical questions which we have called NOTIONS and it details conventions for expressing a range of information such as quantities, emotions and sensations. At the end of the book is a set of appendices which include an official program of the four first levels, verb conjugation tables, declension tables, and an alphabetic index.

The chapters are divided into sections and in each section we have used the following structure:

1. **EXPLANATION** followed with many examples.
2. **SUMMARY** of the contents of the section.
3. **TYPICAL ERRORS**, where the typical mistakes are explained in detail.

UNIFIED EUSKARA - BATUA AND THE DIALECTS

The unification of Euskara is considered to have happened in 1968, the year in which Euskaltzaindia (The Academy of the basque Language), celebrated at a conference in Arantzazu, the beginning of this process. However, the unification is still an ongoing process and even though the fundamental lines are set, there are a lot of small issues still being studied, awaiting for Euskaltzaindia to define the norms.

As a consequence, a student should be aware that in Euskara there are some points that cannot be given a single rule. Taking this into account, the authors have provided the readers with a norm to follow which makes it easier to learn, and prevents you from getting confused by a great range of possibilities.

It is not our intention to favor southern Euskara over northern Euskara, but this grammar has omitted a lot of the Northern Euskara rules, as this book in its original form was written for students from the south.

This is also the case with word stress, which is the subject of much controversy. This is one of the points which slows the unification of Euskara since it is so diverse that it is difficult to find common ground.

For the student starting from scratch, it is just as easy to learn how to stress words incorrectly as it is to learn it correctly, but it is practically impossible to change your habits once formed. So, the authors have opted to give you some basic norms which come from the South, and are generally used when communicating across dialects.

On some occasions there is a reference to a specific dialect. In this sense, it is useful to remember that the dialects do not coincide with the limits of the different provinces. So, for example, the Biscayan dialect is spoken in Bizkaia, and parts of Gipuzkoa, and Araba. This sort of dispersion happens with the other dialects as well.

By far the best strategy for learning Euskara is to travel to Euskal Herria and spend time in immersion programs known as **euskaltegi-s** or **barnetegi-s** of which there are a great many run by a variety of agencies. They are places of tremendous warmth and energy and the experience of just living with other *euskaldun berri-s* (new basque speakers) is worth the effort let alone the reward from making rapid progress with your Euskara.

A BRIEF HISTORY OF WRITTEN EUSKARA

The first written examples of Euskara come from the Roman period and in a language that is now called Aquitanian. Examples of it exist in funerary and religious stelae found mostly in the northern and eastern provinces. The alphabet is taken from the Roman writing tradition but the words are unmistakably Euskara. The first text of connected phrases dates from around 950AD known as the Emilian glosses and they consist of sentences embedded in a Latin manuscript as well as the first Castilian text. From the tenth century documents begin recording Basque names both for people and places. The first poem or prayer dates from the late 1300s and after this time an increasing number of documents such as songs, poems, prayers and personal letters are available. In 1545 the first book in Euskara was published consisting of a book of poems *Linguae Vasconum Primitiae* by Beñat Dechepare. This has been republished in 1995 in the languages of English, French, Italian, Spanish, German and modern Euskara as well as a facsimile of the original. In 1571 the bible as translated by Ioannes Leizarraga appeared and then a slow trickle of publications appeared over the next few centuries until a strong tradition of writing began to flourish in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries with the greatest expansion occurring after the death of Franco in 1975. The first grammar of Euskara was published by Padre Manuel Larramendi in 1729 and he also published the first dictionary in 1745 although a few had been written before that date but not published. There has been a strong tradition in the study of Euskara by European linguists and alongside the efforts of brilliant native scholars such as Resurreccion Maria de Azkue and Luis Michelena the study of the language has gone forward in leaps and bounds. Azkue's dictionary for example published nearly 100 years ago is still considered an important reference work for practical language studies. Michelena had embarked on producing a more extensive dictionary than Azkue's tome but he died before it was completed. The work has been taken up by Ibon Sarasola and some volumes have been published. We expect it to be completed in the next few years.

HOW TO USE THIS GRAMMAR

This grammar is directed at the student of Euskara. It is therefore a simplified grammar which facilitates student's learning, and leaves out many of the minor features of the language. So, the teacher should not expect the profoundness of a grammar which is directed at people who already know the language. This can be found in the extensive survey of the language, **Euskal Gramatika Osoa** by Ilari Zubiri and Entzi Zubiri.

Here are some suggestions on how to use this book:

In each section you will find explanations of grammatical points, and examples that correspond to those points. Experienced readers may feel some points have been treated superficially, so keep in mind that we have tried to explain a reasonable variety of features to suit the needs of learning students and not competent speakers or expert linguists.

With the examples, some of the translations can seem somewhat stiff, or are more literal in their translation. This is because we have translated them as precisely as possible to retain consistent semantic use of the same words throughout the book and to capture the mor-

phology of the clauses of Euskara in the English translation. We hope this will facilitate your learning in the long run. A special convention has been adopted to assist the student in mapping words, phrases and morphological features from one language to the other. The convention has been developed to indicate words that exist in either the Euskara or English sentence that have no direct counterpart in the opposite language. The convention is only applied to the English translation of the Euskara sentence. A word in [] is present in the sentence in Euskara either as a word or morpheme, but would not normally be expressed in the equivalent English sentence. A word within () has been inserted in the English sentence to conform to normal conventions of expression but no equivalent word or morpheme will be found in the sentence in Euskara. Text enclosed in { } is supplied as extra information to assist in conveying the meaning of the sentence. The cases in which this is used have the following abbreviations:

colloq.	- colloquial expression
lit.	- literal translation
expl.	- an explanation
impl.	- a word or phrase is implied
eg.	- an example
pl.	- the term is in plural form
gr.	- grammatical information

Experienced readers may find this notation unnecessary clutter, however it is invaluable assistance to new students who work with quite small fragments of the language.

Another point which you need to pay particular attention to is the ERRORS. Each section provides a comment on the most frequent mistakes made, together with the correct way of forming the expression. You need to realize that some of the 'errors' are not erroneous in all dialects. So it pays to keep in mind that while some mistakes are clearly incorrect, others are simply details which can be considered wrong on occasions. In general all of the errors included in this book occur in a stage of learning the language, and should disappear as you progress.

Something else which needs an explanation relates to the selection of grammatical rules included in the book. Where possible we have followed the rules given by *Euskalzaindia*. Where the academy has not yet specified any rule, we have used the most commonplace rule. Where we had to choose a rule from amongst many others we have mentioned at least some of the others as well.

A word of advice to the new student of Euskara. The phonetics of any language are most important for developing competency and it is just the same for Euskara. Certainly the best advice I ever received was to work hard on the correct pronunciation of words. Native speakers will accommodate enormous errors in grammar by the beginner but if you can't pronounce the words they will not have a chance of understanding you. So first and foremost listen to the pronunciation of native speakers and put a lot of effort into mimicking it as closely as possible.

OTHER SOURCE MATERIAL ON EUSKARA

There are a limited range of books available about Euskara written in English. The most accessible works are:

1. Alan R. King, (1994) *The Basque Language: A Practical Introduction*, Reno: University of Nevada Press. pp 463. This is a teaching text book designed around 40 lessons covering about the same scope of material as this book. It also includes an elementary reader, a reference section and small dictionary. It is a valuable complement to this volume.
2. Gorka Aulestia, (1990). *Basque - English Dictionary*. Reno: University of Nevada Press. pp 558 + 108. A detailed dictionary with over 40,000, entries and a 30 page preface giving an overview of the language and detailed set of verb tables.
3. Gorka Aulestia and Linda White, (1991). *English - Basque Dictionary*. Reno: University of Nevada Press. pp 397. A simple catalogue of entries. This has also been combined with the above dictionary and published in a pocket version.
4. Mario Saltarelli, (1988). *Basque*. London: Croom Helm. pp 311. This is a book written for linguists and is a formal description of the language.
5. José Ignacio Hualde, (1991). *Basque Phonology*. London: Routledge. pp 210. This is a formal study of the phonology from four districts, Arbizu, Gernika, Ondorroa and Baztan.
6. R. Larry. Trask (1997). *The History of Basque*. London Routledge. pp 458. This is an academic book presenting the knowledge and debates on the development of all Basque dialects over the last 2000 years. It is written in a highly accessible style.
7. José Ignacio Hualde, Joseba A. Lakarra and R.L Trask (1995). *Towards a History of the Basque Language*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins pp 365. A book of 12 essays covering topics of major importance on the development of Basque. Two famous essays of Koldo Michelena have been translated for this book.
8. Itziar Laka. A linguistics description of parts of the language running to the equivalent of about 60 printed pages. Found at the following World Wide Web page address - <http://www.ehu.es/grammar>
9. Mike Morris, (1998), *Morris Student Plus Euskara-Inglesa English-Basque Dictionary*. This dictionary is an excellent publication with over 23000 entries in each section. It is a significant advance on the works of Aulestia and White with a more thorough breakdown of the subtle meanings of words. Whilst the dictionary is targeted more at a basque audience learning english it is invaluable for the english speaker learning Basque. A number of pocket versions of the same dictionary are also available.

I

PHONETICS

- Fonetika

1.1. ORTHOGRAPHY AND PRONUNCIATION - *Ortografia eta Ahoskera*

1.1.1. THE ALPHABET - *Alfabetoa*

It is a widespread belief that Euskara is pronounced like it is written, which is not absolutely true. There are different places where Euskara is spoken, and the differences between spoken Euskara and written Euskara can become large.

What is true is that sounds in Euskara and English are similar apart from a small group of dental sounds. There are five vowels in Euskara, which are equivalent to the vowels in English.

Here is a table of letters and their corresponding pronunciation:

THE ALPHABET of EUSKARA

A	a	O	o
B	be	P	pe
(C)	ze	(Q)	ku
D	de	R	erre
E	e	S	ese
F	efe	T	te
G	ge	U	u
H	hatxe	(V)	uve
I	i	(W)	uve bikoitza
J	iota	X	ixa
K	ka	(Y)	i grekoa
L	ele	Z	zeta
M	eme		
N	ene		
Ñ	eñe		

The letters in brackets are not usually used in Euskara and are only used for proper names or foreign words leaving a set of 22 letters in the alphabet.

1.1.2. VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS - *Bokalak Eta Diptongoak*

The five vowels A, E, I, O and U have roughly the international values. There are seven diphthongs, the last two being relatively uncommon:

- AI** - similar to *y* in *my*.
- EI** - like *ay* in *say*.
- OI** - like *oi* in *point*.
- UI** - like *wee* in *weep*.
- AU** - like *ow* in *now*.
- EU** - has no counterpart in English and is pronounced by separating the two vowels into their two sounds of *e* and *u*.
- OU** - like *o* in *both*.

1.1.3. OTHER CONSONANTS - *Beste Konsonanteak*

B, D, F, H, K, L, M, P and **T** are pronounced approximately the same as in English, but in southern Euskal Herria (Hegoalde) the **H** is silent.

1.1.4. THE PRONUNCIATION OF "G" - « *G* »*Ren Hotsaren Ahoskera*

The pronunciation of **G** in Euskara is somewhat like a 'g' in "guess" or "go". Sometimes a leading 'G' becomes a 'K' in composition with other words. Unlike Spanish, in Euskara a **U** never follows **G**, unless pronounced. Therefore, the borrowings ***Guernika**, ***guerra**, ***guizona**, are incorrect, and should be written: **Gernika**, **gerra**, **gizona**.

This norm is applied generally, even with words taken from other languages. This is the case with borrowings such as: **pedagogia**, **filologia**, **astrologia**, etc., which in colloquial Euskara, are normally pronounced as if with an aspirated 'H': [**pedagoghia**], [**filolohia**], [**astrolohia**], etc.

1.1.5. THE PRONUNCIATION OF "J" - « *J* »*Ren Hotsaren Ahoskera*

The letter **J** in Euskara can be pronounced as the aspirated H, something like the 'y' in *yacht*, or as the English 'j' as in *jaw*. Nowadays, both forms are used extensively, except in the case of some words which, due to the influence of Spanish, are usually pronounced with the aspirated 'h'. This is the case with **jai**: *fiesta* and **kajoi**: *large box*. In practice the pronunciation of 'j' is even more varied across Euskal Herria than these general rules.

1.1.6. THE PRONUNCIATION OF “S”, “Z”, AND “X” - «S», «Z», Eta «X» Ren Hotsen Ahoskera

One of the greatest difficulties with the pronunciation of the words in Euskara lies in the differentiation of the sounds that correspond to «S», «Z» and «X», and especially with «TS», «TZ» and «TX». In this section we will give you a description of these sounds in a simple way, avoiding the technicalities.

There are two fundamental aspects which characterize the sounds: *the way the sound is articulated* and *the point where the tongue contacts the palate*.

The difference between S/TS, Z/TZ and X/TX lies in the way they are articulated, since the point of articulation is basically the same. The way of saying the sounds S, Z and X is similar to the S in English. The way of saying TS, TZ and TX is similar to the way you would say CH in English.

- S / TS** : These sounds are made by putting the end of the tongue in a similar position to where you would put it for an S in English, although it is a little further back. Note that the end of the tongue is slightly curved towards the back.
- S** : is halfway between the ‘s’ in ‘so’ and the ‘s’ in ‘show’
- TS** : is halfway between ‘its’ and ‘itch’
- Z / TZ** : These sounds are produced by placing the tongue on the base of the teeth.
- Z** : is like the ‘s’ in ‘so’
- TZ** : is like ‘ts’ as in ‘its’
- X / TX** : These sounds are produced by putting the tongue on the palate in a position similar to the CH in English, but is slightly back, and makes contact with more surface area.
- X** : is approximately like the ‘sh’ in ‘show’
- TX** : is approximately like ‘ch’ as in ‘church’

1.1.7. PRONUNCIATION OF “R” - «R» Ren Hotsaren Ahoskera

‘R’ has two pronunciations depending on its context in a word. When it is between two vowels it sounds much like a soft ‘d’ or ‘rr’ as in ‘berry’. In other positions it is trilled or rolled slightly approximating a shortened version of ‘rr’. Some examples are below:

between vowels	single
dira	gaur
bero	izar
gara	baste
zeru	ilargi

1.1.8. PALATAL CONSONANTS - *Kontsonante Sabaikariak*

There are four palatal consonants in Euskara that are written **Ñ**, **DD**, **LL**, and **TT** which can be appreciated by the English word endings shown below:

Ñ	as in a NY
DD	as in naugh TY
LL	as in on LY
TT	as in ban DY

As well **S**, **Z**, **TS** and **TZ** can all be palatized to **X** or **TX**. They are used for an expressive effect in diminutives, terms of endearment and the names of people and animals.

mut**IL**a/ba**IN**a

Another phonetic phenomena frequently found in the western dialects occurs when **N** or **L** appear in contact with **I**. They are pronounced **Ñ** and **LL**, which is a palatized form of **N** and **L** respectively.

IL ⇒ LL	:	mutila [mut illa], botila [bot illa]
IN ⇒ Ñ	:	baina [ba ña], gainean [ga ñean]

Here are some more examples:

bonbila	[bon billa]	baino	[ba ño]
bilatu	[bill atu]	oiloa	[ol loa]
arina	[ari ña]	irina	[iri ña]
maratila	[marat illa]	engainatu	[enga ñatu]
ispilua	[isp illua]	hozkailua	[hozk allua]

1.1.9. USE OF THE LETTER "H"- « *H* » *Letraren Erabilera*

The letter "H" has been a problem in the unification process of Euskara. The H in Euskara is pronounced in some eastern dialects, but in most dialects it is treated as silent.

Presented here are the most frequently used words written with **H**, as they are often misspelt. Table 1 gives the spelling of words that have H in some dialects. Some guidelines on the use of **H** are provided:

1. **H** is frequently used in words which have two or more consecutive vowels in a row, especially if they are identical. For example: **ahal**, **mahai**, **zuhur**, **leiho**.

2. **H** is almost never used after a consonant, although in Northern dialects you will find it written after the consonants P,T,K.
3. At the beginning of demonstratives, for example: **hau, hori, hura**; and adverbs of place, for example: **hemen, hor, han**.
4. In some numbers, for example: **hiru, hamar, hoge, ehun**.
5. In verbal forms that use the familiar form of second person singular, for example: **hi, haiz, hinduen**.
6. Compound words often retain the **H**, as in **hilerri, hilobi**. This is not entirely universal as some compound words drop the **H**: **ilargi, (hil + argi), urteurren (urte + hurren), ertzain (herri + zain), atzal (hatz + azal)**.

EUSKARA	ENGLISH	EUSKARA	ENGLISH
abil	<i>smart</i>	haltz	<i>straighten out (1st p)</i>
ahaide	<i>relative</i>	hamahiru	<i>thirteen</i>
ahal	<i>to be able</i>	hamar	<i>ten</i>
ahalegin	<i>effort, intention</i>	han	<i>there/ over there</i>
ahalke	<i>shame/embarrassment</i>	handi	<i>big</i>
ahalmen	<i>capability/capacity</i>	hanka	<i>leg</i>
ahantzi	<i>to forget</i>	hanpatu	<i>to inflate</i>
aharrausi	<i>yawn</i>	har	<i>worm, remorse</i>
ahate	<i>duck (animal)</i>	hara	<i>there</i>
ahaztu	<i>to forget</i>	haragi	<i>meat</i>
ahitu	<i>weaken, to be finished</i>	haran	<i>valley</i>
ahizpa	<i>a woman's sister</i>	harea	<i>sand</i>
aho	<i>mouth</i>	hari	<i>thread, linen</i>
aholkatu	<i>to counsel, to give advice</i>	haritz	<i>oak</i>
aholku	<i>counsel, advice</i>	harrapatu	<i>to trap</i>
ahots	<i>voice</i>	harresi	<i>city walls</i>
ahul	<i>weak</i>	harri	<i>stone</i>

ahuntz	<i>goat</i>	harritu	<i>to be surprised</i>
ahur	<i>palm of the hand</i>	harro	<i>proud</i>
aina	<i>so much as</i>	harrobi	<i>quarry</i>
aintza	<i>glory, fame</i>	hartu	<i>to pick up, to take</i>
ain(tzako)tzat	<i>in consideration</i>	hartz	<i>bear</i>
		haserre	<i>angry, upset</i>
aitzur	<i>hoe</i>	haserretu	<i>to get angry, upset</i>
aizto	<i>knife</i>	hasi	<i>to begin</i>
al	<i>interrogative particle</i>	hasiera	<i>beginning</i>
ala	<i>or</i>	hasperen	<i>sigh, moan</i>
alabaina	<i>nevertheless</i>	hastapen	<i>beginning, start</i>
antzman	<i>to guess</i>	hats	<i>breath, odor</i>
ar	<i>tough, male</i>	hatz	<i>finger, incl, track</i>
aran	<i>plum, prune</i>	hau	<i>this</i>
arbel	<i>blackboard</i>	haur	<i>boy</i>
astelehen	<i>Monday</i>	hausnartu	<i>to reflect</i>
atzapar	<i>bird or reptile claw</i>	hauspo	<i>bellows</i>
atzazal	<i>one</i>	hautatu	<i>to choose, elect</i>
atzeman	<i>to reach, to gather</i>	hauts	<i>dust</i>
aukera	<i>option, occasion</i>	hautsi	<i>to break</i>
aukeratu	<i>to chose, to pick</i>	hazi	<i>to grow / to breed / to cultivate / seed</i>
auzi	<i>justice</i>	hazka egin	<i>to scratch oneself</i>
auzo	<i>neighborhood, suburb</i>	hazkura	<i>spiciness</i>
azaro	<i>November</i>	hedatu	<i>to extend</i>
aztarna	<i>rake, track, trail</i>	hegal	<i>wing, border</i>
bahitu	<i>to kidnap</i>	hegan	<i>flying</i>
behar	<i>necessity</i>	hegaz	<i>flying</i>
behatu	<i>observe, watch</i>	hegazkin	<i>aeroplane</i>

behatz	<i>toe</i>	hegazti	<i>bird</i>
behe	<i>underneath, lower</i>	hego	<i>south, wing</i>
behi	<i>cow</i>	hein	<i>measurement</i>
behiala	<i>in the past</i>	heldu	<i>to arrive, to grab</i>
behin	<i>once</i>	hemen	<i>here</i>
behintzat	<i>at least</i>	hemeretzi	<i>nineteen</i>
behor	<i>mare</i>	herabe	<i>timidness, shyness</i>
berehala	<i>soon, quickly</i>	herabeti	<i>timid, shy</i>
berrehun	<i>two hundred</i>	herdoil	<i>mange, rust</i>
bihar	<i>tomorrow</i>	herdoildu	<i>to go rusty</i>
biharamun	<i>on the next day</i>	heren	<i>a third</i>
bihotz	<i>heart</i>	herenegun	<i>the day before yesterday</i>
bihurri	<i>twisted, rebel</i>	herio	<i>the death</i>
bihurtu	<i>to convert, to twist</i>	heriotza	<i>death</i>
bizpahiru	<i>two or three</i>	horrela	<i>like that, in that way</i>
bostehun	<i>five hundred</i>		
deiadar	<i>scream</i>	herren	<i>lame, crippled</i>
dohain	<i>gratuitously</i>	herri	<i>town</i>
ehiza	<i>hunting</i>	hertsi	<i>to close</i>
ehortzi	<i>to find out</i>	hesi	<i>enclosure, fence</i>
ehun	<i>one hundred / material / lots</i>	heste	<i>intestine</i>
erbeste	<i>abroad</i>	heze	<i>humid</i>
eri	<i>sick</i>	hezi	<i>to tame, to educate</i>
ertzain	<i>policeman</i>	hezur	<i>bone</i>
estu	<i>narrow, close</i>	horrela	<i>like that, in that way</i>
gehiago	<i>more</i>	huts	<i>empty/pure/zero</i>
gehiegi	<i>too much</i>	xahu	<i>clean</i>
haatik	<i>and yet</i>	xehe	<i>simple, diminutive</i>
habe	<i>column, cross, beam</i>	xehetu	<i>destroy/shred</i>
habia	<i>nest</i>	zahagi	<i>wineskin</i>
hagin	<i>tooth, yew</i>	zahar	<i>old</i>

hagitz	<i>very</i>	zahartu	<i>to age</i>
hain	<i>so(superlative)/ so much</i>	zahato	<i>small wineskin</i>
hainbat	<i>so much, so many</i>	zehar	<i>through, across</i>
hainbeste	<i>so much, so many</i>	zeharkatu	<i>to cross</i>
haitz	<i>rock, stone</i>	zeharo	<i>completely</i>
haize	<i>wind</i>	zehatz	<i>exact, precise, strict</i>
hala	<i>that way, like that</i>	zehaztu	<i>to define, to specify</i>
halaber	<i>in the same way</i>	zuhaitz	<i>tree</i>

1.1.10. THE PARTICLE "EZ" - «Ez» Partikula

In negative constructions, due to the presence of the **Z** of **EZ** immediately before the auxiliary verb, a series of phonetic transformations are applied to the leading consonants. This is an extensive phenomena. Here is a table of those phonetic changes:

Z + N ⇒ N	:	ez naiz [enaiz], ez nago [enago]
Z + Z ⇒ TZ	:	ez zara [eTZara], ez zait [eTZait]
Z + D ⇒ ZT	:	ez da [ezTa], ez dakit [ezTakit]
Z + G ⇒ ZK	:	ez gara [ezKara], ez goaz [ezKoaz]
Z + B ⇒ ZP	:	ez bada [esPada], ez badu [esPadu]
Z + Z ⇒ TZ	:	ez zait [eTZait], ez ziren [eTZiren]

Here are some examples:

Ez daukat gogorik.	[Eztaukat gogorik]
Ni ez naiz Bilboko.	[Ni enaiz Bilboko]
Hori ez da Gernikan bizi.	[Hori ezta Gernikan bizi]
Gu ez gara hemengoak.	[Gu ezgara hemengoak]
Ez zaizu gustazen?	[Etzaizu gustatzen?]
Ez nago konforme.	[Enago konforme]
Oker ez banago...	[Oker ezpanago...]
Ez dut ulertzen	[Eztut ulertzen]

1.1.11. BORROWED WORDS - *Maileguak*

Borrowed words suffer some minor adaptations when used in Euskara. Here is a table of the more common differences:

-TION	-ZIO (-ZINO)	: <u>notion</u> > nozioa (nozinoa)
-SION	-SIO (-SINO)	: <u>fusion</u> > fusioa (fusinoa)
-ONY	-OI	: <u>balcony</u> > balkoia
-R(S, Z)	-RTS-, -RTZ-	: <u>verse</u> > bertsoa
-N(S, Z)	-NTS-, -NTZ-	: <u>defense</u> > defentsa
R (<i>voc</i>)-	ERR(<i>voc</i>)-	: <u>repression</u> > errepresioa
REL-	ERL-	: <u>relation</u> > erlazioa

Here are some examples:

conception	: kontzepzioa
religion	: erlijioa
hell/inferno	: infernua
relaxation	: erlaxazioa
indication	: indikazioa
effort	: esfortzua
conscience	: kontzientzia
republic	: errepublika
to console	: kontsolatu
assimilation	: asimilazioa
person	: pertsona
reference	: erreferentzia
sensation	: sentsazioa
discount	: deskontua

1.1.12. PHONETICS - *Fonetika*

The formal categorization of phonemes in Euskara is presented below using the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA). The study of Euskara's phonology is well developed and detailed descriptions can be found in Hualde, (1991) and Saltonstall, (1988) (see introduction). The character <j> is the only one that causes serious concern for the new learner as it is manifest in up to 7 different sounds depending on what part of the country you are in.

Consonants

Labial	Dental/Alveolar	Palatal	Velar	Glottal
<p> = [p]	<t> = [t]	<tt> = [c]	<k> = [k]	<h> = [h]
 = [b]	<d> = [d]	<dd> = [dʲ]	<g> = [g]	
<f> = [f]	<z> = [s̺]	<x> = [s̺]	<j> = [j]	
	<s> = [s̺]	<tx> = [tʃ]	<j> = [x]	
	<tz> = [tʃ]	<j> = [j]		
	<ts> = [tʃ]	<j> = [j]		
<m> = [m]	<n> = [n]	<ñ> = [ɲ]		
	<l> = [l]	<ll> = [lʲ]		
	<r> = [r]			
	<rr> = [r̺]			

Vowels

- <a> = [a]
- <e> = [e]
- <i> = [i]
- <o> = [o]
- <u> = [u]

1.2. WORD ACCENT - *Azentua*

The accent or word stress in Euskara has an interesting rhythm and is different to the English one. It isn't possible to describe the Euskara's stress without going into areas which go beyond the scope of this book, so we will limit ourselves to some rules on the placing of stress in words. The rules which we give are only approximations, and only valid for some places in Southern Euskal Herria. The stress in Euskara doesn't appear on the word, but on the syllable, which causes it to vary according to the structure of the sentence. In some cases the movement of the stress from one syllable to another can change the meaning of the word.

1.2.1. GENERAL RULES - *Arau Orokorrak*

In Euskara the second and last syllables tend to be stressed, although the last syllable not as heavily as the second. By applying these rules to words with different numbers of syllables, we discover the structures presented below:

One Syllable - *Silaba bakarra*

Monosyllabic words in general, unless they are on their own, are not stressed, merging into other words to form units of several syllables. For example:

ez dakit	[ez tákit]	ez dakigu	[ez tákigù]
ez dut	[ez tút]	ez ditugu	[ez títugù]
etxe bat	[etxé bàt]	mutil bat	[mutí lbat]
badakigu	[badá kigù]	badaukat	[badá ukàt]
ez gara	[ez kàrà]	ez da	[ez tá]

Two syllables - *Bi Silaba*

Words with two syllables, in general, have a stress on the last syllable (the second from the left). For example:

esan	[esán]	agur	[agúr]
mutil	[mutíl]	hori	[horí]
lagun	[lagún]	gizon	[gizón]

Three Syllables - *Hiru Silaba*

Words with three syllables generally have a stress on the second syllable, counting from the left, and on the last syllable. It may seem surprising to see a word with more than one stress, but it is very common in Euskara. Here are some examples:

ikasi	[ikási]	lankide	[lankídè]
mutila	[mutílà]	horretan	[horrétàn]
dituzu	[ditúzù]	dizkio	[dizkíò]

Four Syllables - *Lau Silaba*

Words with four syllables are stressed on the second syllable from the left and on the last syllable. For example:

batasuna	[batásunà]	irakasle	[irákaslè]
ikastola	[ikástolà]	telebista	[telébistà]
euskaltegi	[euskáltegi]	emakume	[emákumè]

Five Syllables - *Bost Silaba*

Words with five or more syllables are stressed on the second and last syllables. Here are some examples:

askatasuna	[askátasunà]	emakumea	[emákumèà]
aizkolaria	[aizkólarià]	bertsolaria	[bertsólarià]
ikusgarria	[ikúsgarrià]	egunkaria	[egúnkarià]

These rules, as we will see further on, have some exceptions.

1.2.2. THE PLURAL - *Plurala*

One of the exceptions to the rules given in the previous paragraphs is the plural form of words. In effect, plural, monosyllabic and bisyllabic words move the stress over one syllable to the left. Here are some examples:

Singular		Plural	
honek	[honék]	hauek	[háuek]
horrek	[horrék]	horiek	[hóriek]
haren	[harén]	haien	[háien]
laguna	[lagúnà]	lagunak	[lágunak]
bera	[berá]	beren	[béren]

1.2.3. VERBS - *Aditzak*

To know where to put the stress on a verb, the root of the word is taken as the reference point. If the root is monosyllabic, all the forms of that verb will have the stress on the first syllable. For example:

SALDU	⇒	sál	:	sáldu, sáltzen, sáldukò, sáldutà...
HARTU	⇒	hár	:	hártu, hártzen, hártukò, hártutà...

The rest of the verbs are stressed according to the standard rules. For example:

IKUSI	⇒	ikus	:	ikúsi, ikúsikò, ikúsità, ikústerà
APURTU	⇒	apúr	:	apúrto, apúrtukò, apúrtutà, apúrtzekò

There are a few verbs which do not follow this rule:

bóta : to throw	jáio : to be born	jóan : to go
jákin : to know	jágon : to look after	bázkaldu : to have lunch

The Auxiliary Verb - Aditz laguntzaileak

The auxiliary verb forms a unit with the main verb, in such a way that it takes its corresponding stress as if it were one word rather than two. For example:

egín dutè	esán dugù	eman zutèn
jóan dirà	harrápatu dutè	ekárriko dugù
esán dizkídatè	sáldu niòn	esán niòn

1.2.4. STRESSED WORDS - *Hitz Markatuak*

Another exception to the given rules is in stressed words.

One syllable - Silaba bakarra

gái	<i>theme</i>	gáu	<i>night</i>	háuts	<i>dust, ash</i>
gáin	<i>on top</i>	háur	<i>child</i>	góiz	<i>morning</i>
láu	<i>four</i>	séi	<i>six</i>	gáur	<i>today</i>
dén	<i>all</i>	txár	<i>bad</i>		

Two syllables - Bi silaba

áurre	<i>in front</i>	átze	<i>behind</i>	áuzo	<i>neighborhood</i>
éuri	<i>rain</i>	gáuza	<i>thing</i>	háize	<i>wind</i>
léiho	<i>window</i>	máila	<i>level</i>	máilu	<i>hammer</i>
máistra	<i>teacher (fem.)</i>	máisu	<i>teacher (masc.)</i>	néurri	<i>measure</i>

jábe	<i>owner</i>	zénbat	<i>how much</i>	ásmo	<i>intention</i>
báke	<i>peace</i>	báso	<i>glass</i>	bérba	<i>word</i>
géla	<i>room</i>	basó	<i>forest</i>	gúra	<i>desire</i>
hánka	<i>leg</i>	jénde	<i>people</i>	jóku	<i>game</i>
kále	<i>street</i>	kánpo	<i>outside</i>	kóntu	<i>account</i>
kórta	<i>block</i>	lége	<i>law</i>	léku	<i>place</i>
písu	<i>floor, weight</i>	sóka	<i>rope</i>	zéru	<i>sky</i>
bákar	<i>sole, alone</i>	bárre	<i>laughter</i>	bátzuk	<i>some</i>
bátzar	<i>meeting</i>	béste	<i>another</i>	bízi	<i>live</i>
díru	<i>money</i>	gálde	<i>question</i>	giltza	<i>key</i>
gíro	<i>atmosphere</i>	góna	<i>skirt</i>	jágon	<i>care for</i>
jákin	<i>know</i>	jóan	<i>go</i>	lótza	<i>shame</i>
néke	<i>fatigue</i>	néska	<i>girl</i>	órdu	<i>hour</i>
pílo	<i>heap</i>	séme	<i>son</i>	tálde	<i>group</i>
tóki	<i>site, place</i>	úme	<i>child</i>	górputz	<i>body</i>

Three syllables - Hiru silaba

égia	<i>truth</i>	géhiago	<i>more</i>	bázkari	<i>dinner</i>
árima	<i>sonl</i>	árbola	<i>tree</i>	dénbora	<i>time</i>
gánbara	<i>attic</i>	líburu	<i>book</i>	mákina	<i>machine</i>
médiku	<i>doctor</i>	prémia	<i>necessity</i>	sékula	<i>never</i>
árreta	<i>attention</i>	áspaldi	<i>long ago</i>	báserra	<i>farm</i>
bélarri	<i>ear</i>	béstela	<i>otherwise</i>	éroan	<i>transport</i>

II

**INTRODUCTION TO
MORPHOLOGY**

- Morfologiari Sarrera

2.1. WORDS of EUSKARA - *Hitz-motak Euskaraz*

In Euskara, as with other languages, words can be categorized into parts of speech like: *nouns, adjectives, adverbs, etc.* Interestingly, the dictionary published by the famous Basque linguist R.M.J. Azkue, contained no categorization of words into parts of speech. Hence it is possible to view words as 'indefinite' until they are used in a grammatical construction, that is, words don't have a part of speech intrinsically, but rather they acquire them when used in speech. Although not strictly true it is a useful concept to have for learning the case declension system of Euskara, especially for developing mastery over the ergative. Nevertheless, for the benefit of the English speaker who is used to the part-of-speech categorization scheme, we have used it to organize the chapters of this book.

In this chapter we will only provide simple descriptions of some basic grammatical items, leaving the detail for other chapters. Also Euskara has a rich set of formation rules (far more powerful than in English) for word composition. It is very useful to the learner to recognize these rules early in their studies as they so rapidly extend competency in the language.

2.2. NOUNS - *Izenak*

Nouns are words for people, animals, ideas, objects, etc. For example:

etxe	: house
ume	: child
txakur	: dog

Euskara has an extensive declension system for noun phrases which eliminates the need for prepositions. Some examples of declined nouns are presented below, but this feature is dealt with in far greater detail in chapter 3.

ume	: child {absolutive}
umea	: the child {nominative}
umeak	: the child {ergative}
umeari	: to the child {dative}
umearentzat	: to the child {benefactive}
umearen	: of the child {possessive-genitive}
umearekin	: with the child {comitative}
umeaz	: about the child {instrumental}
umearengan	: on the child {locative/inessive}
umearengana	: to the child {allative}
umearengandik	: from the child {ablative/elative}

There are two classes of nouns:

<i>Common nouns</i>	: ume, txakur, mendi, etxe...
<i>Proper nouns</i>	: Amaia, Aitor, Gernika, Gorbea...

Gender - *Generoa*

Like English, in Euskara there is no grammatical gender for words as in, say, French and Spanish. This, of course, doesn't mean you can't express gender in Euskara. The usual words for people of different sexes are available. Here are some examples:

seme	: son	alaba	: daughter
jaun	: Mr.	andre	: Mrs.
aitona	: grandfather	amona	: grandmother

To express both female and male together you use both words, and make the compound word plural. For example:

aitona-amonak	: grandparents {grandfather-grandmother; lit.}
anai-arrebak	: siblings {brothers-sisters; lit.}
neba-arrebak	: siblings {brothers-sisters; lit.}
seme-alabak	: children {sons-daughters; lit.}

However in some cases there are single words to say both, for example:

parents : **gurasoak**.

2.3. ADJECTIVES - *Adjektiboak*

Adjectives are words which express a quality of a noun. For example:

handi	: big
txiki	: little
gorri	: red
polit	: beautiful
itsusi	: ugly
zuri	: white

Adjectives are placed after the noun, and no other word can come between the noun and its adjective. Here is a template and some examples for this construction:

<i>noun</i>	+	<i>adjective</i>	+	<i>article</i>
ume txikiA				: the little child
neska politA				: the beautiful girl
auto gorriA				: the red car

To decline a noun phrase, you place the case endings at the end of the adjective:

etxe handiA	: the big house
etxe handiTIK	: from the big house
etxe handiAK	: the big houses

2.3.1. Participles - *Partizipioak*

A participle is the part of a verb that gives the distinct meaning to the verb and is separate to the auxiliary. In Euskara verb participles can be used as adjectives just as in English. Here are some examples:

ardi GALDUA	: the lost sheep
hosto ERORIAK	: the fallen leaves
kotxe LAPUR bat	: a stolen car
euskara IDATZIA	: written Basque
Aulki hau HARTUA dago	: This chair is taken

2.4. PERSONAL PRONOUNS - *Pertsona Izenordainak*

Euskara has the following personal pronouns:

ni	: I/me
hi	: you {familiar; expl}
hura	: she/he/it/her/him {that one; lit.}
gu	: we/us
zu	: you {sg.}
zuek	: you {pl.}
haiek	: they/them {these ones; lit.}

Originally there were six personal pronouns in Euskara where **ZUEK** did not exist, so to say *you* {pl.} **ZU** was used, and there was only one way in which to say *you* {sing.}: **HI**.

But during the Middle Ages Euskara came under the influence of its neighboring languages, and they started to use **ZU** instead of **HI** as a form of courtesy and respect. So, the usage changed and became the following:

HI	: expresses the familiar, used with people you trust and peers.
ZU	: went from being <i>you</i> (plural, formal) to <i>you</i> (singular, formal), and became the most commonly used way to say <i>you</i> .
ZUEK	: when zu changed in meaning to <i>you</i> (singular, formal) a new form was created to take the place of <i>you</i> (plural, formal).

Personal pronouns can also be declined. Here are some examples:

ni	: I/me {nominative: gr.}
niri	: to me {dative: gr.}
nik	: I {ergative: gr.}
nirekin	: with me {associative: gr.}

Personal pronouns are regularly omitted from sentences in Euskara, particularly whenever the conjugated verb shows the person of the subject, object or indirect object. For example:

Noa	: I am going.
Gastea zara	: You are young.
Behar dut	: I need it.
Eman dizkigute	: They have given them to us.

Hence, the presence of the pronouns in these cases adds emphasis to those pronouns.

2.5. THE ARTICLE - *Artikulua*

The article in Euskara is not exactly the same as in English and what the English speaker would call the definite article is used in a wider range of contexts in Euskara than in English. The article in Euskara is automatically added to most noun phrases when they have no other determiner and, it cannot be used alongside any other determiner. That said, it is still possible to identify two types of articles in Euskara. It is just that the definite article is used sometimes when the indefinite article or no article is used in English.

2.5.1. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE - *Artikulu Zehaztua*

The definite article in Euskara is characterized by:

- a) *being placed after the noun, or the adjective, and*
- b) *joined onto the noun or the adjective.*

Here are some examples:

umeA	: the child
txikiA	: the little (one)
ume txikiA	: the little child

There are two forms in each declension case for singular and plural. In the nominative case the singular is **-A**, and the plural is **-AK**. Here are some examples:

etxeA	: the house
etxeAK	: the houses
katu beltzA	: the black cat
katu beltzAK	: the black cats
onenA	: the best
onenAK	: the best (one)s

The definite article is not applied to proper nouns whether they be geographic names or personal names, apart from some rare exceptions.

2.5.2. INDEFINITE ARTICLE - *Artikulu Zehaztugabea*

The indefinite article is characterized by:

- a) *being placed after the noun, or adjective, and*
- b) *separated from the noun or adjective.*

There are two forms for the indefinite article:

BAT	: a
BATZU(K)	: some

Here are some examples:

mutil gazte BAT	: a young boy
liburu BATZUK	: some books
lagun BAT	: a friend

The indefinite article can be declined, creating a phrasal unit with the noun and adjective:

etxe zahar BATEAN	: in an old house
kutxa BATZUETAN	: in some boxes
lagun BATI	: to a friend
lagun BATZUEI	: to some friends

A more uncertain meaning of **bat** is conveyed when the preceding noun phrase is declined in the possessive-genitive case. It conveys the idea of something more vague. Here are some examples:

Herriren BAT ikusi dut	: I saw it in some village. {I don't remember which one; expl}
Neskaren BATEK esan dit	: A girl told me. {but I don't recall which girl; expl}

TYPICAL ERRORS - *Ohiko Akatsak*

1. The definite article in Euskara is different to English in that, for example, if you asked someone to say a word in English it would be normal to say it without an article, and if you did use an article you would be saying two different words. In Euskara, however, you always add an article to an isolated word. Except when the word is a proper noun, which doesn't need the article. For example:

Trueba zinetokiA	: the Trueba cinema
jantokiA	: the dining room
komunA	: the toilet/bathroom

The following table gives more examples:

WRONG	RIGHT	
*batzoki_	batzokiA	: the meeting house
*bulego_	bulegoA	: the office
*kafetegi_	kafetegiA	: the coffee shop

2. Another mistake is to use the definite article as well as the indefinite article. For example:

WRONG	RIGHT	
*mahaiA BAT	mahai BAT	: a table
*aulkiA BATZUK	aulki BATZUK	: some chairs
*lagunA BAT	lagun BAT	: a friend

2.6. DEMONSTRATIVES - *Erakusleak*

In Euskara, demonstratives represent three different distances from “near” to “far”, whether it be real or figurative or in either space or time, and have corresponding forms for singular and plural. There are also two characteristics of Euskara demonstratives:

- a) *they go after the noun and adjective if present, and*
- b) *they have no gender, but instead they represent spatial relationships.*

Here is a list of demonstratives:

HAU	: this - someone closer to the speaker
HORI	: that - someone closer to the addressed person
HURA	: that (one over there) - someone not close to either of them
HAUEK	: these
HORIEK	: those
HAIEK	: those (over there)

Here are some examples:

etxe HAU	: this house
mutil HORI	: that boy
neska HURA	: that girl (over there)
liburu HAUEK	: these books
txakur txiki HORIEK	: those little dogs
neska gazte HAIEK	: those young girls (over there)

The order in which you place demonstratives is the following:

noun + *adjective* + **DEMONSTRATIVE**

Demonstratives can stand by themselves as pronouns or accompanying a noun like an adjective. For example:

HAU nirea da	: This (one) is mine.
Liburu HAU nirea da	: This book is mine.

Demonstratives can also be declined:

HONEK	: this {ergative: gr.}
HONI	: to this {dative: gr.}
HONEKIN	: with this {associative: gr.}
...	: ...

The demonstratives are used in place of the gendered pronouns *she/he/it* of English. When used on their own without an accompanying noun they need to be understood as shown below:

HAU	: this one/this person
HORI	: that one/ that person
HURA	: that one over there/that person over there

TYPICAL ERRORS - *Ohiko Akatsak*

1. A mistake which is easy to make is to place demonstratives before the noun. For example:

WRONG	RIGHT
*HAU etxe	etxe HAU : this house
*HORI mutil altu	mutil altu HORI : that tall boy

2. Another mistake is to use the article as well as the demonstrative. For example:

WRONG	RIGHT
*mutilA HORI	mutil HORI : that boy
*mahaiAK HAUEK	mahai HAUEK : these tables

2.7. SIMPLE SENTENCES - *Esaldiak*

Whilst it is true that most components in a simple sentence in Euskara can be placed in any order, there are implications for various possible orders.

In affirmative sentences the verb is most frequently placed at the end. Here are some examples:

Donostian bizi gara	: We live in Donostia.
Hori nire etxea da	: That is my house.
Eskolara noa	: I am going to school.

In a negative sentence the auxiliary or synthetic verb is preceded by **EZ** and is rarely placed at the end of the sentence. It usually precedes the object of the sentence and the non-finite component of the verb if present. Here are some examples:

Hau EZ da nirea	: This is not mine.
EZ zait ardoa gustatzen	: The wine does not appeal (to) me.
EZ gara Donostian bizi	: We don't live in Donostia.

2.7.1. FOCUS - *Galdegaia*

The sentence in Euskara carries the concept of the principle element of attention called the **galdegaia**. The same function in English is achieved by word stress and intonation. The focus in Euskara is placed immediately before the verb.

Ama bizi da Bilbon	: Mother lives in Bilboa. {Focus: Mother}
Haiek oparia niri eman didate	: Those (people) gave me the present. {Focus: me}
Oparia haiek eman didate niri	: Those (people) gave the present to me. {Focus: those people}
Haiek oparia eman didate niri	: Those (people) gave the present to me. {Focus: the present}

In questions, the interrogative being the focus of the question is placed before the verb. The element that answers the question must be placed in front of the verb. Using the examples from above:

Nori eman diote oparia?	: To whom have they given the present?
Niri eman didate	: They have given it to me .

Nork eman dizu oparia?	: Who has given the present to you?
Haiek eman didate	: Those (people) have given it to me.
Zer eman dizute?	: What has been given to you.
Oparia eman didate	: A present has been given to me.

The focus on a verb can be created by placing a “dummy” verb EGIN immediately after the verb. Here is an example:

Zertan Kepa Joni egin zuen?	: What did Kepa do to Jon?
Jo EGIN zuen	: He hit him.

2.7.2. TOPIC

While the focus of the sentence is placed in front of the verb the other elements may be placed at the beginning or end of the sentence. The element placed at the beginning is the *topic* of the sentence. For example:

HORI, gure kotxe berria da	: As for that , it's our new car.
-----------------------------------	--

To remove the topicalisation of **hori** it would have to be placed at the end of the sentence.

Gure kotxe berria da hori	: That is our new car.
----------------------------------	------------------------

In a simple sentence when an element is both in the position of *topic* and *focus*, it is the topic of the sentence otherwise it would be moved to the end of the sentence. Here are some examples:

Osaba etorriko da	: Uncle will come. {Topic : Uncle}
Etorriko da osaba	: Uncle will come. {Topic : none}

2.8. ADVERBS - *Adberbioak*

Apart from the standard set of adverbs in Euskara such as the interrogatives, comparatives and words of time, space, and focus, new adverbs can be formed using the suffices **-KI**, **-TO**, **-RO** and **-KA** such as:

bereziki	: specially	astiro	: calmly
segurazki	: surely	berriro	: again
txarto	: badly	aldizka	: alternatively
hobeto	: better	dardarka	: trembling

The relative importance of an adverb in a sentence is effected by its position just like noun phrases. It is the focus of the sentence if it is placed in front of the verb. If it is the topic of the sentence it will be placed at the beginning of the sentence. If it is background information it will be placed at the end. Here are some examples:

Focus	:	Haurrak hementxe egon nahi ditut. I want to be (with) the children right here .
Topic	:	Hementxe haurrak egon nahi ditut. I want the children to be right here.
Background	:	Haurrak egon nahi ditut hementxe. I want the children to be here.

2.9. NUMERALS - *Zenbakiak*

In Euskara there are two classes of numerals:

1. CARDINALS which indicate number.
2. ORDINALS which indicate order.

2.9.1. CARDINALS - *Kardinalak*

Cardinal numerals are what we usually call numbers. Here are some examples:

- | | | |
|----|-------------|--|
| 1. | BAT | etxe BAT: one house |
| 2. | BI | katu BI / BI katu: two cats |
| 3. | HIRU | HIRU etxe handi: three big houses |
| 4. | LAU | LAU lagun: four friends |
| 5. | BOST | BOST urte: five years |

As shown, they aren't all placed in the same order. Here is a template with some more examples:

BI	<i>noun + adjective</i>	BAT
all other numbers		BI
gargardo BAT		: one beer
leiho txiki BI		: two small windows
BI neska gazte		: two young girls
HIRU kafe bero		: three hot coffees

In the examples we have used so far there are no articles, but you can use articles with numbers. Here are some examples:

HIRU etxe	: three houses
HIRU etxeAK	: the three houses
LAU etxe zahar	: four old houses
LAU etxe zaharrAK	: the four old houses
ate BI / BI ate	: two doors
ate BIAK / BI ateAK	: the two doors

2.9.2. ORDINALS - *Ordinalak*

Ordinals are the words which indicate position in a sequence. For example:

LEHEN(ENGO)a	: the first
biGARRENa	: the second
hiruGARRENa	: the third

With the exception of “first” (**lehenengo**), all of the others are obtained by adding **-GARREN** to a number:

seiGARREN pisua	: the sixth floor
lauGARREN maila	: the fourth level
zortziGARRENa	: the eight

As shown, ordinals always go before the noun or adjective they reference. If they don't accompany a noun they take an article: **seigarrenaA, lehenengoA, bigarrenA**.

When the number is written as a digit (i.e. 8) instead of as a word, the suffix **-GARREN** is substituted with a full stop. In such a case, the declined suffixes are placed after the full-stop. Here are some examples:

lehenengoA	1.a	: the first
bigarrenAK	2.ak	: the second {ergative: gr.}
bostgarrenEAN	5.ean	: in the fifth
zazpigarrenETIK	7.etik	: from the seventh
seigarren pisua	6. pisua	: the sixth floor

TYPICAL ERRORS - *Ohiko Akatsak*

- Not correctly distinguishing the meaning of numbers used with and without articles. For example:

WRONG

***hiru lagunAK**
 ***hiru lagun**
 ***zazpi kaleAK**
 ***zazpi kale**

RIGHT

hiru lagun : three friends
hiru lagunAK : **the** three friends
zazpi kale : seven streets
zazpi kaleAK : **the** seven streets

2.10. INDEFINITE DETERMINANTS - *Mugatzaile* *Zehaztugabeak*

Indefinite determinants are a class of words that determine a noun in a generalised way. For example:

ASKO	diru ASKO	: a lot of money
GUTXI	diru GUTXI	: a little money
GUZTI	ume GUZTIAK	: all of the children
PILA BAT	diru PILA BAT	: a heap of money
ZENBAIT	ZENBAIT arazo	: various problems
EDOZEIN	EDOZEIN etxetan	: in any house
HAINBAT	HAINBAT jende	: so many people

As shown in these examples, indefinite determinants are placed variously in front of and after the noun. Here are some examples:

ZENBAIT	<i>noun + adjective</i>	ASKO
EDOZEIN		GUTXI
HAINBAT		GUZTI
PILA BAT		PILA BAT

The indefinite determinant can also be declined as it behaves much like an adjective. Here are some examples:

lagun ASKOarekin	: with many friends
auto berri GUTXI	: few new cars
EDOZEIN kutxa zaharretan	: in any old box
herri GUZTIA	: all of the town
herri GUZTIAK	: all of the towns

Indefinite determinants determine the noun in a non-specific way. So, in Euskara some of these words do not have quantities, in other words, they are neither singular nor plural. They are declined in the indeterminate form (**MUGAGABEA**) and carry no article. Other indefinites do carry an article (**GUZTI**, for example).

TYPICAL ERRORS - *Ohiko Akatsak*

1. Placing indefinite determinants in an incorrect position relative to the noun. This happens mostly with **ASKO** and **GUTXI**. Here are some examples:

a lot of students	*ASKO ikasle ikasle ASKO
few people	*GUTXI jende jende GUTXI
a lot of money	*ASKO dirua diru ASKO

2. To use an article with an indefinite which doesn't carry one. For example:

a lot of tables	*mahaiA asko mahai_ asko
little water	*urA gutxi ur_ gutxi
various books	*zenbait liburuAK zenbait liburu_
any boy	*edozein mutilA edozein mutil_

2.11. INTERROGATIVES - *Galdetzaileak*

Interrogatives are used to form questions. Here we present a brief introduction as they are dealt with in some detail in later chapters. Here are some examples:

NOR?	: who? {sing. }
NORTZUK?	: who? {pl. }
ZER?	: what?
ZEIN?	: which? (one)
ZEINTZUK?	: which? (ones)
ZENBAT?	: how many?/how much?
NON?	: where?
NOIZ?	: when?
NORENGAN?	: to whose?
NOLA?	: how?
ZELAN?	: how?

Interrogatives can also be declined. Here are some examples:

NOR?	: who? {nominative }	ZER?	: what? {nominative }
NORK?	: who? {ergative }	ZERK?	: what? {ergative }
NORI?	: to whom? {dative }	ZERI?	: to what? {dative }
NOREN?	: whose? {possessive }	ZEREN?	: from what? {possessive }
NOREKIN?	: with who? {associative }	ZEREKIN?	: with what? {associative }

The interrogatives **NOR**, **ZER** and **ZEIN** present two forms, one for the singular and the other for the plural.

Sing.	Plur.
NOR?	NORTZUK?
ZEIN?	ZEINTZUK?
ZER?	ZERTZUK?

In some places in Euskal Herria the same form is used for singular and plural:

NOR?	: who? {sing. / plur. }
ZEIN?	: which? {sing. / plur. }

The plural of **ZER** is **ZERTZUK** and except in a few districts, is hardly ever used.

NOR *is not* **ZEIN**

In some locations it is common to use the interrogative **ZEIN** instead of **NOR**. This is so normal now that it can hardly be considered to be incorrect. But we recommend that you use the form which maintains the differentiation. In this sense it is convenient to remember that **ZEIN** is equivalent to the interrogative *which?* in English. Here are some examples:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| NOR da hori? | : Who is that? |
| NORK egin du? | : Who has done it? |
| Zuk ZEIN nahi duzu? | : Which (one) do you want? |
| Bietako ZEIN da zurea? | : Which of the two is yours? |

III

DECLENSION

- Deklinabidea

3.1. INTRODUCTION - *Sarrera*

One of the most surprising characteristics of Euskara to the beginner student is the declension system. Words are declined by attaching suffixes to the end of noun phrases. These suffixes represent the equivalent of prepositions in English. This means that in Euskara, instead of prepositions, there are postpositions that are joined to words. Here are some examples showing the English prepositions equivalent to the declensions of Euskara marked in bold.

AzokaRA noa	:	I am going to the market.
AzokaTIK nator	:	I am coming from the market.
EtxeAN nago	:	I am at home.

While all declensions have formal grammatical names, another convention for referencing them is to use the equivalent interrogative word, such as:

NORA?	(to where?)	:	etxe RA	- to home
NONDIK?	(from where?)	:	etxe TIK	- from home
NON?	(where?)	:	etxe AN	- at home

So forming a declension consists of taking a word and applying a suffix to it. For example:

NOR	:	who	:	mutil A	:	the boy
NORI	:	to whom	:	mutil ARI	:	to the boy
NOREN	:	whose	:	mutil AREN	:	the boy's
NOREKIN	:	with whom	:	mutil AREKIN	:	with the boy
NORENTZAT	:	for whom	:	mutil ARENZAT	:	for the boy

Each suffix is a different declension case and there are two different classes of cases, that is, for animate beings and inanimate things. These two classes in turn are declined differently for the singular, plural and indefinite forms.

3.1.1. DECLENSION CASES - *Deklinabide Kasuak*

We have already established that to name a declension case, we use the corresponding interrogative, that is the word which asks a question in that declension. For example:

NOREKIN?: with whom? mutil**AREKIN**: **with the** boy

But what would happen if, instead of mutil**AREKIN** we want "mailu**AREKIN**: **with the** hammer"? In this case, we would no longer ask **NOREKIN?**: with whom?, but **ZEREKIN?**: with what? Therefore, there are many interrogatives that you can use with

each declension. As an example, the following table shows declined interrogatives in the case of the dative, **NORI**:

NORI?	: for/to whom?
NORTZUEI?	: for/to whom? {pl.}
ZERI?	: for/to what?
ZEINI?	: to which?
ZENBATI?	: to how many?

Normally, to name this declension case, either **NORI** or **ZERI** would be used, depending on whether the use refers to people or objects respectively.

3.1.2. WORD ORDER - *Hitzen Ordena*

It is important to understand that the declensions are placed at the end, that is, on the last word in the noun phrase. Hence they are found attached to nouns, adjectives, pronouns and determiners. For example:

mutilA	mutilARI
mutil HAUEK	mutil HAUEI
mutil BAT	mutil BATI
mutil altuA	mutil altuARI
mutil altu BAT	mutil altu BATI
mutil altu eta sendo BAT	mutil altu eta sendo BATI

3.1.3. NUMBER - *Numeroa*

Each declined case has three possible forms. For example:

1. Singular:	umeARENTZAT	: for the child
2. Plural:	umeENTZAT	: for the children
3. Indefinite:	BI umeRENTZAT	: for two children
	umeRENTZAT	: for children

In these examples, the same case, **NORENTZAT**, appears in three different forms. In effect, the declensions differ depending on whether the expression uses the singular, plural, or indefinite forms, that is, those which do not take the definite article. For example:

umeA (the child)	+ NOREKIN	= umeAREKIN (with the child)
umeAK (the children)	+ NOREKIN	= umeEKIN (with the children)
ume (child)	+ NOREKIN	= umeREKIN (with children)

In the third example, the indefinite form or **MUGAGABEA** form is used. In effect, if we ask “**NOREKIN dago ama?**: who is mother with?” and we reply “**umeAREKIN**: with the child”, the speaker knows which child is being referred to. If we reply “**umeEKIN**: with the children”, this also refers to particular children. However, if we reply “**bi umeREKIN**: with two children”, we do not know which children are being referred to, that is, we are speaking of non-specific children.

3.1.4. THE INDEFINITE CASE - *Mugagabea*

The definite form (singular/plural) is used when referring to particular things or people, that is, known things. For example:

IrakasleA etorri da	: The teacher has come
Irakasle_bat etorri da	: A teacher has come
IraksleAK etorri dira	: The teachers have come
Zenbait irakasle_ etorri da	: Various teachers have come

In the first example, “**irakasleA**: the teacher” refers to a particular teacher, a known teacher. In the second case we know that the one who has come is a teacher, but we do not know who he is. This is partly true for the third example, when we say “**irakasleAK**: the teachers”, we know *which* teachers are being referred to. This is not the case with “**zenbait irakasle**: various/some teachers”, because we do not know which teachers in particular are being referred to, we only know there is more than one. The English equivalent to **mugagabe** is usually achieved by using a plural form of the noun, and the ambiguity is unresolved from a grammatical point of view.

It is important to keep in mind that the declensions affect the whole phrasal unit, because when the noun is followed by an adjective, the declension is applied to the latter, with the noun taking the indefinite form (e.g. **gure IRAKALSE_maitaA**: our beloved teacher). In this case, a particular teacher is being referred to, therefore the article “A” affects the entire unit. Generally in Euskara a noun phrase requires a determiner and unlike English **gure** is not a determiner, hence it is necessary to use “A” as the determiner for this phrase.

Later we will explore more cases where the indefinite form is used.

3.1.4.1. PROPER NOUNS - *Izen Bereziak*

Common nouns can take any of the three forms. In effect, common nouns need an article (singular or plural) to refer to definite objects. Proper nouns, on the other hand, do not take an article, since they already, by their very nature, make reference to people or particular places or objects. For example:

MikeLEKIN	: with Mikel
NekaneREKIN	: with Nekane

It would be wrong to decline them like this:

- *NekaneAREKIN : with the Nekane
 *NekaneEKIN : with the Nekanes

3.1.5. INTERROGATIVES: WHAT, WHICH, HOW MANY, HOW MUCH - Galdetzaileak: ZER, ZEIN, ZENBAT

All interrogatives are declined in the indefinite form, but these three present a greater difficulty, since they can be found on their own just as easily as with other words, and, in that case the accompanying word is declined. For example:

- ZER orduTAN? : At what time?
 ZEIN pisuTAN? : On which floor?
 ZENBAT jende? : How many people?

Words which go with any of these three interrogatives are always declined in the indefinite form. Here are some examples:

- ZER ordu_ da? : What time is it?
 ZEIN mahai_ eraman behar du? : Which table has to be taken?
 ZEIN medikuRENGANA joan zara? : Which doctor have you gone to?
 Bietako zeinEK apurtu du hau? : Which of the two has torn this?
 ZENBAT emakume_ etorri da/dira? : How many women have come?
 ZENBAT kilometroTARA dago? : How many kilometres (away) is it?
 ZENBATEK daki egia? : How many know the truth?

3.1.5.1. NUMBERS - Zenbakiak

The indefinite form, MUGAGABEA, is usually used with numbers, but when they are used with the definite form they carry a different meaning (see 7.9). For example:

- Plural ⇒ HIRU exteETAN : in the three houses
 Indefinite ⇒ HIRU etxeTAN : in three houses

So be careful with numbers, since each case expresses different things. The use of plural forms refer to specific items and not unidentified items in which case you use MUGAGABE forms. Here are some more examples:

- zazpi kaleETAN : on the Seven Roads {the name for the old quarter of Bilbao; expl.}
 zazpi kaleTAN : on seven roads {we do not know which; expl.}

3.1.5.2. SOME INDEFINITE EXPRESSIONS - Zenbait Esapide Mugagabe

As shown already (see 2.7), some adjectives are not used in either singular or plural forms so, the phrase is declined in the indefinite form. Here are some examples:

ASKO	leku ASKOTAN	: in many places
GUTXI	jende GUTXIRI	: to (a) few people
GEHIAGO	GEHIAGOTAN	: on more (occasions)
PILA BAT	diru PILA BAT	: a heap (of) money
HAINBAT	HAINBAT neskaREKIN	: with so many girls
ZENBAIT	ZENBAIT lagunENTZAT	: for various friends
EDOZEIN	EDOZEIN herriTAN	: in any town

3.1.5.3. SPECIAL CASES - Kasu Bereziak

There is a particular group of words about natural phenomena which are declined in the indefinite form:

UR	URETAN dago	: It's in the water.
	URETARA noa	: I am going to the water.
	URETATIK dator	: It comes from the water.
SU	SUTAN ipini	: To put on the fire.
	SUTARA bota	: To throw [to] (on) the fire.
BELAR	BELARRETAN dago	: It's in the grass.
ELUR	ELURRETAN dago	: It is in the snow.
	ELURRETARA joan	: To go to the snow.
EZKER	EZKERRETARA jo	: To turn/proceed to the left.
EZKUIN	ESKUINETARA jo	: To turn/proceed to the right.
	ESKUMATARA jo	: To turn/proceed to the right.
EGUZKI	EGUZKITAN ipini	: To put in the sun.
	EGUZKITARA atera	: To go out into the sun.
MEZA	MEZATARA joan	: To go to mass.
LO	LOTAN dago	: She/he/it is asleep. {in sleep; lit.}
	LOTARA noa	: I am going to sleep.
IZERDI	IZERDITAN nago	: I am perspiring/sweating. {in sweat; lit.}
LEKU	Hori LEKUTAN dago	: That is so far away. {colloq.} {That is in place; lit.}
ARGI	Jarri zaitetz ARGITAN	: You, put it in the light
HITZ	Norekin ari zinen HIZKETAN	: With whom are you talking?

3.1.6. CLOSE PROXIMITY - *Plural Hurbila*

Most declined cases have a definite form with which to express the plural (see 3.1.3.). However, there is also another definite article called “plural hurbila”, which is used to express close distance or proximity, be it physical or psychological in real or imaginary space or time. Normally, the speaker who uses this form tends to be included in the group which they are referring to or to whom they identify with. Here is an example:

- a) **LangileEN egoera txarra da.**
The workers’ situation is bad.
- b) **LangileON egoera txarra da.**
The situation of **us** workers is bad.

In example a), the speaker is not a worker; in b), on the other hand, she/he is a worker, or identifies with workers in some way and wants to include herself in the group she is talking about.

The *plural hurbila* form is made by changing the first vowel of the corresponding case. Let’s look at some examples:

guztiAK ⇒ guztiOK : all of us	mutilEKIN ⇒ mutilOKIN : with us boys
ikasleEK ⇒ iskasleOK : us students	emakumeEI ⇒ emakumeOI : to we women
etxeETAN ⇒ etxeOTAN : in our houses	egunETARA ⇒ egunOTARA : to recent days

Guk, ikasleOK, antolatu genuen.

We, [us] pupils have organised it (**ourselves**).

Mikel eta biOK joan ginen.

Mikel and I went. {Mikel and (I), **the two of us**, [we] went; lit.}

EmakumeOK jasan behar duguna!

The thing(s) **we** women have to suffer!

Hemen gaudenOK zurekin gaude.

All of us here are on your side. {**We** (who) are here are with you; lit.}

Hori guztiOI interesatzen zaigu.

That interests all **of us**. {That is (of) interest **to us** all; lit.}

Azken egunOTAN ez dut ikusi.

I have not seen him **in the last few** days.

GuztiON artean egingo dugu.

We will **all** do it. {We will do it between all **of us**; lit.}

When it is used in general discourse about a third person it can be equivalent to the demonstrative of *this/these*, giving it a meaning of close proximity, such as people immediately in front of the speaker. Here are some examples:

GazteONTZAT ez dago lanik.	: There is no work for these young (people).
Zuzendu honako esaldiOK	: Correct these sentences (here).
Azken egunOTAN oso ondo nabil	: I (am) going very well over these last (few) days.
Norenak dira liburuOK?	: Whose are these books?
AdibideOTAN ikus daitekeenez	: As can be seen by these examples.

This form can also be used to identify with the listener in second person verb conjugation, for example:

DenOK haurrak zarete	: You are all children.
-----------------------------	--------------------------------

3.1.7. ANIMATES / INANIMATES - *Bizidunak/Bizigabeak*

Another characteristic of Euskara is that some declension cases (the ones which indicate space) take different forms for animate beings (people, animals) compared to inanimate ones (objects, places). For example:

EtxeRA noa	: I am going [to] home.
MedikuARENGANA noa	: I am going to the doctor.
MendiTIK nator	: I am coming from (the) hills.
MedikuARENGANDIK nator	: I am coming from the doctor.

Consequently, we have to study the two classes of declension: one for animate beings and one for inanimate objects.

INANIMATES	: non, nondik, nora, norantz...
ANIMATES	: norengan, norengandik, norengana, norenganantz...

Whilst the classification is self evident for most words it is not wholly determined by modern biology. The most variation is animate things being declined as inanimates. The reverse happens rarely. Abstract entities can be treated as members of either class and the reciprocal ELKAR is always animate regardless of it referring to inanimate objects. Here is an example:

Kotxe horiek ELKARRENGANDIK urrutiegi daude.
Those cars are too far from each other.

3.1.8. MORPHOLOGY OF COMPOSITION - *Hitz Elkarketa*

As has already been shown, Euskara uses suffixes attached to noun phrases instead of prepositions. This creates a series of phonetic phenomena, depending on which sound is the last in the declined word, and which is the first of the attached suffix. The result is that there are slight changes to the suffix, depending on whether the word to be declined ends in a vowel or consonant. Here are some rules to apply in these cases:

1. **A** + **A** = **A** : **neska** + **AREN** = **neskAren**
2. **A** + **E** = **E** : **neska** + **EN** = **neskeN**
3. **E** + **E** = **EE** : **ume** + **EN** = **umeEEn**
4. *cons.* + *cons.* = *cons.* + **E** + *cons.* (**mutil** + **K** = **mutilEk**)
5. *vowel* + *vowel* = *vowel* + **R** + *vowel* (**ume** + **I** = **umeRi**)

In each case, we will study the declension of words ending in vowels and consonants.

On some occasions, precisely because of these phonetic changes, the singular and the indefinite form can produce the same result. For example:

neska	+	-AREN	⇒	NESKAREN	: of the girl/the girl's
neska	+	-REN	⇒	NESKAREN	: girls'

To some extent, this can also occur between the plural and the indefinite:

mutil	+	-EKIN	⇒	MUTILEKIN	: with the boys
mutil	+	-(r)EKIN	⇒	MUTILEKIN	: with boys

In spoken Euskara, these forms can be distinguished by the stress. Nonetheless, it is usually easy to identify which form is meant from the context.

3.1.8.1. -AU diphthong - AU diptongoa

Apart from what has been said up until now, it is important to point out that, in Euskara, words ending in **-AU** are used in the same way as those ending in a vowel, with some exceptions, for example, the word **gau** (*night*), which in some cases, is declined in the same way as words ending in a consonant:

NOR	gau
NON	gauEAN
NORA	gauERA
NONDIK	gauETIK
NONGO	gauEKO
ZEREZ	gauEZ

3.1.8.2. Words ending in -R

Words ending in **-R** can be used in a different way again, depending on the case. Most of these words duplicate the **R** upon taking a suffix, but a few on the other hand, do not. Let's look at some examples:

ur	⇒	uRa	txakur	⇒	txakuRRa
plater	⇒	plateRa	beldur	⇒	belduRRa
paper	⇒	papeRa	lapur	⇒	lapuRRa

There is no general rule as to this duplication, but the majority of words duplicate the **R** whereas only a few escape this rule. Here is a list of the most common exceptions:

ur	: water	zur	: wood	hiru(r)	: three
plater	: plate	paper	: paper	lau(r)	: four

You may wonder why we have included **hiru(r)** and **lau(r)** in the table, but these two words take **R** into the declension of some cases (**hiruRetan**, **lauRetako**), because this was their earlier form.

3.1.9. WORDS ENDING IN “-A” - <<A>>Z *Amaitutako Hitzak*

When we studied the article, we saw that it consisted of adding **-A** to the word. For example:

etxe	+	A	⇒	etxea	the house
mutil	+	A	⇒	mutila	the boy

Therefore, to establish the word's root form it is enough to eliminate the article, that is, the **A**. But what happens to words ending in **A**? In these cases, there is no difference between the word with and without an article in the singular. For example:

etxe	: house	gauza	: thing
etxea	: the house	gauza	: the thing
etxe_ bat	: a house	gauza bat	: a thing
etxe_ batzuk	: some houses	gauza asko	: many things

It is, therefore, fundamental to know whether the **-A** in a particular word is organic, that is, part of the word or if it is the article. For example:

WRONG	RIGHT	
*famili_ bat	familia bat	(a family)
*anai_ txikia	anaia txikia	(the little brother)
*polizi_ asko	polizia asko	(many police)
*hiru pertson_	hiru pertsona	(three people)

3.1.9.1. ORGANIC -A

Here is a list of the words with an organic A with the most common in capitals

aitzakia	: excuse	gaztaina	: chestnut
ANAIA	: brother of a male	geriza	: shade
animalia	: animal	GILTZA	: key
ARBOLA	: tree	GONA	: skirt
arnasa	: breath	habia	: nest
arroza	: rice	harea	: sand
atorra	: blouse	hontza	: owl
ausardia	: courage	IDEIA	: idea
AXOLA	: concern	ima jina	: image
aza	: cabbage	izara	: sheet
balea	: whale	kaiola	: cage
baratza	: paddock	kandela	: candle
bir jina	: virgin	KATEA	: chain
BURDINA	: steel	koroa	: crown
dardara	: trembling	LABANA	: knife
DENBORA	: time	LOTSA	: shame
EGIA	: truth	MAKILA	: stick
ELIZA	: church	NESKA	: girl
erregina	: queen	OKELA	: meat
FAMILIA	: family	PERTSONA	: person
GARTZELA	: jail	PERTSONAIA	: character
GAUZA	: thing	sakela	: pocket

3.1.9.2. BORROWINGS

Words which have been borrowed from other languages (such as Spanish or English) which end in -A generally keep the -A in Euskara. For example:

erronomia	familia	politika
inportantzia	polizia	feria
pedagogia	kultura	pertsona
ekonomia	soziologia	literatura
akademia	agentzia	

However, these words are also made into compound words, and sometimes lose the -A. For example:

Kultur aretoa	: cultural hall.
Famili elkartea	: family association
Kultur elkartea	: culture association
Literatur lehiaketa	: literature competition

3.1.9.3. SUFFIXES - Atzizkiak

In Euskara there are a series of suffixes which end in **-A**, therefore words which use the suffix also end in **-A**. Here is a list of the most common ones:

-(K)ADA	: zurrutada : drink; abiada : march; harrikada : stones throw; eskukada : fistful
-BERA	: sinesbera : gullible; sentibera : sensitive
-DURA	: abiadura : speed; kutsadura : contamination
-(K)ERA	: zabalera : width; izakera : personality; luzera : length; ibilkera : way of walking
-(K)ERIA	: alferkeria : vagrancy; txorakeria : silliness
-GINTZA	: hirigintza : urbanism...
-KA	: harrika : by stoning; oihuka : by screaming
-(K)ETA	: hizketa : talks; konponketa : fix; ariketa : exercise
-KUNTZA	: hizkuntza : language; antolakuntza : organisation
-TZA	: bizitza : life; ekintza : activity; jendetza : crowd; dirutza : a heap of money

3.1.9.4. PROPER NOUNS

There are also some proper nouns which have an organic **A**. Here are some of the most common:

Donostia	Getaria	Hendaia	Pasaia
Errenteria	Gipuzkoa	Nafarroa	Zuberoa

In some cases, although they are proper nouns, they used to be common nouns, so the final **-A** behaves in the same way as an article, which is lost upon declension.

BIZKAIA: Bizkaian, but Bizkaiko, Bizkaitik, Bizkaira
IRUÑA: Iruñan, but Iruñeko, Iruñetik, Iruñera

The same treatment is given to:

Azkoitia	Deustua	Forua	Mallabia
Azpeitia	Ermua	Larrabetzua	

3.2. DECLENSION CASES - *Deklinebide Kasuak*

In the following pages, we will analyse each declension case in depth. At the end we offer, by way of summary and for further reference, a table of all of the declension cases.

In the analysis of each case we will use the following layout:

1. A schematic table with several examples of its application to words ending in

- a) Vowels : **etxe, seme...**
- b) Consonants : **mutil, komun...**
- c) Organic A : **neska, taberna...**

and declined interrogatives, demonstratives, personal pronouns and locative adverbs.

2. Examples and norms for correct use.

3. An analysis of the most frequent errors with examples.

In the following sections we will concentrate on the declensions of the Interrogative for animate beings such as who, whose, etc. However it is important to remember they have equivalents for inanimate things in the form of “what” and “which”, that in Euskara have different declensions.

3.2.1. NOR (ABSOLUTIBOA) - WHO (*ABSOLUTIVE*)

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
Singular	Plural		<i>Plurala Hurbila</i>
-A	-AK	-	-OK
mutilA	mutilAK	mutil	mutilOK
semeA	semeAK	seme	semeOK
neskaA	neskaAK	neska	neskaOK
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	PERSONAL PRONOUNS
Nor	Hau	Ni	
Nortzuk	Hori	Hi	
Zer	Hura	Hura	
Zein		Gu	
Zeintzuk	Hauek	Zu	
Zenbat	Horiek	Zuek	
	Haiek	Haiek	

NOR is the basic case, the one that can be used to form all other cases by adding different suffixes. In formal grammar terms it is known as the *Absolutive* or *Nominative* case. It is the easiest of all cases to construct, with a singular or plural article. For example:

mutil	: boy {indefinite}
mutilA	: the boy {sg.}
mutilAK	: the boys {pl.}

As you will appreciate from the examples, the equivalent form in English does not take a preposition, although, as shown further on, this is not always the case for declined noun phrases. Here are some examples:

NOR da hori?	: Who is that (person)?
ZER esan duzu?	: What have you said?
NORTZUK zarete?	: Who are you {pl.}?
ZEIN liburu da nirea?	: Which book is mine?
Hau Jon da	: This is Jon.
AutoA hondatuta dago	: The car is ruined.
LagunAK etorri dira	: The friends have come.
Erloju zahar HORI nirea da	: That old watch is mine.
Jende asko etorri da	: Many people have come.
Kotxe berri BAT erosi dut	: I have bought a new car.

The **NOR** case is usually used in the following cases:

- a) As a subject in intransitive clauses, that is, those in which there is no object affected by an action of the subject. For example:

Mutila etxera doa : **The** boy is going [to] home.
GURASOAK ez daude etxean : (My) **parents** are not [at] home.

- b) As a direct object in intransitive clauses, that is, those clauses in which there is an object affected by the actions of the subject. For example:

SAGARRAK jan ditut : I have eaten **the apples**.
LIBURU BAT irakurri dut : I have read **a book**.
LAGUN BAT ikusi dut : I have seen **a friend**.

- c) As an attribute. Adjectives used in this case usually show agreement with the noun and the verb unlike English. For example:

Ni MEDIKUA naiz : I am **a doctor**.
Hauek TXIKIAK dira : These (ones) are **little**.
Zapatak ZAHARRAK dira : The shoes are **old**.

- d) When mentioning something in isolation. For example:

Maitea ! : Dear! (My) Beloved!
Kultur Etxea : Culture House.

3.2.2. PARTITIVE - *PARTITIBOA*

	DEFINITE	INDEFINITE
<i>Singular</i>		
-		-(<i>r</i>)IK
	<i>Plural</i>	mutillIK
	-	semeRIK
		neskaRIK

This is a peculiar case, because it only has an indefinite form (**mugagabe**), that is, it is neither singular nor plural.

The *partitive* is normally used in a sentence in the same way that **NOR** is, therefore it is used in the same situations as **NOR**, that is the Absolute case:

- a) As a SUBJECT in intransitive sentences.
- b) As an OBJECT in transitive sentences.

However, it comes with a set of peculiarities which differentiate it from the **NOR** case in its use as much as in its meaning. It is used in the following two cases and it can be thought of as being equivalent to the use of *any* or sometimes *all* in English.

While Basque grammarians treat the partitive as a declension case, English grammarians notably both King and Trask differ, and treat it as a general morphological feature of noun phrases more like a determiner as does Aulestia in his dictionary.

3.2.2.1. Negative Sentences - *Ezezko Perpausak*

The most frequent use of the partitive case is, without a doubt, in negative sentences. For example:

Ez daukat gogoRIK	: I don't feel like it. {I don't have any thought; lit.}
Ez dago astiRIK	: There's no time. {There's not any time; lit.}

There is a distinct difference to using the definite article as shown in these examples:

Ez dut sagarrIK nahi	: I don't want any apples.
Ez ditut sagarrAK nahi	: I don't want the apples.

3.2.2.2. Interrogative Sentences - Galde Perpausak

The second most frequent use is found in interrogative sentences. Here are some examples:

Badago lekuRIK?	: Is there any space?
Ekarri duzu diruRIK?	: Have you brought any money?

3.2.2.3. Other cases - Beste Kasuak

It is also used in other cases. Here we only offer some of the most common uses:

a) Conditional Clauses - Baldintzazko Perpausak

BerriRIK badaukazu, abisatu	: If you have any news, tell (me).
GogoRIK badaukazu, jan	: If you feel like it, eat.

b) Participles - Partizipioak

HilIK dago	: She/he is dead.
ApurtuRIK dago	: It is torn/broken.

c) Superlatives - Gehientasunak

Bizkaiko mendiRIK altuena	: The highest (of) any Bizkaian mountain.
Hauxe da lekuRIK onena	: This is the best (of) any/all places.

d) Other cases - Beste Kasuak

BakarrIK bizi naiz	: I live all alone.
Isilik dago	: It is all quiet.
EskerrIK asko	: Thanks a lot.

3.2.2.4. Partitive *is not* NOR

What is the difference between **NOR** and the *partitive* case? Here is an example:

Ekarri duzu liburuA?	: Have you brought the book? (NOR)
Ekarri duzu liburuRIK?	: Have you brought a/any book? (<i>partitive</i>)

The first example deals with a particular book. It could be “my book, the book I left you”. In the second example, however, we are not talking about a specific book, but books in general. When it comes to a response to this question, the meaning also changes, depending on which form we use.

For example:

Ez dut liburuA ekarri : I have not brought **the** book.
Ez dut liburuRIK ekarri : I have not brought **a/any** book.

In the first example, we say we have not brought the book in question, which does not exclude us having brought some other book or books. In the second example, however, we are talking about any book and not a particular book or books.

Here are some more examples:

Ez daukat autoRIK : I don't have **any** car.
Badaukazu diruRIK? : Have you got **any** money (yet)?
Badaukazu diruA? : Have you got **the** money?
Ez dut txakurIK ikusi : I have not seen **any** dog(s).
UriK gura duzu? : Do you want **some** water?
GailetaRIK nahi duzu? : Do you want **some** biscuits?
GailetAK nahi dituzu? : Do you want **the** biscuits?
Ez da irakaleRIK etorri : No teachers have come. {Not **any** teacher has come; lit. }
Irakaslea ez da etorri : The teacher has not come.
Irakaleak ez dira etorri : The teachers have not come.

3.2.3. NORK (*Ergatiboa*) - WHO (*Ergative*)

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-AK	-EK	-(e)K	-OK
mutilAK	mutileEK	mutileEK	mutilOK
semeAK	semeEK	semeK	semeOK
neskAK	neskEK	neskaK	neskOK
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	PERSONAL PRONOUNS
Nork	Honek	Nik	
Nortzuek	Horrek	Hik	
Zerk	Hark	Hark	
Zeinek	Guk		
Zeintzuek	Hauek	Zuk	
Zenbatak	Horiek	Zuek	
Haiek	Haiek		

The **NORK** case is, almost certainly the one which poses the most difficulty to students of Euskara. Here are some examples:

- a) **Miren etorri da** : Miren has come. (**NOR**)
 b) **MirenEK egin du** : Miren has done it. (**NORK**)

As you will appreciate, in English, the subject of both sentences is the same, and is expressed in the same way. In Euskara, however, the subject, although the same, has a different case from one example to the next. In example a), **NOR** is used, while in b), **NORK** is used. In formal grammar terms it is known as the *Ergative*.

Why is this? The reason is that Euskara distinguishes between the two subject classes. Here is another example:

- a) **KatuA hil da** : The cat is dead. (**NOR**)
 b) **KatuAK sagua hil du** : The cat has killed the mouse. (**NORK**)

In example a), the subject (**katuA**) is involved in an intransitive action, that is, the action does not affect any object. It is only itself which is affected. In example b), on the other hand, the subject, (**katuAK**) undertakes an action which affects another (**saguA**), that is, it is a transitive action. In English these two cases are distinguished by word order. However, Euskara has variable word order and so, a different case ending is needed to distinguish the subject from the object of the sentence.

Here are some more examples:

MutilA autoan sartu da	: The boy has got into the car.
MutilAK autoa sartu da	: The boy has put the car (away).
OgiA amaitu da	: The bread is finished.
JosuK ogia amaitu du	: Josu has finished the bread.

Thus, in Euskara, sentences with an intransitive subject and a transitive object use the same case: **NOR**. Note also that the auxiliary verb varies from one case to the other as well. Here are some more examples of the **NORK** case:

NORK apurtu du hau? Ume **HORREK** apurtu du.

Who has torn this? That child has torn it.

NORTZUEK egin dute? **LagunEK** egin dute.

Who {pl.} have done it? The friends have done it.

AitorrEK betaurrekoak apurtu ditu.

Aitor has broken the glasses.

NIK ez dut edaten.

I do not drink.

Lagun batEK ekarri du.

A friend has brought it.

IrakasleAK esan du.

The teacher has said it.

Jende gutxiK daki hori.

Few people know that.

Edozein umeK daki hori.

Any child knows that.

ZENBATEK daki? **Hiruk** dakite.

How many (people) know (it)? Three know it.

In all these examples, there is an object affected by the action, although it may not always be explicit. In the sentence **IrakasleAK esan du**, for example, it is obvious that the teacher has said something, even if the sentence does not say what.

On some occasions, there can be some confusion between the **NOR** case and the singular form of **NORK**, because they take the same form. For example:

(**NOR**) **LagunAK** etorri dira : The friends have come.

(**NORK**) **LagunAK** egin du : The friend has done it.

In spoken Euskara there tends not to be any confusion, because the two are distinguished by the stress and the context.

3.2.4. NORI (DATIBOA) - TO WHOM, FOR WHOM, FROM WHOM (DATIVE)

	DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>	
-ARI	-EI	-(r)I	-OI	
mutilARI	mutilEI	mutill	mutilOI	
semeARI	semeEI	semeRI	semeOI	
neskaARI	neskaEI	neskaRI	neskaOI	
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES		PERSONAL PRONOUNS
Nori	Honi		Niri	
Nortzuei	Horri		Hiri	
Zeri	Hari		Hari	
Zeini	Guri			
Zeintzuei	Hauei		Zuri	
Zenbati	Horiei		Zuei	
	Haiei		Haiei	

The **NORI** or *Dative* case, just as with the **NOR** and **NORK** cases, has a feature which distinguishes it from the rest, the presence of these cases makes the auxiliary verb form change. This phenomenon will be analysed in greater depth when we study verbs (see 5.3.1.). For now, it is enough to point out that if we use the **NORI** case, we need to conjugate the auxiliary verb correspondingly. In English the **NORI** case is equivalent to *to/for*, but it can also represent the opposite direction of an action and so means *from* as well. Here are some examples of the use of this case:

IrakasleARI boligrafoa galdu zaio.

The teacher has lost the pen. {The pen has been lost **from** the teacher; lit.}

LagunEI ez diet ezer esan.

I have not said anything to the friends.

Hori hainbat jendeRI gertatzen zaio.

That happens **to** so many people.

Mutil gazte HORRI eman diot.

I have given it **to that** young boy.

ZENBATI esan diezu?

How many people have you told? {**To how many** people have you said it?; lit.}

Hiru ikasleRI ahaztu zaie.

Three pupils have forgotten it. {It has been forgotten **from** three pupils; lit.}

Hiru ikasleEI ahaztu zaie.

(All) three pupils have forgotten it. {It has been forgotten **from** (all) three pupils; lit.}

JosuRI gustatzen ez bazaio, emaidazu NIRI.

If it doesn't appeal to Josu, [you] give it to me.

Lagun BATI deitu behar diot.

I must call [to] a friend.

Be careful not to use the dative case with spatial movement, which although it uses the preposition *to*, has a different meaning and is expressed by the *Allative (Nora)* declension as in: *etxera - to (go) home*.

3.2.5. NOREN - WHOSE (*Possessive-Genitive*)

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-AREN	-EN	-(r)EN	-ON
mutilAREN	mutilEN	mutilEN	mutilON
semeAREN	semeEN	semeREN	semeON
neskAREN	neskEN	neskaREN	neskON
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	PERSONAL PRONOUNS
Noren	Honen	Nire	
Nortzuen	Horren	Hire	
Zeren	Haren	Haren	
Zeinen		Gure	
Zeintzuen	Hauen	Zure	
Zenbaten	Horien	Zuen	
	Haien	Haien	

Before studying the case of NOREN, known as the *Possessive-genitive*, here are some examples:

Hau JosuREN autoa da	: This is Josu's car.
Auto hau JosuRENA da	: This car is Josu's.
Hauek umeAREN zapatak dira	: These are the child's shoes.
Zapata hauek umeARENAK dira	: These shoes are the child's.

Thus, NOREN relates two words/phrases together of which the latter can be declined. For example:

AnaREN etxeA	: Ana's house.
AnaREN etxeAK	: Ana's houses.
AnaREN etxeAN	: at/in Ana's house.
AnaREN etxeRA	: to Ana's house.

NOREN expresses possessive relationships of three forms:

- Direct possession, where a person owns an object.
- Agency where a person is the source or creator of an object, or,
- Theme, where a person is a theme in something created by another person, for example, as the subject of a portrait painting. An example that ambiguously captures all three relationships is:

margolari ezagun horren erretraloa
the well known painter's portrait

On some occasions, the word which goes after the **NOREN** declined word is omitted, because it is redundant. In this case, the suffix which belongs to the omitted word is attached directly onto the **NOREN** case. Here are some examples:

KoldoREN autoA	⇒	KoldoRENA	: Koldo's car/Koldo's.
umeAREN zapatak	⇒	umeARENAK	: the child's shoes/the child's.
JosuREN etxeAN	⇒	JosuRENEAN	: at Josu's house/at Josu's.
NIRE liburuAK	⇒	NIREAK	: my books/ (the ones that are mine {pl}).

Another peculiarity of **NOREN** is that in Euskara there are two ways of using it in a question, whereas in English we have only one:

NORENA da auto hori?	: Whose is that car?
NOREN autoA da hori?	: The car of whom is that? {lit.}

While the form used to translate the second example is not grammatically correct in English, in Euskara, it is as normal and correct as the first.

Let's suppose, for example, that a friend says to us "I have brought X's car", and that we haven't quite heard whose car it is. In that case we could ask two questions:

NOREN autoA?	: Whose car?
NORENA?	: The one of whom? {lit.}

As you can guess, there are also two possible answers:

JosuREN autoA	: Josu's car.
JosuRENA	: Josu's. {The one of Josu; lit.}

Here are some more examples:

NORENA da hau?	: Whose is this?
NORENAK dira zapata hauek?	: Whose are those shoes?
NOREN etxean dago?	: In whose house is it?
Horiek ez dira NIREAK	: Those are not mine .
GurasoEN etxean bizi naiz	: I live in (my) parents' home.
Liburu hau neska HORRENA da	: This book is that girl's.
Hiru umeREN fitxak dauzkat	: I have the tokens of (those) three children.
Hiru umeENAK dauzkat	: I have the ones/things of the three children.
Lagun BATENAK dira	: They are the ones/those of a friend.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. A mistake which is easy to make when learning how to speak Euskara is to put a **NOREN** declined word after the word it governs. For example:

father's car	*autoa aitaREN aitaREN autoa
Miren's book	*liburuak MirenEN MirenEN liburuak
in (my) parents' house	*etxean gurasoEN gurasoEN etxean

2. An even easier mistake to make is using **NOREN** by itself, without its article, or with the singular article when the object is plural. For example:

This is Carlos'	*Hau KarlosEN_ da. Hau KarlosENA da.
Whose is this?	*NOREN_ da hau? NORENA da hau?
Whose are these books?	*NORENA_ dira liburu hauek? NORENAK dira liburu hauek?
The red ones are Josu's	*Gorriak JosuRENA_ dira. Gorriak JosuRENAK dira.

3. A third mistake happens when applying personal pronouns. As you have probably already found out, personal pronouns are quite irregular. Some of them lose the final **N** in **NOREN**: **nire**, **hori**, **zure**, **gure**. Sometimes the **N** which is put on the other pronouns finds its way onto these exceptions! For example:

This is mine	*Hau nireNa da. Hau NIREA da.
This car is ours	*Auto hori gureNa da. Auto hori GUREA da.
Your ones are these	*ZureNak hauek dira. ZUREAK hauek dira.

4. There are also mistakes made in the declension of proper nouns which end in a consonant. For example:

Jon's car	*JonEREN kotxea. JonEN kotxea.
These are Mikel's [ones]	*MikelERENAK hauek dira. MikelENAK hauek dira.

5. Another mistake happens when possessive pronouns are used when they are not needed. For example, to refer to a familiar person you would use, in English, a possessive (*my mother, my father...*). But in Euskara it is not usual to use the possessive pronouns with references to family members. Here are some examples:

I live with (my) parents	*NIRE gurasoekin bizi naiz. Gurasoekin bizi naiz.
I will go with (my) mother	*NIRE amarekin joango naiz. Amarekin joango naiz.
(My) uncle has come [to me]	*Nire osaba etorri da. Osaba etorri zait.

In the cases where it is necessary to indicate the relationship, you use plural possessives which reflect a concept of the family and its more communal aspects rather than an individual's position. For example:

As our father says...	*NIRE aitak esaten duen bezala... GURE aitak esaten duen bezala...
Jon slept at our house	*Jonek NIRE etxean lo egin du. Jonek GURE etxean lo egin du.

3.2.6. NORENTZAT - FOR WHOM (*Benefactive*)

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-ARENZAT	-ENTZAT	-(r)ENTZAT	-ONTZAT
mutilARENZAT	mutilENTZAT	mutilENTZAT	mutilONTZAT
semeARENZAT	semeENTZAT	semeRENTZAT	semeONTZAT
neskaARENZAT	neskaENTZAT	neskaRENTZAT	neskaONTZAT
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	PERSONAL PRONOUNS
Norentzat	Honentzat	Niretzat	
Nortzuentzat	Horrentzat	Hiretzat	
Harentzat	Harentzat	Harentzat	
Zeinentzat		Guretzat	
Zeintzuentzat	Hauentzat	Zuretzat	
Zenbatentzat	Horientzat	Zuentzat	
	Haientzat	Haientzat	

This case is called the benefactive and is constructed by adding **-TZAT** to the case of **NOREN**:

NOREN + -TZAT = NORENTZAT

This case means *for the benefit of* or *intended for* and so is shortened to *for* in most English usage. This contraction can cause significant confusion for the English speaker as *for* is used in many other senses which are not equivalent to this meaning in Euskara.

Here are some examples of its proper usage:

NORENTZAT da hau?	: Who is that for ? {For whom is that?; lit.}
NORTZUENTZAT dira?	: Who {pl.} are they for ?
ZENBATENTZAT da tarta hau	: How many (people) is this cake for ?
Pastel hori umeARENZAT da	: That pastry is for the child .
Hau lagunENTZAT da	: This is for friends .
Gela hau hiruRENTZAT da	: This room is for three .
GuztiENTZAT dago	: It is for everybody .
ZUENTZAT ez dut ezer ekarri	: I haven't brought anything for you {pl.}.
Jende askoRENTZAT balio du	: It is worthwhile for a lot of people.
Hau biRENTZAT da	: This is for two. {indefinite; expl.}
Oparia biENTZAT da	: The present is for the two (of them). {plural definite; expl.}

TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK

1. This case does not present us with many opportunities for mistakes, but there is one which catches people out. The personal pronoun in Euskara is irregular. Some of them lose the **N** as happens in the case of **NOREN**. So it is a mistake to insert the **N** when it shouldn't be there. For example:

That is **for me**

***Hori nireNtzat da.**

Hori NIRETZAT da.

That is not **for you**

***Hau ez da zureNtzat.**

Hau ez da ZURETZAT.

And what's **for us?**

***Eta gureNtazt, zer?**

Eta GURETZAT, zer?

3.2.7. NOREKIN -WITH WHO(M) (*Comitative*)

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-AREKIN	-EKIN	-(r)EKIN	-OKIN
mutilAREKIN	mutilEKIN	mutilEKIN	mutilOKIN
semeAREKIN	semeEKIN	semeREKIN	semeOKIN
neskaAREKIN	neskaEKIN	neskaREKIN	neskaOKIN
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	PERSONAL PRONOUNS
Norekin	Honekin	Nirekin	
Nortzuekin	Horrekin	Hirekin	
Zerekin	Harekin	Harekin	
Zeinekin		Gurekin	
Zeintzuekin	Hauekin	Zurekin	
Zenbatekin	Horiekin	Zuekin	
	Haiekin	Haiekin	

NOREKIN is known as the *Comitative* case and is derived from the case of NOREN by removing the -N and adding -KIN:

NORE(N) + -KIN = NOREKIN

This case represents the concept of *with* in English. Here are some examples:

NOREKIN zaude?	: Who are you with ?
NORTZUEKIN dago?	: Who {pl.} is she/he with ?
ZENBAT umeREKIN joan da?	: With how many children has she/he gone?
ZEIN irakasleREKIN zaude?	: With which teacher are you?
EmazteAREKIN bizi naiz	: I live with the (my) wife.
GurasoEKIN bizi da	: She/he lives with (her/his) parents.
Mila pezetaREKIN nahikoa da	: 1000 pesetas is enough. { With 1000 ptas. it is enough; lit. }
Bost neskaEKIN dago	: She/he is with five girls.
Jende askoREKIN hitz egin dut	: I have talked with many people.
Lagun BATZUEKIN egon naiz	: I have been with some friends.
AnaiAREKIN hitz egin dut	: I have spoken with (my) brother.

In the Biscayan dialect, instead of using **NOREKIN** they use **NOGAZ**. Here are some examples:

NOGAZ etorri zara?	: With whom have you come?
ZEGAZ egin duzu hori?	: With what have you done that?
Lagun BATEGAZ dago	: She/he is with a friend.
UmeEKAZ joan da	: She/he has gone with the kids.
ZuGAZ berba egin behar dut	: I have to talk to you .
IrakasleAGAZ dago	: She/he is with the professor.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. It is easy to confuse **NOREKIN** with **ZEREZ**, which we will study in the next section, because in English both cases are expressed by the conjunction «*with*». For example:

Lagun BATEKIN egin dut.	: I did it WITH a friend
Esku BATEZ egin dut.	: I did it WITH one hand

In the previous example «*with*» means «*with the help of, in the company of*», but in the second example it means «*by using, by means of*». Hence we have the template:

NOREKIN	: company, help.
ZEREZ	: instrument, by using...

BUT!!! This isn't always the case. **NOREKIN**, being influenced by Spanish, is being taken over by **ZEREZ**. The best approach is to follow what we have said above as much as possible. Here are some examples:

I have done it by hand	*EskuAREKIN egin dut. EskuZ egin dut.
I have written it by machine {lit.}	*MakinAREKIN idatzi dut. MakinaZ idatzi dut.
I did it with a computer	*OrdenadoreAREKIN egin dut. OrdenadoreZ egin dut.
With a hammer	*Mailu BATEKIN. Mailu BATEZ.

3.2.8. ZERTAZ/ZEREZ - ABOUT WHAT, BY MEANS OF WHAT (Instrumental)

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-AZ	-EZ	-(e)Z -(e)TAZ	-OZ
mutilAZ	mutileEZ	mutileZ	mutiloZ
kotxeAZ	kotxeEZ	kotxeZ	kotxeOZ
neskaAZ	neskeEZ	neskaZ	neskoZ
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	PERSONAL PRONOUNS
Nortaz	Honetaz	Nitaz	
Nortzuetaz	Horretaz	Hitaz	
Zerez/zertaz	Hartaz	Hartaz	
Zeine(ta)z		Gutaz	
Zeintzue(ta)z	Hauetaz	Zutaz	
Zenbate(ta)z	Horietaz	Zuetaz	
	Haietaz	Haietaz	

This declension case which is known as the *Instrumental* has two different forms:

ZEREZ / ZERTAZ

These alternatives occur because in the indefinite form there are two possibilities: **-(e)Z** and **-TAZ**. The second form is only used in the following cases:

- a) INTERROGATIVES : **NORTAZ, ZERTAZ...**
- b) DEMONSTRATIVES : **HONETAZ, HORRETAZ...**
- c) PERSONAL PRONOUNS : **NITAZ, ZUTAZ...**

In any other constructions you only use **-(e)Z**. You can use both forms in some circumstances to give a different meaning. In the following examples, the interrogative **ZER** can take both forms:

- 1. **ZEREZ idatzi duzu?** **BoligrafoZ idatzi dut.**
What did you write it **with?** I wrote it **with** a pen.
- 2. **ZERTAZ idatzi duzu?** **LiteraturaZ idatzi dut.**
What did you write **about?** {subject} I wrote **on/about** literature.

So, when you frame a question, there are two possible meanings, but to respond you use the same declension used in the question. This case corresponds to different prepositions, which can cause some confusion. In general, the following table shows the variety of

contexts in which to use this declension:

<i>Instrument</i>	: trenEZ (by train), oinEZ (by foot), eskuZ (by hand)...
<i>Material</i>	: harriZ (of stone), paperEZ (of paper)...
<i>Way/manner</i>	: gogoZ (with desire), bihotzez (with all your heart)...
<i>Space</i>	: mendiZ (by mountain), itsasoZ (by sea)...
<i>Time</i>	: egunEZ (by day), gauEZ (by night)...
<i>Theme</i>	: liburuAZ (on the book), JonEZ (about Jon)...
<i>Time(duration)</i>	: hilabete batEZ (for a month)...

As shown in these examples, in English the **ZEREZ/ZERTAZ** interrogative is expressed by all sorts of prepositions: «*with, of, by, to, on* (theme), *about*»

We have given the most common forms, but there are also other forms which are used in certain places or in certain expressions. The demonstratives have three possible forms which are accepted by Euskaltzaindia:

1. **HONETAZ** : The most frequent form.
2. **HONEZAZ** : The form used in some places.
3. **HONEZ** : Used only in expressions such as: **HONEZ GAIN**: *as well as this*. **HONEZKERO**: *after this; yes, for now*.

The first example is the most common form, and this is the one which we will use in this book. Also, in the dialect of Biscayan, instead of using **ZEREZ**, **NOGAZ** (**NOREKIN**) is used. For example:

eskuAGAZ	: with the hand
mailuAGAZ	: with the hammer
harri BATEGAZ	: with a rock

Here are some examples of the use of this declension:

BuruAZ jo du	: She/he has hit her/him/it with (her) [the] head.
BuruZ ikasi dut	: I have learnt it by memory. {by head; lit.}
KotxeZ etorri naiz	: I have come by car.
EskuZ egin dut	: I have done it by hand.
EskuAZ egin dut	: I have done it with [the] (my) hand.
EskuEZ egin dut	: I have done it with [the] (my) hands.
NegarrEZ dago	: She/he is crying.
ItsasoZ etorri gara	: We have come by sea.
ArratsaldaZ zabalik dago	: In the afternoon it is open.
EuskaraZ hitz egin dugu	: We have talked in Euskara.
Kolpe BATEZ apurtu du	: She/he has broken it with one hit.
ZUTAZ hitz egin dugu	: We have talked about you .

This declension is used in various colloquial expressions. Here are some of the more common ones:

HORREZ GAIN esan behar da...	: As well as that it must be said...
HONEZKERO etxean egongo da	: For now she/he will be (at) [in] home.
HORREZKERO zer egingo duzu?	: After that , what will you do?
BIDE BATEZ ogia ekarri	: When you come , bring the bread.
BATEZ BESTE ehun bat dira	: On average there are (about) a hundred.
HORRETAZ APARTE ezin da egin	: Apart from that , it can't be done.
Merkeak dira; BATEZ ERE , hau	: They are cheap, above all , this (one).

The suffix -ZKO

By adding **-KO** to this case you obtain the suffix **-ZKO**. Here are some examples of its use:

ZEREZKOa da: zure**ZKOa** ala plastiko**ZKOa**?

What is it (made) of: wooden or plastic?

Ez dira kartoi**ZKOak**, papere**ZKOak** baizik.

They are not (made) of cardboard, but of paper.

ZEREZKOak dira? Marrubi**ZKOak** dira.

Of what are they? They are of strawberry {lit.}

HistoriaZKO liburu bi irakurri ditut.

I have read two books **about** history.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. A frequent mistake that is made is to use **NON** instead of **ZEREZ**. This is because in English occasionally, we use the preposition «in» as the equivalent of «by means of» - **ZEREZ**. For example:

She/he has come **by** bus ***AutobusEAN** etorri da.

AutobusEZ etorri da.

I have come **by** train ***TrenEAN** etorri naiz.

Tren EZ etorri naiz.

We will go **by** car ***AutoAN** joango gara.

AutoZ joango gara.

In reality this mistake is so common that it is hardly considered to be wrong anymore, but you should be careful to try to use the correct form. It is convenient then, to distinguish both forms, leaving **NON** to express space, and **ZEREZ** for an instrument or means of transportation. For example:

TrenEAN dago : She/he is **in** the train.

TrenEZ dator : She/he is coming **by** train.

But, when travel has to do with a specific vehicle, in general **NON** is used. For example:

AutoZ etorri naiz.	: I have come by car.
Aitaren autoAN etorri naiz.	: I have come in father's car.
AutobusEZ joango gara.	: We will go by bus.
Seietako autobusEAN joango gara.	: We will go on the six o'clock bus.

2. Another mistake is made when **NOREKIN** and **ZEREZ** are confused, because in English both cases can be expressed with the conjunction «with». For example:

Lagun BATEKIN egin dut.	: I have done it with a friend.
Esku BATEZ egin dut.	: I have done it with one hand.

In the previous example «with» means «*with the help of, in the company of*». In the second example it means «*by using*». As a guideline we can say:

NOREKIN	: help, company.
ZEREZ	: instrument, by using...

3. Another mistake that is made is to use the indeterminate form with the suffix -**TAZ** instead of -(e)**Z**. Here are some examples:

We are (talking) about Mikel and Andoni	*MikeletAZ eta AndoniTAZ ari gara.
	MikeleZ eta AndoniZ ari gara.
Do you remember [about] Jon and Bego?	*Gogoratzen zara JonETAZ eta BegoTAZ?
	Gogoratzen zara JonEZ eta Bego?

Another of these mistakes happens with the plural form, where it is common to use the form -**ETAZ** instead of the correct form -**EZ**. Here are a couple of examples:

Who are you (talking) about?	*Nortaz ari zara?
About friends.	LagunETAZ
	Nortaz ari zara? LagunEZ.
I don't trust politics	*Ni ez naiz politikoETAZ fido.
	Ni ez naiz politikoEZ fido.

3.2.9. WHERE (*Inessive*) - NON

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-(e)AN	-ETAN	-(e)TAN	-OTAN
		-(e)N	
komunEAN	komunETAN	komunETAN	komunOTAN
etxeAN	etxeETAN	etxeTAN	etxeOTAN
tabernAN	tabernETAN	tabernaTAN	tabernOTAN
	GasteizEN		
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	ADVERBS
Non	Honetan	Hemen	
Zertan	Horretan	Hor	
Zeinetan	Hartan	Han	
Zeintzuetan			
Zenbatetan	Hauetan		
	Horietan		
	Haietan		

Before doing a full analysis of this declension case, known as the *Inessive*, here are some examples:

Jon eskaltegiAN dago	: Jon is in the school (for) Euskara.
KomunEAN dago	: She/he is in the toilet.
GauEAN etorriko da	: She/he will come in the night.
Hori dendETAN saltzen dute	: They sell that in the shops.
EskuETAN dauzkat	: I have it in (my) hands.
Zein pisuTAN bizi da?	: On which floor does she/he live?
AskotAN joaten gara	: We (usually) go many times/often .
ZERTAN datza hori?	: What does that consist of?
Zenbat orduTAN egin duzu?	: In how many hours have you done it?
	{lit.}
Bost minutuTAN	: In five minutes.

The case of **NON** corresponds approximately with the prepositions «*in, on, at*» in English but it has a series of differences as well.

In the first place the declension suffixes of **NON** - “where” are used to express *location* just as much as *time*, that is, **NOIZ** - “when”.

NON?	etxeAN	: in the house.
NOIZ?	igandeAN	: on Sunday.

On the other hand, different case endings are used depending on whether the statement refers to an animate or inanimate object:

<i>Inanimate</i>	: NON
<i>Animate</i>	: NORENGAN

So, **NON** is only used with inanimate things, which is the reason for no personal pronouns in the earlier table.

NON has two indeterminate forms **-(e)N** and **-(e)TAN**. The **(e)** is only used with words ending in a consonant. Apart from a few exceptions, the forms apply according to the following rule:

-(e)TAN	: for common nouns
-(e)N	: for proper nouns

Here are some examples:

hiru etxeTAN	: in three houses
zein ospitalETAN?	: in which hospital?
BilboN	: in Bilbao
GasteizEN	: in Gasteiz

Note that this declension is also used for time expressions indicating a point in time when in English we don't have to use the preposition, for example:

aste honETAN	: this week
ostegun harTAN	: that Thursday

The Inessive is also used to express continuous activities such as:

lotan	: sleeping
ametsetan	: dreaming
lanean	: working

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

- You must be especially careful with words ending in a consonant, because it is easy to make the mistake of using the same ending as for vowels. For example:

She/he/it is in the toilet	*KomunAN dago. KomunEAN dago.
It is on the blackboard	*ArbelAN dago. ArbelEAN dago.
I have been in the hospital	*OspitalAN egon naiz. OspitalEAN egon naiz.

3.2.10. NONDIK - FROM WHERE, THROUGH WHERE, SINCE WHEN (*Ablative*)

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-(e)TIK	-ETATIK	-(e)TATIK	-OTATIK
		-(e)TIK	
komunETIK	komunETATIK	komunETATIK	komunOTATIK
etxeTIK	etxeETATIK	etxeTATIK	etxeOTATIK
tabernaTIK	tabernETATIK	tabernaTATIK	tabernOTATIK
	Gasteiz(E)TIK		
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	ADVERBS
Nondik	Honetatik	Hemendik	
Zertatik	Horretatik	Hortik	
Zeinetatik	Hartatik	Handik	
Zeintzuetatik			
Zenbate(ta)tik	Hauetatik		
	Horietatik		
	Haietatik		

The declension of **NONDIK**, known as the *Ablative*, is very similar to that of **NON** in the way in which it behaves. It is used to express *from* for the notions of space (**nondik**) just as much as notions of time (**noiztik**). Here are some examples:

NONDIK etorri zara?	: From where have you come?
KaleTIK nator	: I am coming from the street.
OspitalETIK dator	: She/he is coming from the hospital.
LeihoTIK sartu da	: She/he has come in/entered through the window.
Leku guztiETATIK	: From all places.
IgandeTIK nago hemen	: I have been here since Sunday.
Lau herriTATIK etorri dira	: They have come from four towns.
Leiho HORRETATIK sartu dira	: They came/have come in through that window.
HORTIK joan behar dugu	: We have to go over there/ that way .
HEMENDIK ez da inor pasa	: No-one has passed by here .
EibarTIK nator	: I am coming from Eibar.

As shown in the previous examples **NONDIK** has two different aspects:

a « <i>from</i> »	: leihoTIK	: from the window
b « <i>by</i> »	: leihoTIK	: by way of, out of, through the window

Also in this declension case there exist two forms for the indefinite, and, apart from the exceptions shown below, it has the following forms:

-(e)TATIK	:	common nouns
-(e)TIK	:	proper nouns

The proper nouns which end in a consonant can be in two forms:

-eTIK	:	GasteizETIK, ParisETIK, GaminizETIK.
-TIK	:	GasteizTIK, ParisTIK, GaminizTIK.

Another irregularity occurs with those words ending in **-n** or **-l**. Here are some examples:

Irun	:	IrunETIK / IrunDIK.
Brazil	:	BrasilETIK / BrasilDIK.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. An easy mistake to make is to decline singular words by inserting the article. For example:

I am coming from the bathroom	*KomunAtik nator. KomunETIK nator.
She/he has fallen from the table	*MahaiAtik jausi da. MahaiTIK jausi da.
She/he is coming from the hospital	*OspitalAtik dator. OspitalETIK dator.

2. Another mistake which is becoming more common is to misuse **NONDIK** because of the influence of Spanish, which deviates from the original Euskara usage. For example:

She/he will be somewhere there	*HORTIK egongo da. HOR NONBAIT egongo da.
Leave it somewhere over there	*Utzi HORTIK! Utzi HOR NONBAIT!
And Jon? He's going around Italy	*Eta Jon? ItaliaTIK dabil. Eta Jon? ItaliAN dabil.

3.2.11. NORA - TO WHERE (*Allative*)

	DEFINITE	INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-(e)RA	-ETARA	-(e)TARA -(e)RA	-OTARA
komunERA etxeRA tabernaRA	komunETARA etxeETARA tabernETARA Gasteiz(ER)A	komunETARA etxeTARA tabernaTARA	komunOTARA etxeOTARA tabernOTARA
INTERROGATIVES	DEMONSTRATIVES	ADVERBS	
Nora	Honetara	Hona	
Zertara	Horretara	Horra	
Zeinetara	Hartara	Hara	
Zeintzuetara			
Zenbate(ta)ra	Hauetara Horietara Haietara		

NORA functions in a similar way to NON and is known as the *Allative* case and represents the spatial concept of movement *to*. Here are some examples:

EtxeRA noa	: I am going [to] home.
OspitalERA eraman dute	: They have taken her/him to the hospital.
Umeak ikastolaRA doaz	: The children are going to the (Basque speaking) school.
Bilboko jaiETARA goaz	: We are going to the Bilbao festivals.
Zazpi kaleETARA joan gara	: We have gone to the seven streets.
Zazpi kaleTARA joan naiz	: I have gone to seven streets.
Goazen taberna HORRETARA	: Let's go to that tavern.
Zein euskaltegiTARA zoaz?	: Which euskaltegi {school for learning Euskara; expl.} are you going to?
NORA zoaz?	: [To] Where are you going?
ZERTARA zoaz?	: What are you going to?
DonostiaRA goaz	: We are going to Donostia.
Etorri HONA	: Come [to] here.

This case, similar to NON and NONDIK, is used to express time and space, and is only used with inanimate objects. Animate objects use the form NORENGANA.

3.2.12. NORANTZ - TOWARDS (*Directional*)

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-(e)RANTZ	-ETARANTZ	-(e)TARANTZ	-OTARANTZ
komunERANTZ	komunETARANTZ	komunETARANTZ	komunOTARANTZ
etxeRANTZ	etxeETARANTZ	etxeTARANTZ	etxeOTARANTZ
tabernaRANTZ	tabernETARANTZ	tabernaTARANTZ	tabernOTARANTZ
	GasteizERANTZ		
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	ADVERBS
Norantz		Honetarantz	Hanantz
Zertarantz		Horretarantz	Horrantz
Zeinetarantz		Hartarantz	Harantz
Zeintzuetarantz			
Zenbate(ta)rantz		Hauetarantz	
		Horietarantz	
		Haietarantz	

The declension of **NORANTZ** , which is known as the *Directional* case, is derived from the case of **NORA**:

$$\text{NORA} + \text{-NTZ} = \text{NORANTZ}$$

This case represents the concept of towards. Here are some examples:

EtxeRANTZ doa	: She/he is going towards home.
OspitalERANTZ daramate	: They are taking her/him (up) to[wards] the hospital.
GoRANTZ joan da	: She/he has gone [towards] up.
ZuhaitzETARANTZ joan da	: She/he has gone towards the trees.
BaserriETARANTZ joan dira	: They have gone towards the farm houses.
NORANTZ joan da?	: Where has she/he gone to[wards] ?
Zein herriTARANTZ joan da?	: Towards which town has she/he gone?
HARANTZ joan dira	: They have gone to[wards] there .
Mendi HORRETARANTZ joan da	: She/he has gone towards that mountain.
NafarroaRANTZ joan dira	: They have gone towards Navarra.

In some places different forms are used:

NORANTZA	: etxerantza, gorantza, Bilborantza.
NORUNTZ	: etxeruntz, goruntz, Bilboruntz.

3.2.13. NORAINO - UP TO WHERE, AS FAR AS WHERE (Terminative)

	DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>	
-(e)RAINO	-ETARAINO	-(e)TARAINO	-OTARAINO	-(e)RAINO
k•munERAINO	k•munETARAINO	k•munETARAINO	komunOTARAINO	
etxeRAINO	etxeETARAINO	etxeTARAINO	etxeOTARAINO	
tabernaRAINO	tabernETARAINO	tabernaTARAINO	tabernOTARAINO	
	GasteizERAINO			
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES		ADVERBS
Noraino		Honetaraino		Honaino
Zertaraino		Horretaraino		Horraino
Zeinetaraino		Hartaraino		Haraino
Zeintzuetaraino				
Zenbate(ta)raino		Hauetaraino		
		Horietaraino		
		Haietaraino		

NORAINO which is known as the *Terminative* and means *as far as*, is derived from NORA:

$$\text{NORA} + \text{-INO} = \text{NORAINO}$$

Here are some examples:

KokoteRAINO nago	: I am utterly fed up {I've had it up to the neck ; lit.}
TontorrERAINO heldu da	: She/he has arrived up at the top .
AzkenERAINO joan da	: She/he has gone up to the end .
Azken etxeETARAINO joan da	: She/he has gone up to the last houses.
NORAINO joan zara?	: How far have you gone? { As far as where have you gone; lit.}
Zein puntuTARAINO?	: Up to which point?
HONAINO ez da heldu	: She/he hasn't reached/arrived as far as here . {up to here; lit.}
Mendi HARTARAINO joann naiz	: I have gone as far as that mountain over there .
AfrikaRAINO heldu dira	: They have arrived/reached as far as Africa.
BilboRAINO noa	: I am going as far as Bilbao.

This case is usually used to express spatial relationships and in certain expressions it is also used for temporal relationships. **NORAINO**, in the same way as **NORA**, is only used with inanimate objects. With animate beings **NORENGANAINO** is used.

It has two forms for the indeterminate:

-(e)TARAINO	: common nouns
-(e)RAINO	: proper nouns

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHKO AKATSAK*

1. Confusing **NORAINO** with **ARTE**. The general rule is that **NORAINO** expresses the spatial, while **ARTE** expresses time.

I have read up to/until the 100th page	*Ehungarren orrialdera ARTE irakurri dut. Ehungarren orrialdeRAINO irakurri dut.
Count up to twenty	*Zenbatu hogeira ARTE. Zenbatu hogeirRAINO.

3.2.14. NONGO - OF WHERE, FROM WHERE (*Locative-Genitive*)

NONGO expresses the notion of the *Locative-Genitive* case which in English is either expressed as «*of*» or implied with no specific word or marker. The notion of “belonging to” a place is also expressed using **NONGO** which in English is represented by «*from*» as in “from London”. This declension is not normally used with animate beings. So the personal pronouns are not declined. This declension case can be used to express space (**nongo**) as well as time (**noizko**).

It is worthwhile noting that Larry Trask is particularly critical of this interpretation and he maintains the Locative-Genitive is not a declension case at all but rather a special use of the “relational” suffix **-KO**. He discusses the broader use of **-KO** in its role as being an adjectival modifier able to convert a very broad range of adverbial clauses into adjectival phrases and hence is placed in a noun phrase.

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-(e)KO	-ETAKO	-(e)TAKO	-OTAKO
		-(e)KO	
komunEKO	komunETAKO	komunETAKO	komunOTAKO
etxeKO	etxeETAKO	etxeTAKO	etxeOTAKO
tabernaKO	tabernETAKO	tabernaTAKO	tabernOTAKO
	Gasteiz(E)KO		
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	ADVERBS
Nongo	Honetako	Hemengo	
Zertako	Horretako	Horko	
Zeinetako	Hartako	Hango	
Zeintzuetako			
Zenbate(ta)ko	Hauetako		
	Horietako		
	Haietako		

The declension of **NONGO** is obtained by adding **-KO** to the **NON** declension and by applying the convention of changing **K** to **G** after **N**, when in composition:

NON + -KO = NONGO

Here are some examples:

- Bigarren pisuKOAK** : The ones **on** the second floor.
- KomunEKO leihoa** : The bathroom[’s] window.
- IturriKO ura da** : It is water **from** the fountain.
- LarunbatETAKO filmea** : Saturday[’s] movie.

IgandeKO partidua	: The Sunday['s] game.
HerriETAKO alkateak	: The mayors of the towns.
NONGO da hori?	: Where is that (person) from ?
NONGOAK zarete?	: Where are you {pl.} from ?
NONGO alkatea da?	: Where is the mayor from ?
Zein alderdiTAKOAK dira?	: Which party are they from ?
HEMENGOAK dira	: They are from here .
Hiru orduTAKO filmea	: A three hour movie.
BizkaiKO herriak	: The towns of Bizkaia.
GasteizKOAK dira	: They are from Gasteiz.

This case presents similar constraints to those in the case of **NOREN**. The first of these is in the order of the words in a phrase. It is always placed before the word that it governs, in the same way the apostrophe 's' is used in English. So, **NONGO** is not used by itself, but with another word which can be declined. For example:

BilboKO mutilA	: the boy from Bilbao	: the Bilbao boy.
BilboKO mutilAK	: the boys from Bilbao	: the Bilbao boys.
BilboKO mutilARI	: to the boy from Bilbao	: to the Bilbao boy.
BilboKO mutilAREKIN	: with the boy from Bilbao	: with the Bilbao boy.

Sometimes this second word is implied so, the suffixes which should be attached to the omitted word are placed directly after the **NONGO** case ending:

EtxeKO ardoA	- etxeKOA	: the house's (wine)
BaionaKO mutilAK	- BaionaKOAK	: the Baionese (boys)
BiharKO filmea	- biharKOA	: tomorrow's (movie)

There are two possible ways to construct questions using this declension:

a) NONGO da mutil hori?	From where is that boy? {lit.}
b) NONGO mutila da hori?	The boy from where is that one? {lit.}

As shown, the second way to question is incorrect grammar in English, but note that it is correct in Euskara.

NONGO presents us with two forms for the indeterminate:

-(e)TAKO	: common nouns
-(e)KO	: proper nouns

The proper nouns which end in a consonant come in three forms:

- eKO: ParisEKO, LondresEKO, EibarrEKO, GaisteizEKO, ZarautzEKO...
- KO : ParisKO, LondresKO, EibarKO, GaisteizKO, ZarauzKO...
- GO : IrunGO, UrdiainGO, BerlinGO, MadrilGO BrasilGO...

Notice that the words ending in -N or -L use -GO. Those ending in -TZ lose the T when you add the -KO: ZarauTZ - Zarauzko.

3.2.14.1. NONGO/NONDIK

You should not confuse the case of NONGO with NONDIK.

- Ni ArabaKOA naiz. : I am from Araba.
- ParisTIK nator. : I am coming from Paris.

3.2.14.2. NONGO/NOREN

The difference between these two cases needs careful attention because of their similarities. NONGO in general indicates the spatial or temporal relationship, while NOREN expresses property, or ownership.

- a) The influence of the television = telebistAREN eragina
- b) The programmes on television = telebistaKO saioak

Sometimes both are possible, but the meaning of the phrases is different. For example:

- a) Euskal HerriKO egoera : The situation of Euskal Herria.
- b) Euskal HerriAREN egoera : The situation of Euskal Herria.

Example a) refers to the situation IN Euskal Herria, making Euskal Herria a place. Example b) refers to the situation OF Euskal Herria; in other words, Euskal Herria is seen as a people rather than a place.

Here are some more examples:

- Ekarri liburuKO argazkia.
Bring the photo from the book. {the one that is in the book; expl.}
- Ekarri liburuAREN argazkia.
Bring the photo from the book. {the one that has been taken out of the book; expl.}
- KutxaKO faktura behar dut.
I need the bill from the box. {that is in the box; expl.}
- KutxaAREN faktura behar dut.
I need the bill of the box. {that corresponds to the box; expl.}

3.2.14.3. USING -KO AND NOT USING -KO

There is a difference between using and not using **-KO**:

(A) farmhouse door	: basseri ate
The door of the farmhouse	: basseriko atea

The first case creates a class of objects called farmhouse doors, whereas the second case is a particular instance.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. An easy mistake to make is to decline words merging the article as if it were a part of the word. For example:

Close the toilet door	*Itxi komunAko atea. Itxi komunEKO atea.
Pick up the pears from the ground	*LurrAko madariak hartu. LurrEKO madariak hartu.
The ones from the bus	*AutobusAkoak. AutobusEKOAK.

2. Another common mistake is to change the order and place the declined word after the main word:

The boy from Bilbao	*Mutila BilboKO. BilboKO mutila.
The people from here	*Jendea HEMENGO. HEMENGO jendea.

3. It is also common to use **NONGO** by itself without the appropriate article which is not correct in Euskara. For example:

I am from Bilbao	*Ni BilboKO_ naiz. Ni BilboKOA naiz.
These are from Gasteiz	*Horiek GasteizKO_ dira. Horiek GasteizKOAK dira.
Where is that one from ?	*NONGO_ da hori? NONGOA da hori?
Where are you {pl.} from ?	*NONGO_ zarete zuek? NONGOAK zarete zuek?

3.2.15. NORAKO - FOR WHERE, FOR WHAT PURPOSE (*Destinative*)

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-(e)RAKO	-ETARAKO	-(e)TARAKO	-OTARAKO
		-(e)RAKO	
komunERAKO	komunETARAKO	komunETARAKO	komunOTARAKO
etxeRAKO	etxeETARAKO	etxeTARAKO	etxeOTARAKO
tabernaRAKO	tabernETARAKO	tabernaTARAKO	tabernOTARAKO
	GasteizERAKO		
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	ADVERBS
Norako	Honetarako	Honako	
Zertarako	Horretarako	Horra	
Zeinetarako	Hartarako	Harako	
Zeintzuetarako			
Zenbate(ta)rako	Hauetarako		
	Horietarako		
	Haietarako		

NORAKO, known as the Destinative case, is obtained by adding **-KO** to the case of NORA:

$$\text{NORA} + \text{-KO} = \text{NORAKO}$$

Here are some examples:

NORAKO da altzari hori?	: Where is that piece of furniture for ?
ZERTARAKO balio du horrek?	: For what use/value is that?
Zein autoTARAKO da?	: Which car is it for ?
EtxeRAKO handiegia da	: It is too big for the house.
Ispilu hori komunERAKO da	: That mirror is for the toilet.
OspitalETARAKO egin dute	: They have done it for the hospitals.
IgandeRAKO utzi dut	: I have left it for/until sunday.
Hiru egunETARAKO joan da	: She/he has gone for three days.
Gauza askoTARAKO balio du	: It is useful for a lot of things.
HORRETARAKO ez du balio	: It isn't useful for that .
HONAKO erosi ditut	: I have bought them for here .

This case is only used with inanimate things, hence there are no personal pronouns. As in the case of NORA, NORAKO is used to express time as well as spatial notions.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. In English **NORENTZAT** and **NORAKO** are both expressed by the word «for». But they have different meanings in Euskara. So how do we know which word to use?

NORENTZAT: This is derived from **NOREN**; so, this means that the subject enters into the possession of something. For example:

Hau JonENTZAT da : This is **for** Jon. {it becomes the property OF Jon; expl. }

NORAKO: In this case possession is not usually possible so, the word to which it is applied is considered more as a place, or an object rather than something that can have possession. For example:

Hau autoRAKO da : This is **for the** car. {it will be placed in the car; expl. }

On some occasions both forms are correct, but they carry different nuances. The difference is very similar to that between **NOREN** and **NONGO**. Here is an example:

- a) **herriARENTZAT:** for the town. Here the town is personalized, or in other words, is considered as something alive (animate); hence it is possible that it is talking about the people that form a part of the town. This would refer to something that was to be owned by the people of the village.
- b) **herriRAKO:** for the town. This is different from example a) because it is referring to the town as an inanimate object, such as a place. This would refer to something that might be for the use or benefit of the village or placed in the village.

3.2.16. NORENGAN - WHERE (for animates - bizidunentzat) (Inessive/Locative)

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-A(REN)GAN	-ENGAN	-(r)ENGAN	-ONGAN
mutiA(REN)GAN	mutiENGAN	mutiENGAN	mutiONGAN
semeA(REN)GAN	semeENGAN	semeRENGAN	semeONGAN
neska(REN)GAN	neskENGAN	neskRENGAN	neskONGAN
		Josu(REN)GAN	
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	PERSONAL PRONOUNS
No(ren)gan	Honengan	Ni(re)gan	
Nortzu(en)gan	Horrengan	Hi(re)gan	
Harengan	Harengan	Harenga	
Zeinengan	Gu(re)gan		
Zeintzuengan	Hauengan	Zu(re)gan	
Zenbatengan	Horiengan	Zuengan	
	Haiengan	Haiengan	

This case is known as the Inessive or the Locative and uses **NOREN** for its construction as shown below:

NOREN + -GAN = NORENGAN

But its meaning is similar to that of **NON**:

NORENGAN : for animate beings
NON : for inanimate things

Here are some examples:

Konfidantza dauka umeARENGAN : He/she has confidence **in the** child.
GurasoENGAN dago arazoa : The problem is **in/with** the parents.
ZUREGAN dago arazoa : The problem is **in/with you**.

When using this case the mark of the case of **NOREN** is frequently left out. Here are some examples:

ZUGAN dago arazoa : The problem is **in/with you**.
AmaGAN dago nire itxaropena : My hope is **in** mother.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHICO AKATSAK*

1. Some personal pronouns present irregularities with respect to the rest of the forms. So, **ni(re)gan**, **hi(re)gan**, **gu(re)gan** and **zu(re)gan** lose the **-N**, in the same way that they do with **NOREN**. Due to this irregularity it is easy to insert **-N-** with the declensions. For example:

The problem is **in you**

* **Arazoa zureNgan dago.**

Arazoa ZU(RE)GAN dago.

2. Another mistake that is easily made is to decline animated beings as if they were inanimate, in other words as in the declension of **NON**. (see 3.2.9.)

3.2.17. NORENGANDIK - FROM WHOM (for animates - bizidunentzat) (Ablative)

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-A(REN)GANDIK	-ENGANDIK	-(r)ENGANDIK	-ONGANDIK
mutilA(REN)GANDIK	mutilENGANDIK	mutilENGANDIK	mutilONGANDIK
semeA(REN)GANDIK	semeENGANDIK	semeRENGANDIK	semeONGANDIK
neskaA(REN)GANDIK	neskaENGANDIK	neskaRENGANDIK	neskaONGANDIK
		Josu(REN)GANDIK	
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	PERSONAL PRONOUNS
No(ren)gandik	Honengandik	Ni(re)gandik	
Nortzu(en)gandik	Horrengandik	Hi(re)gandik	
	Harengandik	Harengandik	
Zeinengandik	Gu(re)gandik		
Zeintzuengandik	Hauengandik	Zu(re)gandik	
Zenbatengandik	Horiengandik	Zuengandik	
	Haiengandik	Haiengandik	

NORENGANDIK is called the *Ablative* or the *Elative* and is also derived from the case of NOREN:

NOREN + -GANDIK = NORENGANDIK

As far as the meaning goes, this is similar to that of NONDIK:

NORENGANDIK : for animate beings
NONDIK : for inanimate things

Here are some examples:

NORENGANDIK zatoz? : Who are you coming **from**?
 MedikuARENGANDIK nator : I am coming **from the** doctor's.
 Lagun batENGANDIK nator : I am coming **from** a friend's.
 GurasoENGANDIK nator : I come **from** (my) parents'.
 Zein medikuRENGANDIK zatoz : Which doctor are you coming **from**?
 JonENGANDIK jaso dut agindua : I have received the order **from** Jon.
 NIREGANDIK ez itxaron ezer : Don't expect anything **from** me.
 HORRENGANDIK gatoz : We are coming **from that** (person's).

In spoken Euskara it is common to omit the mark of **NOREN**. For example:

AmaGANDIK nator	: I am coming from mother.
OsabaGANDIK jaso dut	: I have received it from uncle.
AmaiaGANDIK dator	: She/he is coming from Amaia.

A use of this declension not related to motion can be seen in the following contrastive examples:

Berek amaRENGANDIK ikasi zuen	: She/he learnt from (her) mother.
Bere amak irakasi zuen	: Her/his mother taught her/him.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. A mistake which is commonly made is to put **-N** with all of the personal pronouns, as is done with the rest of the forms. For example:

Don't get too far from me	*Ez urrundu nireNgandik. Ez urrundu NIREGANDIK.
That hasn't come out from us	*Hori ez da gureNgandik atera. Hori ez da GUREGANDIK atera.

2. Another frequent mistake is to confuse this case with **NORENGATIK** because of their similarities.

3.2.18. NORENGANA - TO WHOM (for animates - bizidunentzat) (Allative)

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-A(REN)GANA	-ENGANA	-(r)ENGANA	-ONGANA
mutilA(REN)GANA	mutilENGANA	mutilENGANA	mutilONGANA
semeA(REN)GANA	semeENGANA	semeRENGANA	semeONGANA
neskaA(REN)GANA	neskaENGANA	neskaRENGANA	neskaONGANA
		Josu(REN)GANA	
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	PERSONAL PRONOUNS
No(ren)gana	Honengana	Ni(re)gana	
Nortzu(en)gana	Horrengana	Hi(re)gana	
	Harengana	Harengana	
Zeinengana	Gu(re)gana		
Zeintzuengana	Hauengana	Zu(re)gana	
Zenbatengana	Horiengana	Zuengana	
	Haiengana	Haiengana	

This declension is the same as **NORENGAN** in the sense that it is derived from **NOREN**, and has a similar behavior as far as the form goes:

NOREN + **-GANA** = **NORENGANA**

As far as the sense goes, it is similar to **NORA**:

NORENGANA : for animate beings
NORA : for inanimate things

Here are some examples:

NORENGANA zoaz? : **To whom/whose** (place) are you going (to visit)?

MedikuARENGANA noa : I am going **to the** doctor's.

LagunARENGANA joan da : She/he has gone **to the** friend's.

GurasoENGANA joan gara : We have gone **to** [the] (our) parent's.

Zein medikuRENGANA zoaz? : **To which** doctor[']s are you going?

Lau lagunENGANA jo dut : I have gone **to** four friend's.

MikelENGANA joango naiz : I will go **to** Mikel's.

GUREGANA etorri dira : They have come **to us**. {**our's**; lit.}

Ez joan HORRENGANA : Don't go **to that** (person's).

The component of the case of **NOREN** is frequently left out. For example:

AmaGANA joan da	: She/he has gone to mother.
TxakurraGANA hurbildu da	: She/he has come up to the dog.
AtitaGANA joan dira	: They have gone to grandfather.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. A mistake that is commonly made is to decline animated beings as if they were inanimate. For example:

I am going to the doctor	*MedikuRA noa. MedikuARENGANA noa.
I have to go to the dentist	*DentistaRA joan behar dut. DentistARENGANA joan behar dut.
I have gone to the optometrist	*OkulistaRA joan naiz. OkulistARENGANA joan naiz.

2. Another common mistake appears in the use of personal pronouns. In effect, some of these are irregular with respect to the rest of the forms which lose the -N of **NOREN**. As an analogy, with the rest of the forms, sometimes this -N is added by mistake. For example:

She/he has come to me	*NireNgana etorri da. NIREGANA etorri da.
She/he has turned to us	*GureNgana jo du. GUREGANA jo du.

3.2.19. NORENGANANTZ - TOWARDS WHOM (for animates - bizidunentzat) (*Directional*)

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-A(REN)GANANTZ	-ENGANANTZ	-(r)(EN)GANANTZ	-ONGANANTZ
mutilA(REN)GANANTZ	mutilENGANANTZ	mutilENGANANTZ	mutilONGANANTZ
semeA(REN)GANANTZ	semeENGANANTZ	semeRENGANANTZ	semeONGANANTZ
neskaA(REN)GANANTZ	neskENGANANTZ	neskaRENGANANTZ	neskONGANANTZ
		Josu(REN)GANANTZ	

INTERROGATIVES	DEMONSTRATIVES	PERSONAL PRONOUNS
No(ren)ganantz	Hone(n)ganantz	Ni(re)ganantz
Nortzu(en)ganantz	Horre(n)ganantz	Hi(re)ganantz
	Hare(n)ganantz	Hare(n)ganantz
Zeinenganantz	Gu(re)ganantz	
Zeintzuenganantz	Hauenganantz	Zu(re)ganantz
Zenbatenganantz	Horienganantz	Zuenganantz
	Haienganantz	Haienganantz

This declension is known as one of the variants of the *Adlative* by Basque grammarians and like the previous one is derived from the declension of NOREN. Here is a template for its use:

$$\text{NOREN} + \text{-GANANTZ} = \text{NORENGANANTZ}$$

This is similar in meaning to the declension case NORANTZ but it is restricted for use with animate beings as shown below:

NORENGANANTZ	: animate beings
NORANTZ	: inanimate things

Here are various examples of its use:

NORENGANANTZ joan da?	: Who did she/he go towards?
AmaRENGANANTZ	: Towards mother.
BeraRENGANANTZ hurbildu zen	: She/he approached [towards] her/him.
MikelENGANANTZ joan zen	: She/he went towards Mikel.
Etorri honantz, niREGANANTZ	: Come towards this and towards me.

Often when speaking Euskara in the singular or for pronouns or proper nouns the case marker for **NOREN** is omitted, for example: **zuRENGANATZ** = **zuGANANTZ**.

Here are some examples of this usage:

Zoaz AmaiaGANANTZ : You go **towards** Amaia.

Txakurra niGANANTZ hurbildu zen : The dog (came) closer **towards** me.

3.2.20. NORENGANAINO - UP TO WHOM (for animates - bizidunentzat) (*Terminative*)

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-A(REN)GANAINO	-ENGANAINO	ONGANAINO	-(r)(EN)GANAINO-
mutilA(REN)GANAINO	mutilENGANAINO	mutilENGANAINO	mutilONGANAINO
semeA(REN)GANAINO	semeENGANAINO	semeRENGANAINO	semeONGANAINO
neskaA(REN)GANAINO	neskENGANAINO	neskaRENGANAINO	neskONGANAINO
		Josu(REN)GANAINO	
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	PERSONAL PRONOUNS
No(ren)ganaino	Hone(n)ganaino	Ni(re)ganaino	
Nortzu(en)ganaino	Horre(n)ganaino	Hi(re)ganaino	
	Har(e/en)ganaino	Har(e/en)ganaino	
Zeinenganaino	Gu(re)ganaino		
Zeintzueganaino	Hauenganaino	Zu(re)ganaino	
Zenbate(n)ganaino	Horienganaino	Zueganaino	
	Haienganaino	Haienganaino	

This declension is known as another of the *Adlative* cases by Basque grammarians and like the previous one is marked by the declension of **NOREN**. Here is a template for its use:

NOREN + **-GANAINO** = **NORENGANAINO**

This declension is similar in meaning to the case of **NORAINO** but unlike that it is reserved solely for animate beings.

NORENGANAINO : animate beings
NORAINO : inanimate beings

Here are some examples of its use:

NORENGANAINO joan da? : To whom has she/he gone **up to**?
AmaRENGANAINO heldu da : She/he has reached [**up to**] mother.
Ezetz guREGANAINO heldu! : Don't come **up to** us.

Often in spoken Euskara the **NOREN** case marker is omitted with the singular, with pronouns and proper nouns. For example **zuREGANAINO** = **zuGANAINO**. This usage can be seen in this usage:

OsabaGANAINO joan behar duzue : You {pl.} must go **up to** (your) uncle.
Zati batzuk niGANAINO heldu ziren : Some pieces reached (**right**) **up to** me.

3.2.21. NORENGATIK - FOR WHOM (*Causal*)

DEFINITE		INDEFINITE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural Hurbila</i>
-A(REN)GATIK	-ENGATIK	-(r)(EN)GATIK	-ONGATIK
mutilA(REN)GATIK	mutilENGATIK	mutilENGATIK	mutilONGATIK
semeA(REN)GATIK	semeENGATIK	semeRENGATIK	semeONGATIK
neskA(REN)GATIK	neskENGATIK	neskRENGATIK	neskONGATIK
		Josu(REN)GATIK	
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	PERSONAL PRONOUNS
No(ren)gatik	Hone(n)gatik	Ni(re)gatik	
Nortzu(en)gatik	Horre(n)gatik	Hi(re)gatik	
Zergatik	Har(e/en)gatik	Har(e/en)gatik	
Zeinengatik	Gu(re)gatik		
Zeintzuengatik	Hauengatik	Zu(re)gatik	
Zenbate(n)gatik	Horiengatik	Zuengatik	
	Haiengatik	Haiengatik	

This case is known as the *Causal* and is derived from **NOREN**:

NOREN + **-GATIK** = **NORENGATIK**

In English this declension expresses the ideas of *for*, *because of*, *on account of*, *in exchange for*. While Basque grammarians treat **-ENGATIK** as a full declension case, you will find English grammarians notably both King and Trask treat this as a postposition governed by the possessive-genitive case.

Here are some examples:

NORENGATIK egiten duzu?	: For whom do you do it?
ZERGATIK egin duzu?	: Why {from what; lit.} have you done it?
UmeARENGATIK egiten dut	: I do it for the child.
GurasoENGATIK etorri naiz	: I have come for (my) parents.
Hiru arrazoiRENGATIK	: For three reasons.
Gauza askoRENGATIK	: For many things.
ItziarrENGATIK etorri da	: She/he has come for Itziar.
HORREGATIK ez dut esan	: That is why {for that; lit.} I didn't tell her/him.
Neska HORRENGATIK egin dut	: I have done it for that girl.
NIREGATIK ez egin	: Don't do it for me .

This case often loses the **NOREN** component, leaving a simplified form. Here are some examples of this use:

UmeAGATIK joan gara	: We have gone for the child.
Lagun batAGATIK etorri naiz	: I have come because of a friend.
ZUGATIK egin dut	: I have done it for you .
AnaGATIK ez dut esan	: I haven't said it on account of Ana.
AmaGATIK egin dut	: I have done it for (my) mother.
GutxiGATIK ez du lortu	: She/he didn't get it for (a) little.

Demonstratives

In the demonstrative column, in the table at the beginning of this section, the singular has two possible forms:

a) horreNgatik	(animate beings)
b) horregatik	(inanimate things)

In effect, with the inanimate forms the following usages are applied: **HONEGATIK**, **HORREGATIK**, **HARGATIK**, while for the animate forms **HONENGATIK**, **HORRENGATIK**, **HARENGATIK** are used. Here are some examples:

HORRENGATIK zigortu naute	: They have punished me for that .
HORREGATIK zigortu naute	: For that {that's why; expl.} they have punished me
Ume HARENGATIK egin nuen	: I did it for that child.
Arrazoi HARGATIK egin nuen	: I did it for that reason.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

- Confusing the cases of **NORENGATIK** and **NORENGANDIK** because of their formal similarities, even though their meanings are different. For example:

I have done it for you	* ZUREGANDIK egin dut. ZUREGATIK egin dut.
I haven't said it for Josu	* Josu(REN)GANDIK ez dut esan. Josu(REN)GATIK ez dut esan.
- Another mistake is made when using some expressions in which the preposition «for» appears, and translating it as **-GATIK**, even though they don't express cause/purpose/beneficiary. To know when you should use **NOREN-GATIK** you can use the following method:

If when you substitute the preposition «for» in the expression for «as a cause of» and the phrase doesn't change in sense or become absurd, then **NOREN-GATIK** is the correct construction. For example:

I have bought it for one-thousand pesetas	*Mila pezetaGATIK erosi dut. Mila pezetaTAN erosi dut.
I have changed it in exchange for (a piece of) chewing gum	*Txikle batEGATIK aldatu diot. Txikle batEN TRUKE aldatu diot.
Killed by the police	*PoliziA(REN)GATIK hila. PoliziAK hila.

On occasions both forms are correct, but they have distinctly different meanings. For example:

- a) **Emakume batEK hila** : Killed by a woman. { A woman killed him/her/it; lit. }
- b) **Emakume BATE(N)GATIK hila** : Killed for a woman.

3. Another mistake occurs when you add -N to some personal pronouns which do not take it, as compared to the rest of the forms. For example:

I have brought it for you	*ZureNgatik ekarri dut. ZU(RE)GATIK ekarri dut.
Don't do it for me	*NireNgatik ez egin. NI(RE)GATIK ez egin.

3.2.22. NORTZAT - AS (SOMETHING ELSE), FOR (SOMETHING ELSE), TO BE (SOMETHING ELSE), AS BEING (SOMETHING ELSE) (*Essive/Translative*)

	DEFINITE		INDEFINITE
Singular		Plural	
-		-	-TZAT
			mutilTZAT semeTZAT neskaTZAT
INTERROGATIVES		DEMONSTRATIVES	PERSONAL PRONOUNS
Nortzat		-	-
Zertzat			

This declension case, known as the *Essive* or the *Translative*, does not present many difficulties, since it is similar to the partitive and it is only declined in the indeterminate form. It requires adding **-TZAT** to the word it declines. Here are some examples:

TontoTZAT hartu naute.

They have taken me **for** a fool.

ETAKoTZAT hartu dute.

They have taken her/him **as** (one of) ETA.

ZureTZAT hartu nau

She/he has taken me **for** you.

Zure semeTZAT hartu naute.

They have taken me **to be** your son.

Zuek, sendagileek, jainkoak zaretela uste duzu ala?

You {pl.}, doctors, do you think that you are gods or (what)?

Zuek, sendagileek, jainkoTAZT hartu dituzue?

You {pl.}, doctors, do you{pl.} take (yourselves) **as** gods?

Beste guztiak alferrak direla pentsatzen dut

I think that all the others are lazy.

Beste guztiak alferTZAT hartzen ditut

I took all the others **to be** lazy.

This case is normally used with only a small set of verbs: **HARTU, JO, EDUKI, and EMAN**. These verbs are effectively synonymous and hence can be interchanged. The auxiliary is always conjugated in **NOR-NORK**. Here are some examples:

ain(tzako)TZAT HARTU	: to take into consideration
onTZAT HARTU	: to take as good, to accept
tontoTZAT EDUKI	: to have as stupid
galduTZAT EMAN	: to give up as/for lost

The notion of “for” in this case can be confused with other usages of “for”, however this is overcome by thinking about the concept of one thing being similar or like or equivalent to another thing. The following pair of examples show how the use of -TZAT is an alternative for the expressions based on USTE, IRUDI, PENTSATU.

Iritzi desberdinatakoak etsaiak iruditzen zaizkio.

The different (looking) ones (that) arrived appeared to him/her (to be) the enemy.

Iritzi desberdinetakoak etsaiTZAT hartu ditu.

The different (looking) ones (that) arrived he took **for** the enemy.

3.3. SUMMARY - *Laburpena*

In this section we present a summary of what we have already covered on declensions. In reality it isn't necessary to memorize every single case, as the majority of them are derived from a few basic cases. So, we present the relationship of some to others so that the connections are obvious.

In Euskara there are three declensions which are useful to memorize, as they are fundamental: **NOR**, **NORK** and **NORI**. The rest of the declensions, apart for a few exceptions, can be obtained without much difficulty from the basic cases of: **NOREN** and **NON**.

NOREN			NON		
NOREN	+	TZAT	NO(N)	+	RA
NORE(N)	+	KIN	NO(N)	+	RAINO
NOREN	+	GATIK	NO(N)	+	RAKO
NOREN	+	GAN	NON	+	TIK (NONDIK)
NOREN	+	GANA	NON	+	KO (NONGO)
NOREN	+	GANDIK			

Here is a table of these five fundamental cases:

	Singular	Plural	Indefinite
NOR	-A	-AK	-∅
NORK	-AK	-EK	-(e)K
NORI	-ARI	-EI	-(r)I
NOREN	-AREN	-EN	-(r)EN
NON	-(e)AN	-ETAN	-(e)TAN

In order to use the table correctly you should also learn (as well as memorizing the table) the following rules:

1. **A + A = A** **E + A = EA**
 A + E = E **E + E = EE**
2. **(e)** : with words ending in a consonant.
 (r) : with words ending in a vowel.
3. The cases derived from **NON** present some irregularities:
 - a) The proper nouns take the indeterminate form, without **-TA-**, that is, just **-N**.
 - b) In the singular, the case of **NON** (**-(e)AN**) is an exception. The rest

of the cases do not carry the article **-(e)TIK, -(e)KO...**.

Here are some examples of the application of these rules:

NOREKIN: **NORE(N) + -KIN - NOREKIN**

<i>Sing.</i>	:	-ARE(N) + -KIN -	-AREKIN	(mutilAREKIN)
<i>Plur.</i>	:	-E(N) + -KIN -	-EKIN	(mutilEKIN)
<i>Indef.</i>	:	(r)E(N) + -KIN -	-(r)EKIN	(mutilEKIN)

NORA: **NO(N) + -RA - NORA**

<i>Sing.</i>	:	-(e)(AN) + -RA -	(e)RA	(etxeRA)
<i>Plur.</i>	:	-ETA(N) + -RA -	ETARA	(etxeETARA)
<i>Indef.</i>	:	-(e)TA(N) + -RA -	(e)TARA	(etxeTARA)

The only cases which are not in the tables are:

<i>Partitive</i>	:	Only comes in one form:	-(r)IK
NORTZAT	:	Only comes in one form:	-TZAT
ZEREZ	:	Has a form which is very similar to that of NORK ; it is enough to substitute the -K for a -Z :	

<i>Sing.</i>	:	-AK -	-AZ	(kotxeAZ)
<i>Plur.</i>	:	-EK -	-EZ	(kotxeEZ)
<i>Indef.</i>	:	-(e)K -	-(e)Z	(kotxeZ)

With a little practice, this system becomes very easy to use.

IV

MORPHOLOGY

- Morfologia

4. Introduction

in this section a series of topics are presented which, while they belong to morphology, they don't relate to declension of the noun, or conjugation of the verb. so, you could consider this section to be a collection of miscellanea, as many features of morphology have been included which are not covered in other chapters.

4.1. HOW/ WHAT IT'S LIKE - *NOLA/ NOLAKO(A/AK)*

These two forms are a source of much confusion, as they are not differentiated in English. Here is an example:

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a) NOLA dago Jon? | : HOW is Jon? {temporary state} |
| b) NOLAKO da Jon? | : HOW is Jon? {permanent state} |
| | : What kind of (person) is Jon? |

As shown, in English the same word is used, but in Euskara a different word is used. So, what makes them different?

4.1.1. HOW - *NOLA (ZELAN)*

Both of these interrogatives have the same meaning. Normally the response is an adverb, a participle, or an adjective.

4.1.1.1. *ADVERBS - Adberbioak*

It is common to respond to the question **NOLA(ZELAN)** by using a modal adverb. Here are the most commonly used words:

-TO/-DO	-KI	-RO
onDO : good	onGI : good	astiRO : slowly
txarTO : bad	gaizKI : bad	geldiRO : slowly
hobeTO : better	hobeKI : better	berriRO : again
ederTO : very good	ederKI : very good	zahaRO : completely
poliTO : beautifully	poliKI : slowly	

(note: the "slowly" word in column three (**RO**) is two different concepts in Euskara, but there is only one equivalent in English)

-IK

poziK : content
isilik : in silence
zutik : upright
bakarrik : alone

-KA

oihuka : screaming
harrika : throwing stones
kolpeka : hitting
bakarKa : by yourself, lonely

Here are some examples:

ZELAN zabilta? : **How** are you?
Ni ONDO eta zu? : I('m) **good**, and you?
NOLA lo egin duzu? : **How** did you sleep?
Nahiko TXARTO lo egin dut. : I have slept **badly** [enough].
ZELAN irten zaizu? : **How** did it come out for you?
EDERTO, eta bihar HOBETO. : **Very well**, and **better** tomorrow.
ISILIK egon, ez gaude BAKARRIK eta. : **Be quiet**, because we aren't **alone**.
ZUTIK jarri eta OIHUKA eta hasi KOLPEKA zen.
 She/he stood **upright** and started to **yell** and **hit**.

As well as the examples above there are three modal adverbs which come from demonstratives:

HONELA : in this way
HORRELA : in that way
HALA : in that (distant) way

Hau HONELA egin behar da : This must be done like this. {in this way; lit.}
Porrusalda ez da HORRELA egiten : The leek sauce is not made like that. {in that way; lit.}
HALA bada, hobe : Like that, better. (Yes) it is like that, better.

4.1.1.2. PARTICIPLES - Partizipioak

We can also respond to the question **NOLA?** with a participle. In Euskara there are four participles:

a) - \emptyset : **ikusi, egin, apurtu, hartu, egosi...**
 b) **-TA** : **ikusiTA, eginDA, apurtuTA, egosiTA...**
 c) **-(R)IK** : **ikusiRIK, eginIK, apurtuRIK, egosiRIK...**
 d) **-(A)Z** : **ikusiZ, eginAZ, apurtuZ, egosiZ**

apurtuA

The first of the participles can be declined, and functions just like any adjective. The use of participles in this manner are perfective, that is, they indicate something has happened and been completed. Here are some examples:

patata egosiAK	: boiled potatoes
patata frijituEKIN	: with fried potatoes
arka galduAREN bila	: search of the lost ark
liburu debekatuAK	: the prohibited books
Aulki apurtuAN dago	: She/he/it is in the broken chair.
Etxe sorginduTIK nator	: I am coming from the haunted house.
Guk eginA	: Made by us
Atzo etorriA	: Having come yesterday

apurtuTA, apurtuRIK

The other two participles are practically the same, and they are created by adding the suffixes **-TA (-DA)** and **-(R)IK** to the verb. Here are some examples:

For the verbs ending in **-N** or **-L**, then **-TA** is transformed into **-DA**:

-TA	: apurtuTA, ikusiTA, beteTA, gorteTA...
-DA	: hildaDA, esanDA, joanDA, eginDA, izanDA...

The verbs which end in vowels take the form of **-RIK**; the rest of the verbs have the form **-IK**:

-RIK	: apurtuRIK, ikusiRIK, beteRIK, gordeRIK...
-IK	: hiliIK, esanIK, joanIK, eginIK, izanIK...

These participles behave as adverbs, so they cannot be declined. Here are some examples:

NOLA daude leihoak?	: How are the windows? {in what way - shut or open; expl.}
Bata ITXITA, baina bestea ZABALIK.	: [The] one is shut , but the other is open .
ZELAN zaude?	: How are you?
NOLA zaude?	: How are you?
Oso NEKATUTA nago.	: I am very tired .
NOLA dago autoa?	: How is the car?
Autoa HONDATUTA dago.	: The car is broken .

These constructions cannot be declined, so they are always the same, whether the subject is plural or singular. Here is an example:

Hau apurtuTA dago.	: This (one) is broken.
Hauek apurtuTA daude.	: These (ones) are broken.
{never *apurtuTAK; expl.}	

In some cases the adjective has the suffix **-(r)IK** instead of the participle. Here are some examples:

zabalik	: open
hutsik	: empty
biluzik	: naked
bakarrik	: alone
gaixorik	: sick
ortozik	: barefoot
bizirik	: alive

apurtuZ, apurtuAZ

This participle is formed by adding **-Z** or **-AZ**, depending on dialect, to the standard form of the verb. This construction is equivalent to the present participle in English, that is verbs ending in *-ing* as used in adverbial clauses. Here are some examples:

Liburua hasiZ onena egin nuen	: Starting the book was the best thing I did.
Kotxea saldiZ, diru asko irabazi zuen	: (By) selling the car, he earned a lot of many.
Etxeari begiratuAZ, berdina nahi du	: Looking at the house, he wanted (one) the same.

4.1.1.3. ADJECTIVES - Acljektiboak

It is also normal to respond to the question **NOLA (ZELAN)** with an adjective. In this case the adjective takes the indeterminate declension, that is, without an article. For example:

ZELAN zaude?	: How are you?
Gaur oso TRISTE nago	: Today I am very sad.
NOLA aurkitu duzu?	: How did you find her/him?
Oso LASAI aurkitu dut	: I found her/him very peaceful.
NOLA dabil ama?	: How is mother going?
Azken bolada honetan LARRI dabil	: Right now {on this last occasion; lit.} she is doing poorly.

On some occasions the modal suffix **-RIK** is added to the adjective. For example:

NOLA dago Jon?	: How is Jon?
GAISORIK dago etxean.	: He is sick at home.
ZELAN zaude?	: How are you?
Gaur TRISTERIK nago.	: Today I am sad .

4.1.1.4. OTHER FORMS - Beste Formak

Some other ways to answer the question **NOLA (ZELAN)** exist. Here are some examples:

ZELAN egon zara?	: How have you been?
Oso GUSTORA egon naiz.	: I have been very happy .
NOLA pasa duzu?	: How has it gone for you? {How have you passed time; lit. }
PRIMERAN pasa dut.	: I have gone great . {lit. }
ZELAN egin behar dut?	: How do I have to do it?
Egin nahi duzuN BEZALA	: Do it as you want to. {like you want to do it; lit. }
NOLA daude gurasoak?	: How are (your) parents?
Beti BEZALA daude.	: They are as they usually are. {They are like/as always; lit. }

4.1.2. HOW, WHAT SORT OF - *NOLAKO (ZELAKO)*

These forms are derived from the forms in the previous section:

NOLA	+	-KO	-	NOLAKO
ZELAN	+	-KO	-	ZELAKO

Normally an adjective is used to respond to these questions. For example:

NOLAKOA da zure etxea?	: How is your house?
TXIKIA, baina POLITA.	: Small , but beautiful .
ZELAKOAK dira ikasleak?	: How are the students?
Oso JATORRAK dira.	: They are very nice .
NOLAKO neskek dira?	: What sort of girls are they?
Neska POLITAK dira.	: They are attractive girls.
ZELAKO erlojua nahi duzu?	: What sort of a watch do you want?
Erlojua DIGITALA nahi dut.	: I want a digital watch.

As shown in these examples, and as occurs in the case of **NONGO**, there are two ways to ask a question and hence two ways to answer:

- a) **NOLAKO mutilAK dira?**
What kind of boys are they?
- b) **NOLAKOAK dira mutilak?**
How are the boys?

Mutil jatorrak dira.
 They are nice boys.

MutilAK jatorrak dira.
 The boys are nice.

In example a) **mutil** and **jator** form a phrase; in example b) they are independent, and form a clause. In example b) you do not ask ***NOLAKO mutilAK dira mutilak?** because it doesn't make sense to repeat **mutilak**. In some circumstances both forms are possible. For example:

- a)
ZELAKO mutilAK dira zure lehengusuak?
What kind of boys are your cousins?
- b)
ZELAKOAK dira zure lehengusuak?
What are your cousins like?

As in the case of **NOLAKO (ZELAKO)**, there are three forms that are derived from the demonstratives:

HONELAKO	: like this one
HORRELAKO	: like that one
HALAKO	: like that [distant] one

Here are some examples:

HONELAKO hiru behar ditut	: I need three like this one .
HORRELAKORIK ez daukagu	: We don't have any like that one .
HALAKOAK gustatzen zaizkit	: I like (ones) like those ones . {(Ones) like those appeal to me; lit.}

Apart from these forms there are other ways to respond to **NOLAKO (ZELAKO)**. For example:

NOLAKOAK daukazu?	: What sort {pl.} do you have?
Zureak BEZALAKOAK.	: (Ones) like yours.
ZELAKOAK dira?	: What kind are they?
PRIMERAKOAK dira.	: They are phenomenal .

4.1.3. NOLA *is not* NOLAKO

As we have seen, **NOLA** and **NOLAKO** are different, but where does the difference lie? On one hand, **NOLA (ZELAN)** is invariable, so it cannot be declined. But **NOLAKO (ZELAKO)** can be declined. On the other hand, **NOLA** expects a response of an adverb

(**ondo**: good), while **NOLAKO** expects an adjective (**ona**: good). Also, **NOLA** expresses a transient-type state while **NOLAKO** a stable state. Here is a comparison:

- a) **Jon TRISTE dago** : Jon is **sad** {Jon is sad at this moment in time, but that does not mean that he is a sad person in general}.
- b) **Jon TRISTEA da** : Jon is **sad** {Jon is a sad person in general}.

Here are some more examples:

Ume zikinak horiek dira : Those are dirty children. {generally }

Ume horiek ZIKIN daude ≠ **Ume horiek ZIKINAK dira**
Those children are **dirty** {right now} Those children are {generally} **dirty**.

Zu OKER zaude ≠ **Zu OKERRA zara**
You are **wrong** {this time} You are **wrong** {generally}

Ni oso URDURIA naiz, baina gaur LASAI nago
I am (a) very **nervous** (person), but today I am **calm**.

Aitita-amamak ZAHARRAK dira, baina GAZTE sentitzen dira
The grandparents are **old**, but they feel **young**.

Sometimes the difference is found in that **NOLA** expresses the procedure, or the form in which the referenced action occurs, while **NOLAKO** refers to the qualities that characterize an object. For example:

- a) **NOLA egin duzu?** : How have you done it? {Which procedure did you follow in order to do it?; expl. }
- b) **NOLAKO egin duzu?** : How have you done it? {What is the thing you have done like?; expl. }

NOLA is conventionally translated as **how**, however in English we use **how** in a wider range of contexts than **nola** is used in euskara. So an expression such as “How is it going?” needs to be expressed as “Nola doa?” and is to be taken literally. But how are you feeling?” is expressed by “**Zer moduz?**” {“By what mode are you”. lit }

SUMMARY - LABURPENA

Here is a table of the fundamental differences:

NOLA	NOLAKO (ZELAKO)
a) NOLA is invariable, in other words, it cannot be declined.	NOLAKO can be declined.

2. It is also common to put the adjective with an article when responding to the question **NOLA (ZELAN)**. You really cannot consider this to be a mistake, because it is correct in some places. But it is better to stick to the rules given in this section, in other words, when you respond to the question **NOLA (ZELAN)**, you can use the adjective but not the article. For example:

This seat is free	*Jezarleku hau libreA dago. Jezarleku hau LIBRE_ dago.
Today I am sad	*Gaur triste. Gaur TRISTE_ nago.
The children are very nervous	*Umeak oso urduriAK daude. Umeak oso URDURI_ daude.
You have dirty shoes	*Zapatak zikinAK dauzkazu. Zapatak ZIKIN_ dauzkazu.
I have clean hands	*Eskuak garbiAK dauzkat. Eskuak GARBI_ dauzkat.

3. Another mistake which is easy to make is to decline the participles that are formed with **-TA**. For example:

We are very tired	*Oso nekatuTAK gaude. Oso nekatuTA gaude.
I have torn pants {The pants I have are torn ; lit.}	*Prakak apurtuTAK dauzkat. Prakak apurtuTA dauzkat.
The windows are shut	*Leihoak itxiTAK daude. Leihoak itxiTA daude.

So, it pays to distinguish between both types of participles, as the ones made with **-TA** function as adverbs, and they cannot be declined:

Sagar erreAK daude	is not the same as	Sagarrak erreTA daude
They are roasted apples.		The apples are roasted.
Patata frijituAK ipini...	is not the same as	Patatak frijituTA ipini...
Put fried potatoes...		Put the potatoes fried... (make them fried)

4. There is not a direct conversion between participles in English and Euskara. Here are some common misuses of the participle forms:

The door is open	*Atea zabalITA dago. Atea ZABALIK dago.
I am angry	*HaserretuTA nago. HASERRE nago.
She/he is naked	*BilustuTA dago. BILUZIK dago.

Musika-talde hori ASKI entzuna da. : That band is **quite** loud { **enough** sound; lit. }

Gaur NAHIKO aspertuta nago. : Today I am **quite** bored.

Zu NAHIKO ondo zaude, baina ni oso txarto.

You are quite well, but I am (doing) poorly.

This form is also used to express *enough, quite a lot, sufficient*. In these cases the form **nahikoA** is used. Here are some examples:

Diru NAHIKOA eman dizut. : I have given you **enough** money.

Gehiago nahi duzu? Ez, NAHIKOA da. : Do you want more? No, it is **enough**.

NAHIKOA da! Ez bota gehiago! : It's **enough!** Don't put any more (in).

Gaurkoz NAHIKOA da. : It's **enough** for today.

ASKI da! Kokoteraino nago! : It's **enough!** I've had it up to here!

ASKI da begiratzea dena ulertzeko. : It is **enough** to look [in order] to understand everything.

4.2.2. SAMAR - SOMEWHAT, QUITE, A LITTLE, RATHER

This intensifier is applied to uncountable expressions. It is placed after the adjective, adverb or participle which it modifies so the declension suffixes are applied to it. Here is a template for its use:

(noun) + adj. / adv. + **SAMAR**

This form can have two different meanings, according to the context:

a)

Zapata hauek txiki SAMARRIK dira niretzat.

These shoes are A LITTLE TOO small for me.

b)

Gaur ondo SAMAR lo egin dut.

Today I have slept QUITE well. {compared to some other time; expl.}

You could say that in the second example **SAMAR** is the same as **NAHIKO**, because both forms are translated as *quite*, but in reality they differ in meaning. **SAMAR** suggests an implied comparison with some other thing or event. Here is an example:

a)

Gaur ondo SAMAR bazkaldu dugu.

Today we have lunched **quite well**. {we have eaten relatively well compared to other times; expl.}

b)

Gaur NAHIKO ondo bazkaldu dugu.

Today we have lunched **enough** { we have come out of it satisfied; expl }.

Here are some other examples:

Aste honetan nekatu SAMAR nago.

[In] this week I am **somewhat** tired.

Zapata hauek txiki SAMAR geratzen zaizkit.

These shoes remain (are still) a **little too** small for me.

Berandu SAMAR gabiltza.

We are **somewhat** late.

Irakaslea gazte SAMARRA da, baina pozik nago.

The teacher is a **little** young, but I am happy.

Gauzak hemen garesti SAMARRAK dira.

The things here are a **little** expensive.

4.2.3. DEXENTE (SANO) - QUITE, ENOUGH

DEXENTE (SANO) is also translated to be *quite*, but it is slightly different to **NAHIKO** and **SAMAR**. We can place it between **NAHIKO** and **OSO** in terms of intensity. Here is the order of these from least to most intensity:

SAMAR - NAHIKO - DEXENTE (SANO) - OSO

Here are some examples:

Gaurko pelikula SANO polita izan da. : Today's film has been **quite** beautiful.

Ardo hau SANO ona da. : This wine is **quite** good.

Egun hauek SANO gogorrak izan dira. : These days have been **quite** hard.

DEXENTE polita izan da gaurko pelikula. : Today's film has been **quite** beautiful.

Gaurko lana DEXENTE gogorra izan da. : Today's work has been **quite** hard.

SANO interesgarria izango da. : It will be **quite** interesting.

It is useful to know that **DEXENTE**, in comparison to **SANO**, is used also to express quantity. In this case it is placed after the word it modifies, which is declined in the indefinite form. Here are some examples:

Diru_ DEXENTE irabazten dugu.

We have won quite (a lot of) money.

Honek urte_ DEXENTE dauka.

This (person) has **quite** (a lot of) years. {is **quite** old; expl }

Honekin arazo_ DEXENTE izan ditugu.

We have had **quite** (a lot of) problem(s) with this (one).

4.2.4. OSO, BIZIKI - VERY

This form is similar to the adverb *very* and is always placed in front of the relevant word. When used with a verb it must be uncountable. Here are some examples:

OSO + (*noun*) + *adj. / adv./verb (uncountable)*

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| a) OSO | | handiak | : very big |
| b) OSO | etxe | handiak | : very big houses. |
| c) OSO | | gustatzen zait | : I like it a lot. |

It is used as much with adjectives as with adverbs and participles, but in all of the cases the same template is followed. Here are some examples:

- | | |
|--|---|
| Etxe hori OSO handia da | : That house is very big. |
| OSO pelikula interesgarria izan da | : It has been a very interesting film. |
| OSO etxe polita da | : It is a very beautiful house. |
| Etxea OSO polita da | : The house is very beautiful. |
| Gaur OSO nekatuta gaude | : Today we are very tired. |
| OSO leku polita da | : It is a very beautiful place. |
| Ardoa OSO gustatzen zait | : I like wine a lot. |
| Hori OSO ondo dago, baina hau OSO txarto. | |
| That (one) is very good, but this (one) (is) very bad. | |

The use of OSO and ASKO is often confused. Here is an example that illustrates the difference:

- Lore ASKO OSO gustatzen zaizkit** : A lot of flowers I like a **great deal**.

Here ASKO is used with a countable noun and OSO with an uncountable verb.

4.2.5. IZUGARRI (IKARAGARRI, ITZEL) - TREMENDOUS, EXTREMELY

This is an adjective which means *tremendous*, *terrible*, *extremely*, and it can be used to intensify adjectives and adverbs by being placed in front of them. For example:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Zelakoa izan da pelikula? | : How was the movie? |
| IZUGARRI polita | : (It was) extremely beautiful. |

- IZUGARRI (ITZEL) ondo pasa dugu** : We had an **extremely** good time. {We spent time **extremely** well; lit.}
- Etxe hori IKARAGARRI handia da** : That house is **huge** {terribly big; lit.}
- Horiek ITZEL gogorak dira** : Those (things) are **extremely** durable.

Sometimes these forms have the suffix **-ZKO** when before the noun. Here are examples:

- IzugarriZKO kolpea hartu du** : She/he has taken a terrible bump. {as in 'hit'; expl.}
- Atzo itzeleZKO beroa egin zuen** : Yesterday it was terribly hot.

4.2.6. ERABAT, ARRAS, ARRUNT, TXIT; BATERE - COMPLETELY; ABSOLUTELY, NOT AT ALL

ERABAT is somewhat like *completely, entirely, totally, utterly* and is used in affirmative phrases. **BATERE**, on the other hand, is the same as *absolutely, nothing, not at all* and is used in negative phrases. Both forms can be placed in front of adjectives and adverbs. For example:

- Hori ERABAT zoratuta dago** : That one (person) is **completely** crazy.
- Komuneko atea ERABAT apurtuta dago** : The toilet door is **completely** broken.
- ERABAT oker zaude** : You are **completely** wrong.
- Ez nago BATERE konforme** : I **absolutely** do not agree.
- Ez nago BATERE lasai** : I am **not calm at all**.

4.2.7. GUZTIZ (ZEHARO), ARRUNT - COMPLETELY, TOTALLY, ENTIRELY

These forms are very similar to those of **ERABAT**, but they differ in that the same word is used for both negative and positive constructions. Here is an example:

- Zapata horiek GUZTIZ apurtata daude.**
Those shoes are **totally** broken.
- Beste hau ZEHARO desberdina da.**
This other (one) is **completely** different.
- Zuhaitz hori sagarrez ARRUNT bete dago.**
That tree is **completely** full of {by} apples.
- Auto hori ez da GUZTIZ berria, baina oso ondo dago.**
That car isn't **entirely** new, but it is very good.

You may think that this form is the same as **BATERE** in the negative constructions, but it is not so:

- a) **Kuadro hori ez da GUZTIZ** itsusia : That picture is not **all** ugly.
 b) **Kuadro hori ez da BATERE** itsusia : That picture is not ugly **at all**.

4.2.8. TXIKI - TXIKIA - Repetition & Emphasis - Very, Very Small

Another feature of Euskara, which is frequently used, is to repeat the same word in order to emphasize it. Here are some examples:

Txakur TXIKI - TXIKI bat ikusi dut : I have seen an **extremely small** dog.
Herriko apaiza LODI - LODIA da : The village priest is **incredibly fat**.
Barazkijaleak normalean ARGAL-ARGALAK izaten dira
 Normally vegetarians are **very skinny**.

This is not only used with adjectives, but also with adverbs, nouns, etc. Here are some examples:

ASTIRO-ASTIRO etorri gara : We have come **very slowly**.
OSO-OSORIK jan behar duzu : You must eat **it all** {**absolutely everything**; lit.}.
Jon aitaren BERTIN-BERTINA da : Jon is **exactly the same as** (his) father.
Ana amaren MODU-MODUKOA da : Ana is **exactly like** (her) mother.
Zu ikusten GORRI-GORRI jarri da : (Whenever) she/he sees you she/he goes **bright red**.
ERDI-ERDIAN jo dut : I hit her/him **right in the middle**.
BETE-BETEAN asmatu duzu : You got it **right on** {**full**; lit.}.
AURPEGI-AURPEGIAN jo nau : She/he has put it **all over my face**.
BANAN-BANAN aztertu ditugu : We have analysed them **one by one**.

This construction is also used in some frequently used idiomatic expressions. Here are some examples:

APURKA-APURKA hobetzen goaz : **Little by little** we are getting better.
OZTA-OZTA irabazi dugu : We got it **just right**.
BEHIN-BEHINEko datuak dira : It is **provisional** data.
BAT-BATEAN gertatu zen dena : It happened **all of a sudden** {**at once**; lit.}.
ITSU-ITSUAN egin dugu : We have done it **totally without knowing**.
 {**blindly**; lit.}

ASPER-ASPER eginda nago	: I am utterly bored.
BLAI-BLAI eginda nago	: I am completely saturated.
BIHOTZ-BIHOTZEZ maite dut	: I love her/him with all of my heart .
Hau BEHAR-BEHARREZKOA da	: This is absolutely necessary.
IA-IA jausi naiz eskaileretan behera	: I very nearly fell to the bottom of the stairs.

In some cases the second repetition suffers some phonetic changes. Here are some examples:

ZEHATZ-MEHATZ jakin behar dut	: I have to know it exactly {with total exactness; lit.}
IKUSI-MAKUSI...Zer ikusi?	: (I) see , (I) see ... What do (you) see?
HAUNDI-MAUNDIKA azaldu diot	: I have explained it to her/him broadly .
TARTEKA-MARTEKA egiten dut	: I do it in (my) free time.

4.2.9. *alfer* HUTSA - TOTALLY, UTTERLY, NOTHING BUT (he's nothing)

Sometimes the adjective **huts** (empty, pure) is used in expressions to emphasize or intensify an adjective such as *it is a good one, she/he is a lazy person*. Here are examples:

Xabier on HUTSA da, ezta?	: Xabier is a very good (person), no?
Horiek lapur HUTSAK dira	: Those (ones) are utter thieves.
Horri ez esan, alfer HUTSA da eta	: Don't tell [to] him/her, because she/he is a real loafer.

Sometimes it is the same as the expression '*it is pure*'. For example:

Mikel nerbio HUTSA da	: Michael is pure nerves.
Hori zorte HUTSA izan da	: It has to be pure luck.
Hori gezur HUTSA da	: That is a pure lie.

This construction is also used in declined expressions.

Nik kafe HUTSA hartzen dut	: I usually take just coffee.
HUTSean geratu da dena	: It has all come to nothing .
Botila HUTS bat behar dut	: I need an empty bottle.
Esku HUTSIK etorri naiz	: I have come (with) empty hands.

SUMMARY

It is often hard to make connections between the words we have studied in this section and their corresponding English words. Also, the meaning and use can vary between places. We have provided the following table to summarize the basics of this section:

SAMAR	:	txiki SAMARRA	(<i>a little bit small</i>)
NAHIKO	:	NAHIKO txikia	(<i>quite small</i>)
ASKI	:	ASKI polita	(<i>quite beautiful</i>)
SANO	:	SANO txikia	(<i>really small</i>)
DEXENTE	:	DEXENTE polita	(<i>really beautiful</i>)
OSO	:	OSO txikia	(<i>very small</i>)
BIZIKI	:	BIZIKI txikia	(<i>very small</i>)
<i>Repetition</i>	:	TXIKI-TXIKIA	(<i>extremely small</i>)
IZUGARRI	:	IZUGARRI txikia	(<i>terribly small, tiny</i>)
IKARAGARRI	:	IKARAGARRI ona	(<i>terribly good</i>)
ITZEL	:	ITZEL ona	(<i>tremendously good</i>)
GUZTIZ	:	GUZTIZ txikia	(<i>utterly small</i>)
ZEHARO	:	ZEHARO apurtuta	(<i>completely broken</i>)
ERABAT	:	ERABAT txikia	(<i>completely small</i>)

TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK

1. An easy mistake to make is to transliterate English expressions such as *she/he is an utter fool*. In these cases we recommend you use the expressions which are formed with the adjective **huts**. Here are some examples:

They are **utter** thieves

***Lapur BATZUK dira.**

Lapur HUTSAK dira.

That (person) is a **total** loafer

***Hori alfer BAT da.**

Hori alfer HUTSA da.

4.3. ONE; SOME - *BAT*; *BATZUK*

The use of **BAT** and **BATZUK** can be confusing so this section contains a description of the correct use of both of these forms.

4.3.1. **BAT** - **A**, **AN**

BAT is declined like any other word, but because of its meaning it is normally declined in the singular.

Nor	bat	Nora	batera
Nork	batek	Norako	baterako
Nori	bati	Norantz	baterantz
Noren	baten	Noraino	bateraino
Norekin	batekin	Norengan	batengan
Norentzat	batentzat	Norengana	batengana
Zerez	batez	Norengandik	batengandik
Non	batean	Norengantz	batenganantz
Nongo	bateko	Norenganaino	batenganaino
Nondik	batetik	Norengatik	bate(n)gatik

Here are some examples:

Kajoi BATEAN dago	: It is in a box.
Afari BATERA noa	: I am going to a dinner.
Mutil BATEK ekarri du	: A boy has brought it.
Zuhaitz BATETIK jausi da	: She/he has fallen from a tree.
Lagun BATI utzi diot	: I have left it [to] (with) a friend.
Neska BATEKIN bizi da	: She/he lives with a girl.
Lagun BATENAK dira	: They are a friend's.
Itxaron apur BATEAN	: Wait on/for a little bit.

These are the forms recommended by Euskaltzaindia, and they are obtained by declining **BAT** in the *singular*. But you will come across forms such as **batean**, **batetara**, **batetik**.... These other forms are found by declining **BAT** in the indeterminate form (**MUGAGABEA**).

4.3.2. BATZUK -SOME, SEVERAL, A FEW

The form **BATZUK** comes from applying the plural suffix **-TZUK** to **BAT**.

BAT + **-TZUK** = **BATZUK** (some)

It is also a source of confusion so here is a table of declensions containing the most commonly used forms:

Nor	batzuk	Nora	batzuetara
Nork	batzuek	Norako	batzuetarako
Nori	batzuei	Norantz	batzuetarantz
Noren	batzuen	Noraino	batzuetaraino
Norekin	batzuekin	Norengan	batzuegan
Norentzat	batzuentzat	Norengana	batzuegana
Zerez	batzue(ta)z	Norengandik	batzuegandik
Non	batzuetan	Norengantz	batzueganantz
Nongo	batzuetako	Norenganaino	batzueganaino
Nondik	batzuetatik	Norengatik	batzuegatik

Here are some examples:

Lagun BATZUEKIN egon naiz	: I have been with some friends.
Ume BATZUEK apurtu dute	: Some children have broken it.
Kutxa gorri BATZUETAN daude	: They are in some red boxes.
Lagun BATZUK etorriko dira	: Some friends will come.
Apunte BATZUETATIK atera dut	: I have taken it out of [from] some notes.
Gauza BATZUETARAKO ona da	: It is good for some things.

As shown, these forms are obtained by declining **BATZUK** in the plural. There are also other forms that are used (**batzu**, **batzuk**, **batzuri**, **batzuren**, **batzutan**...) in which **BATZU** is declined in the indeterminate form (**MUGAGABEA**). But, Euskaltzaindia recommends the use of the plural declined forms found in the previous table.

Other interrogatives are also declined in the plural with the suffix **-TZU**.

NOR	+	-TZUK	=	NORTZUK	(whose / who)
ZEIN	+	-TZUK	=	ZEINTZUK	(which)
ZER	+	-TZUK	=	ZERTZUK	(what, which)

Here are some examples of their declensions:

NORTZUK	: nortzuK, nortzuEK, nortzuEI, nortzuEN, nortzuENGANA...
ZEINTZUK	: zeintzuK, zeintzuEK, zeintzuEI, zeintzuETAN, zeintzuEKIN...
ZERTZUK	: zertzuk, zertzueK, zertzueI, zertzueETAN, zertzueKIN...

4.3.3. -(R)EN BAT , -(R)EN BATZUK -ANY, SOME

This form is achieved by declining the noun in the indeterminate case of **NOREN** followed by **BAT** or **BATZUK**. It expresses the idea of the subject being non-specific, so while **neska bat** is about a *specific girl*, **neskaren bat** is about *some girl* who is not specifically identified. Here are some examples:

Ekarri liburuREN BAT	: Bring any book.
DiskoREN BATZUK erosi ditut	: I have bought some discs.
LagunEN BATI eskatuko diot	: I will ask (it of) [to] some friend.
TabernaREN BATEAN egongo da	: She/he will be in any pub.
EgunEN BATEAN lortuko dut	: [On] any/one day I will get it.
EgunEN BATEAN egingo dut	: [On] any/one day I will do it.
BatEN BATZUK ondo daude	: Some are good.
BatEN BATEK jakingo du	: Anyone will know it.
BatEN BAT etorriko da	: Someone will come.
BesteREN BAT behar baduzu, esan	: If you need any other one , say (so).

4.4. OTHER / ANOTHER - *BESTE* / *BESTE BAT*

BESTE has the meaning of *other*, so **BESTE BAT** means *another*. **BESTE** expresses a non-specific subject, so you normally use it with the indeterminate article (**BAT/BATZUK**). Here is an example:

- a) Goazen **BESTE tabernaRA** : Let's go to **the other** pub.
 b) Goazen **BESTE taberna BATERA** : Let's go to **another** pub.

Here is a table of the use of **BESTE** in the declension of **NOR**:

besteA	: the other	BESTE oheA	: the other bed
beste BAT	: another	BESTE ohe BAT	: another bed
besteAK	: the others	BESTE oheAK	: the other beds
beste BATZUK	: some others {pl.}	BESTE ohe BATZUK	: some other beds

As shown above, there are two forms of indeterminates depending on whether one or many is intended. The rest of the cases are declined following the same pattern.

Here are some examples:

Hori BESTE gauza BAT da	: That is another thing.
Hori BESTE gauza da	: That is the other thing.
Goazen BESTE lekuRA	: Let's go to the other place.
Goazen BESTE leku BATERA	: Let's go to another place.
BESTE bideTIK etorri dira	: They have come (by) [from] the other road.
BESTE bide BATETIK etorri da	: She/he has come (on) [from] another road.
BESTE mutilAK etorri dira	: The other boys have come.
BESTE mutil BATZUK etorri dira	: Some other boys have come.
Ekarri BESTEA	: Bring the other (one) .
Ekarri BESTE BAT	: Bring another (one) .

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. Using determinate forms of **BESTE** instead of the indeterminate ones. For example:

Let's go to another place	*Goazen beste lekuRA. Goazen beste leku BATERA.
That is another thing	*Hori beste gauZA da. Hori beste gauza BAT da.
It is in the other room	*Beste GELAN dago. Beste gela BATEAN dago.

2. Another mistake that is made is to confuse **BESTE BAT** with **BERRIRO**. Let's suppose that a friend has told a joke. If we want them to tell it again, we should say **Kontatu BERRIRO**, because if we say **Kontatu BESTE BAT**, we would be asking them to tell *another* joke.

BERRIRO	: again, repeat
BESTE BAT	: another (one more)

Here are some more examples:

[You] Tell me it again	*Esaidazu BESTE BAT. Esaidazu BERRIRO.
I will have to do it again	*BESTE BAT egin beharko dut. BERRIRO egin beharko dut.
Do it again	*Egin BESTE BAT. Egin BERRIRO.

3. Another mistake which is often made is to use **BESTE EGUNEAN** instead of **LEHENGO EGUNEAN**. Here are some examples:

[On] the other day I didn't have dinner.	*BESTE EGUNEAN ez nuen afaldu. LEHENGO EGUNEAN ez nuen afaldu.
[On] the other day you didn't come	*BESTE EGUNEAN ez zinen etorri. LEHENGO EGUNEAN ez zinen etorri.
Have you finished (from) the other day	*BESTE EGUNEKOa amaitu duzu? LEHENGO EGUNEKOa amaitu duzu?

4.5. POSTPOSITIONS - *Posposizioak*

Postpositions are a series of words which are placed after another word, forming a single unit. These constructions are used to express relationships more precisely than the declension system, for example, **mahai gainean** - *on top of the table*, is more precise than **mahaian** - *on the table*. Postpositions require the preceding noun phrase to have a declension which may vary according to the intended meaning. Postpositions themselves may have their own declension.

Note that the declension is important because it tells you the word that governs the postposition. This relationship has special importance in euskara because of its free word order and hence the possibility that in any sentence these words have other functions if the previous phrase does not carry an appropriate declension connecting the postposition to it.

Here we will look only at the more current ones.

1. **GABE (BARIK)**
2. **GAINEAN / AZPIAN**
3. **AURREAN / ATZEAN**
4. **ONDOAN (ALBOAN, ALDAMENEAN)**
5. **BARRUAN (BARNEAN) / KANPOAN (AT)**
6. **ARTEAN**
7. **ZEREN ALDE / KONTRA**
8. **ZEREN BIDEZ (BITARTEZ)**
9. **ZEREN ZAIN**
10. **ZEREN BILA**
11. **ZEREN ARABERA**
12. **-N ZEHAR**
13. **ZERI BURUZ**
14. **ZERI ESKER**
15. **NOREN KONTURA (ALDETIK, KASA, KABUZ)**
16. **NOREN ESKU**
17. **NOREN INGURUAN (ALDAMENEAN)**
18. **NOREN MENPEAN**
19. **ZEREN TRUKE**
20. **-N GORA / -N BEHERA**

4.5.1. GABE (BARIK) - WITHOUT, LESS, UN-

These two forms are equivalent, and they can be used without marking the preceding noun phrase (without an article, or a *partitive* **-(R)IK**). **BARIK** is generally used without a partitive, and **GABE** is used with one. Here are some examples:

DiruRIK GABE nago	: I am without money.
Gogo BARIK ezin da ezer egin	: (One) can't do anything without wanting (to).
Ezer esan GABE joan da	: She/he has gone without saying anything.
Begiratu, baina ukitu BARIK	: Look, but don't touch. {without touching; lit.}
Abisatu GABE etorri da	: She/he came without speaking.
Betaurreko BARIK ez dut ezer ikusten:	I don't see anything without glasses.

As is shown, these forms can be used with both nouns and verbs. When they are used with verbs, the verbal participle is used without modification, followed by the postposition.

BARIK also has another use, other than the previous explanation. Sometimes these forms are used with a declined noun. In this case they take the suffix **-KO** (**BARIK + KO = BAKO**). Here is an example:

Garbitu GABEKO (BAKO) zapatak hemen ipini.

Put the **uncleaned** shoes here.

When this postposition is used with the partitive ending **-(R)IK** on the noun phrase it expresses *without any, with no*, for example:

ArdoRIK GABE etorri naiz : I have come **without any** wine.

An abbreviated form of **GABE** can be found as a suffix on some words, such as:

eskonge : unmarried

4.5.2. GAINEAN; AZPIAN - ON, ON TOP OF, ABOUT; UNDER, UNDERNEATH

Both of these forms are placed after the noun phrase, which is declined in the case of **NOREN**. An exception, is the case of inanimate objects where the declension of **NOREN** is omitted for the singular case. Here is a table showing the alternatives:

NOREN GAINEAN? About/on who?

<i>Sing.</i>	:	umeAREN	gainean	:	About/on the child
<i>Plur.</i>	:	umeEN	gainean	:	About/on the children
<i>Indet.</i>	:	bi umeREN	gainean	:	About/on two children

ZEREN GAINEAN? About/on what?

<i>Sing.</i>	:	mahai(AREN)	gainean	:	On the table
<i>Plur.</i>	:	mahaiEN	gainean	:	On the tables
<i>Indet.</i>	:	bi mahaiREN	ainean	:	About/on two tables

As illustrated in these examples, the nouns of animated beings take the declension of **NOREN** apart from exceptions like **asto gainean**: *on/about the donkey*, **zaldi gainean**: *about/on the horse*. The same construction is used with the nouns of objects, except singular objects. So even when it is correct to decline the singular noun, it is more common to use the noun without a declension. Here are some more examples:

NOREN GAINEAN dago? AitaREN GAINEAN dago.

Whom is she/he/it on top of? She/he is **on top of** father. {she/he is on father's top; lit.}

ZEREN GAINEAN dago? Mahai_ GAINEAN dago.

What is she/he/it on top of? She/he/it is **on top of** the table.

Zure zapatak ohe_ AZPIAN daude.

Your shoes are **under** the bed.

Liburua aulki(AREN) AZPIAN utzi dut.

I have left the book **underneath** the seat.

Utzi mahai HORREN GAINEAN.

Leave it **on top of** that table.

Baloia auto BATEN AZPIAN sartu da.

The ball has gone **under** a car.

Note that when the noun is followed by a demonstrative or indeterminate article, it always takes the case of **NOREN** to ensure the relationship between the two words is clearly established.

So far we have only looked at the most commonly used case: **NON**. But these words can also be declined in other cases:

NON	:	gainEAN / azpiAN
NONGO	:	gainEKO / azpiKO
NORA	:	gainERA / azpiRA
NONDIK	:	gainETIK / azpiTIK

Here are the forms when they are declined:

Mahai GAINEKO liburuak nireak dira.

The books **on top of** the table are mine.

Ate AZPITIK sartu da sagua.

The mouse came in [**from**] **under** the door.

Auto GAINERA igo da.

She/he has gotten **on top of** the car. {She/he has climbed **to the car's top**; lit.}

4.5.3. AURREAN; ATZEAN, OSTEAN - IN FRONT OF; BEHIND, BACK

These postpositions are used in exactly the same way as the previous ones, that is, they are always used after a noun phrase with the case **NOREN**, except when used with inanimate things, and then they can be used without **NOREN**. Here are some examples:

NOREN ATZEAN zaude? AmaiaREN ATZEAN nago.

Who are you **behind**? I am **behind** Amaia. {**At whose back** are you? I am **at Amaia's back**; lit.}

Umeak etxe_AURREAN daude jolasten.

The children are **in front of** the house, playing.

Inaki ZURE AURREAN dago, eta Koldo ZURE ATZEAN.

Inaki is **in front of** you, and Koldo **behind** you.

Etxe HORREN ATZEAN ezkutatu da.

She/he has hidden **behind that** house. {**at that house's** back; lit.}

Erratza ate_ ATZEAN dago.

The broom is **behind** the door. {**at the door's** back; lit.}

Other declensions can also be used. (In the eastern dialects, you use **aitzinean**: *in front of*, and **gibelean**: *behind*, instead of the forms shown here):

Etxe AURREKO parkera goaz.

We are going to the park **in front of** the house.

MikelEN ATZETIK joango gara.

We will go [**from**] **behind** Michael.

Segi zuzen AURRERA.

Continue (going) straight **ahead/onwards**.

4.5.4. ONDOAN (ALBOAN, ALDAMENEAN) - NEXT TO, BESIDE

These terms also have the same usage rules as the previous postpositions. Inanimate objects can be declined in the indeterminate form. Here are some examples:

Non dago Amaia? Leiho ONDOAN dago.

Where is Amaia? She is **next to** the window.

NOREN ONDOAN dago Aitor? Aitor AndoniREN ONDOAN dago.

Who is Aitor **next to**? Aitor is **next to** Andoni.

NOR Aitoren ONDOAN dago?

Who is **next to** Aitor?

Jezarri hemen, niRE ONDOAN (ALBOAN, ALDAMENEAN).

Sit here, **by me** {my side; lit.}

The following declensions can also be used:

Nor zen zuRE ALDAMENEKO (ONDOKO) mutila?

Who was the guy **next to** you? {by your side; lit.}

GURE ONDOTIK pasa da.

She/he has passed [from] **close to us**.

Geltoki(AREN) ONDOKO tabernan geratu gara.

We stayed in the bar **next to** the station.

4.5.5. BARRUAN, BARNEAN; KANPOAN, AT - INSIDE; OUTSIDE, OUT OF

BARRUAN and **BARNEAN** are used exactly like the previous forms. **KANPO(AN)** and **AT** are different in that they use the declension **NONDIK**. Here are some examples:

Etxe BARRUAN/BARNEAN dago.

She/he/it is **inside** the house.

Kutxa HORREN BARRUAN sartu dut.

I have put it **inside that** box. {I have put it in **that** box's **inside**; lit.}

Zure zapatak armairu BARRUAN daudela uste dut.

I think that your shoes are **inside** the wardrobe.

EtxeTIK KANPO/AT bazkaldu dut gaur.

Today I ate (lunched) **out**. {**out from** home; lit.}

HerriTIK KANPO/AT bizi naiz.

I live **out** (of) [from] town.

These declensions can also be used:

Armairu BARRUKO gauza guztiak atera ditut.

I have taken out all the things [from] **inside** the wardrobe.

Goazen denok etxe BARRURA.

Let's all go [to] **inside** the house.

Ezin da gela HONETATIK KANPORA irten.

It cannot go **out** (of) [from] **this** room.

BARRUKOAK enteratu ez badira, pentsa KANPOKOAK!

If the (ones) **inside** {the **insiders**; lit.} haven't noticed, think of (those) **outside** {the **outsiders**; lit.}!

In some cases, **KANPO(AN)** takes the case of **ZEREZ** instead of **NONDIK**. Here are a couple of examples:

- EpeZ KANPO etorri dira** : They have come after the deadline {They have come **outside** of the determined period; lit.}.
- Hori lekuZ KANPO dago** : This is **out** of place.
- JokoZ KANPO zegoen** : She/he/it was **left out of** the play.

4.5.6. ARTEAN - IN BETWEEN, AMONG

This form also requires the case of **NOREN** on the preceding noun phrase. When using the indeterminate form, it is common to omit the case **NOREN**. Here are some examples:

- LagunEN ARTEAN** : **Between the** friends
- Lagun_ ARTEAN** : **Between** friends
- NORTZUEN ARTEAN dago Jon? Ana eta JosuREN ARTEAN dago.**
Who is Jon **in between**? He is **in between** Ana and Josu.
- JendeAREN ARTEAN (jende_ ARTEAN) dago.**
She/he is **in between the** people (**between** people).
- LiburuEN ARTEAN (liburu_ ARTEAN) gorde dut.**
I have kept/hidden it **between the** books (**between** books).
- DenON ARTEAN egin dugu.**
We have made it **between all (of) us**.
- GURE ARTEAN konfidantza handia dago.**
(There) is much trust **between us**.
- Ez kezkatu, lagun_ ARTEAN zaude eta.**
Don't worry; because you are (**with**) {**in between**; lit.} friends.

When the preceding noun phrase is used with numbers, or an indefinite pronoun, even though it is in the indeterminate form, the case of **NOREN** is used. For example:

- Xabier neska BIren ARTEAN dago.**
Xabier is **between two** girls.
- Jende ASKoren ARTEAN banatu ditugu.**
We shared it **between many** people.

This postposition can also be declined in other cases:

- Hori Jon eta AmaiaREN ARTEKO kontua da.**
That is [of account] **between** Jon and Amaia.
- Ana eta KoldoREN ARTEKO mutila Patxi da.**
The boy **between** Ana and Koldo is Patxi.
- Sasi ARTETIK suge bat atera zen.**
From between the brambles came a snake.

Be aware not to confuse this form with **ARTE** which means *until*.

4.5.7. ZEREN ALDE, -ALDE; KONTRA, AURKA - WHAT SIDE, IN FAVOUR OF; AGAINST, IN FRONT OF

These two forms are used with the case of **NOREN** placed on the end of the preceding noun phrase. Here are some examples:

- NOREN ALDE zaude? Ni ZURE ALDE nago.**
Whose **side** are you (in favor of)? I am on **your side**.
- NOREN KONTRA zaude? Ni ez nago inoren KONTRA.**
Who are you **against**? I'm not **against** anybody.
- Bihar Athletic-ek OsasunaREN KONTRA (AURKA) jokatuko du.**
Tomorrow Athletic will play **against** Osasuna. {Football club names; expl.}
- Mahaia eta aulkiak hormaREN KONTRA ipiniko ditugu.**
We will put the table and chairs **against** the wall.

These forms also take **-KO** when they are joined to a noun. For example:

- AmnistiAREN ALDEKO manifestaldia zazpitan da.**
The demonstration **in favor of** amnesty is at seven (o'clock).
- TorturAREN KONTRAKO manifestaldia zortzietan hasiko da.**
The demonstration **against** torture will start at eight (o'clock).
- AutodeterminazioAREN ALDEKOAK dira.**
They are **supporters** of self-determination. {Ones in favour of; lit.}
- DrogAREN KONTRAKO burruka oso zaila da.**
The fight **against** drug(s) is very hard.

4.5.8. ZEREN BIDEZ (BITARTEZ) - THROUGH, BY WAY OF

These two forms are equivalent and are also applied with the declension of **NOREN** on the preceding noun phrase. Here are some examples:

Agentzia BATEN BIDEZ lortu dut pisua.

I got the apartment **through** an agency.

Lagun BATEN BITARTEZ jakin dut.

I know it **through** a friend.

Sistema HONEN BIDEZ ezin da egin.

It can't be done **by way of** this system.

AnaiaREN BITARTEZ lortu dut.

I have gotten it **through** (my) brother.

4.5.9. ZEREN ZAIN - WAIT FOR, WAITING FOR

This form also uses the declension of **NOREN** on the preceding noun phrase. Here are some examples:

NOREN ZAIN zaude? AmaiaREN ZAIN nago.

Who are you **waiting for**? I am **waiting for** Amaia.

ZEREN ZAIN zaudete? AutobusAREN ZAIN gaude.

What are you {pl.} **waiting for**? We are **waiting for** the bus.

Dei BATEN ZAIN nago.

I am **waiting for** a call.

LagunEN ZAIN gaude.

We are **waiting for** friends.

This use of **ZAIN** should not be confused with its other meanings of *vein* (medical) and *care for* which will require the **NOREN** declension.

4.5.10. ZEREN BILA - SEARCH FOR, LOOK FOR, SEEK, LOOKING FOR

This postposition is also used with the declension of **NOREN** on the preceding noun phrase and the indeterminate declension can be used meaningfully on occasions, as shown here:

LagunAREN	BILA	: The search (for) my friend. {In search of the friend; lit.}
LagunEN	BILA	: The search (for) my friends. {In search of the friends; lit.}
Lagun_	BILA	: In search of friends.

Here are some examples:

ZEREN BILA etorri dira? Diru_ BILA.

What have they come searching for? Searching for money.

NOREN BILA joan da? Lagun BATEN BILA joan da.

Who has she/he gone searching for? She/he has gone in search of [a] (her) friend.

Ama ikastolara joan da umeEN BILA.

The mother has gone to the ikastola, looking (searching) for the children.

BetaurrekoEN BILA nabil.

I am looking (searching) for the (my) glasses.

Laguntza_ BILA etorri dira.

They have come seeking help.

Lan batEN BILA nabil. Ni ere lan_ BILA nabil.

I am looking for a job {work. lit}. I too am looking for a job {work. lit}.

4.5.11. ZEREN ARABERA - ACCORDING TO, DEPENDING ON

This postposition is used with the **NOREN** case attached to the preceding noun phrase and means the same as *according to, depending on* in English. Here are some examples:

LegeaREN ARABERA, bestek dauka arrazoia.

According to the law, the other (person) has the right.

Dauzkadan datuEN ARABERA, aurten galerak izango ditugu.

According to the data that I have, this year we will have losses.

Horrek esan duenAREN ARABERA, ez dago inolako arazorik.

According to (what) that (person) has said, (there) isn't any problem [nohow].

Txosten HORREN ARABERA, jende gehiena alde dago.

According to that report, most people are in favor.

4.5.12. NON ZEHAR - ACROSS, BY, BESIDE, OVER, THROUGH, THROUGHOUT, VIA, DURING

This form can have two different meanings, but both circumstances the adjoining noun phrase uses the declension of **NON**:

- a) *Spatial* : **MendiAN ZEHAR** (by the mountain, over the mountain)
- b) *Temporal* : **AsteAN ZEHAR** (during the week, over the week)

Here are some examples:

BasamortuAN ZEHAR iragan zuten.

They crossed **over** the desert.

KaleAN ZEHAR ibili ginen.

We went **across** the street.

Zulo HORRETAN ZEHAR sartu da.

She/he/it has come in **through that** hole.

Urte osoAN ZEHAR ibili gara horrela.

We have gone like that **throughout the** whole year.

Egun osoAN ZEHAR ez da inor etorri.

During the whole day no one has come.

In some places you can use **-TIK ZEHAR** in the place of **-N ZEHAR**. For example:

HorTIK ZEHAR ibili gara : We have gone [from] **that** (way).
{**through there**; lit.}

MendiTIK ZEHAR etorri dira : They have come by **via** [from] the moun-
tain.

4.5.13. ZERI BURUZ - WHAT ABOUT ..., ON

This form is made by declining the preceding noun phrases in the case of **NORI**, and adding **BURUZ**. Here are some examples:

ZERI BURUZ hitz egin duzue? EkonomiaRI BURUZ hitz egin dugu.

What have you talked **about**? We have talked **about** the economy.

NORI BURUZ hitz egin du? Gabriel ArestiRI BURUZ.

Who did she/he talk **about**? **About** Gabriel Aresti.

Nire lagun BATI BURUZ hitz egiten ari gara.

We are talking **about my** friend.

HORRI BURUZ ideiarik ere ez daukat.

I also don't have any idea **about that**.

IjitoEI BURUZ eztabaidatu dugu.

We have (been) discussing [**about**] **the** gypsies.

Other variants of this form are:

ZERI BURUZ hitz egin duzue? EguraldiARI BURUZ.

What have you talked **about**? **About the** weather.

ZERTAZ hitz egin duzue? EguraldiAZ.

What have you talked **about**? **About the** weather.

When joined with a noun, this phrase takes the suffix **-KO**. For example:

EkologiaRI BURUZKO hitzaldia gaur da.

The conversation/presentation **about** ecology is today.

Irakurri al duzu torturARI BURUZKO txostena?

Have you read the report **about** torture?

LiteraturaRI BURUZKO ikastaro bat egin dut.

I have done a short course **on** literature.

4.5.14. ZERI ESKER - THANKS TO

This postposition has a meaning similar to *thanks to* in English, and is used by declining the preceding noun phrase in the case of **NORI**. Here are some examples:

JaungoikoARI ESKER ez da ezer txarrik gertatu!

Thanks to God nothing bad happened!

Merkeago lortu dut lagun batI ESKER.

I got it cheaper, **thanks to** a friend.

ZuRI ESKER lortu dugu. Horretan ez dago zalantzarik.

Thanks to you, we got it. There's no doubt about that.

Bere aitaRI ESKER sartu da lanean.

Thanks to his/her father, she/he has got work. {come into work; lit.}

GurasoEI ESKER; bestela, ez dakit zer gertatuko zatekeen!

Thank goodness for (our) parents {**thanks to** (our) parents; lit.}; if not, I don't know what would have happened.

4.5.15. NOREN KONTURA (*aldetik, kasa, kabuz*) - ON OWN ACCOUNT, UP TO ME, ON OWN ACCORD, BY OWN MEANS

These postpositions are basically the same, and have a similar meaning to the expression *on my account, up to me* in English. They are used by declining the noun phrase which precedes it in the case of **NOREN**. Here are some examples:

Ez dio inork lagundu; BERE KONTURA egin du.

Nobody has helped her/him; she/he has done it **of her/his own accord**.

Enpresa batean lan egiten zuen, baina orain BERE KONTURA jarri da.

She/he worked in a company, but now she/he is working {doing it; lit.} **of his/her own accord**.

Horretaz ez kezkatu; utzi NEURE KONTU(RA).

Don't worry about that; leave it **up to me**.

Eta besteak? Ez dakit; gu GEURE ALDETIK etorri gara.

And the others? I don't know; we came **by our own means**.

Ez daukat irakaslerik; NEURE ALDETIK ikasten dut.

I don't have any teacher; my study is **up to me**. {I have studied it **on my own accord**; lit.}

Hau zoratzekoa da, hemen nor BERE KASA dabil.

This is maddening, (everybody) does as she/he pleases. {here who(ever) does it by (their) own means; lit.}

NEURE KABUZ egin dut, inoren laguntzarik gabe.

I did it **of my own accord**; without (the) [any] help of anybody.

4.5.16. NOREN ESKU - IN THE HANDS OF, IN WHOM, IN THE CARE OF

This postposition is the same as the expression *in the hands of*, and is formed by declining the noun phrase which precedes it in the case of **NOREN**. Here are some examples:

Azken erabakia ZURE ESKU dago.

The final decision is **in your hand**.

Hau ezin dugu edonoREN ESKU utzi.

We can't leave this **in the hands of** (just) anybody.

Ez kezkatu; utzi dena NEURE ESKU.

Don't worry; leave it all **in my hands**.

4.5.17. NOREN INGURUAN - AROUND, NEARBY, SURROUND

This postposition is approximately the same as the expression *around* in English. The noun phrase preceding it optionally takes the declension case of **NOREN** and it behaves in a similar fashion to **GAINEAN**. Here are some examples:

Umeak mahai(AREN) INGURUAN daude.

The children are **around** the table.

Etxe INGURUAN denda asko dago.

Around the houses there are many shops.

Ander Donostia INGURUAN bizi da.

Ander lives **on the outskirts** of Donostia.

Ume guztiak amaREN INGURUAN dabilta.

All of the children are [going] **around** (their) mother.

From this postposition some common expressions are formed. For example:

Ertzaintzak etxea INGURATU du : The Ertzaintza (Basque police) have **surrounded** the house.

JendeZ INGURATURIK gaude : We are **surrounded by** people.
MAHAI-INGURU bat antolatu dute : They have organised a **round table**.

For other uses of this postposition see 7.2.8.4. and 7.10.11.6.

4.5.18. NOREN MENPEAN - UNDER THE COMMAND OF, DOMINATION

This postposition is used together with the case of **NOREN** attached to the preceding noun phrase, and is the same as *under the command of* in English. Here are some examples:

Nik ezin dut erabaki; zuzendariAREN MENPEAN nago.
 I can't decide; I am **under (the command of) the** director.
Emakumeak gizonEN MENPEAN egon dira denbora luzean.
 Women have been **under man's domination (for) [in]** a long time.
Kontseilari guztiak lehendakariAREN MENPEAN daude.
 All (of) the ministers are **under (the command of) the** President.

4.5.19. ZEREN TRUKE - INSTEAD OF, FOR

This postposition is used by declining the noun phrase which precedes it in the case of **NOREN**, and means *instead of*, and also in the sense of «traded for» or «in exchange for». Here are some examples:

HONEN TRUKE zer emango didazu?
 What will you give me **for this?** {in exchange for this; lit.}
Zer eman dizute auto zaharrAREN TRUKE?
 What did they give you **for** the old car?
HutsAREN TRUKE lan egiten dugu.
 We work **for** nothing. {in exchange for nothing; lit.}

From this construction we get the expression **musu truk**, which means *free* {instead of kisses; lit.}. Here is an example:

Nik ez dut MUSU TRUK lan egiten.
 I don't work **for free**. {I don't work in exchange for kisses; lit.}

4.5.20. NON GORA; NON BEHERA - UP; DOWN

These postpositions are generally used by declining the preceding noun phrase in the case of **NON**. Here are some examples:

AldapaN GORA goaz: We are going **uphill**.

EskailerETAN BEHERA jausi da: She/he has fallen **down** the stairs.

MendIAN GORA joan dira: They have gone **up** the mountain.

Other variants are:

HankaZ GORA utzi dute dena.

They have left everything **upside down**. {legs up; lit.}

TripaZ GORA bota zuen.

She/he threw **up** {by the stomach; lit.}

BuruZ BEHERA dago, ezta?

She/he is **upside down**, no? {She/he is head down; lit.}

Nola dago, ahoZ GORA ala AHOZPEZ?

How is she/he? Mouth **up**, or **mouth down**?

Ehun urteTIK GORA dauzka.

She/he is more than one-hundred years old. {She has [from] 100 years **upwards**; lit.}

To express *in the upper/lower part*, you use constructions such as **armairuAREN GOIKO ALDEAN**, not **armairuAREN GOIAN**. Here are some examples:

ArmairuAREN GOIKO ALDEAN (GOIALDEAN) dago.

It is in the **upper part** of the wardrobe.

AutoAREN BEHEKO ALDEA (BEHEALDEAN) pintatu du.

She/he has painted the **bottom part** of the car.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. A common mistake is to use an article when the word shouldn't have any marking. For example:

She/he/it is on the table

***MahaiA gainean dago.**

Mahai_ gainean dago.

She/he/it is next to the door

***AteA ondoan dago.**

Ate_ ondoan dago.

She/he/it is under the bed

***OheA azpian dago.**

Ohe_ azpian dago.

She/he/it is inside the wardrobe

***ArmairuA barruan daude.**

Armairu_ barruan daude.

2. Another common mistake is to use the form **ARTEAN** without the case **NOREN**. Here is an example:

We have done it between everyone	*GuztiOK artean egin dugu. GuztiON artean egin dugu.
We will do it between the two of us	*BIOK artean egingo dugu. BION artean egingo dugu.
Between the friends	*LagunAK artean. LagunEN artean.

3. It is also common to use the expression **-N ZEHAR** incorrectly by substituting the case **NOREN** for the case **NON**. For example:

She/he has come via the forest	*BasoAREN zehar etorri da. BasoAN zehar etorri da.
It is better to go by the mountain	*Hobe mendiAREN zehar joatea. Hobe mendiAN zehar joatea.

4. Another mistake is to confuse **gainean/azpian** with **goian/behean**. Note that **goian/behean** are generally used by themselves, not as postpositions, except for those cases studied in 4.3.20. Here are some examples of the correct usage:

She/he/it is on top of the wardrobe	*Armairuaren GOIAN dago. Armairuaren GAINEAN dago.
She/he lives below us	*Gure BEHEAN bizi da. Gure AZPIAN bizi da.
She/he/it has gone under the bed	*Ohearen BEHEAN sartu da. Ohearen AZPIAN sartu da.

4.6. USES OF ERE - *ERE-ren Erabilera*

ERE has two essential characteristics:

- a) It always refers to some element in a phrase.
- b) When used in a phrase it is always placed after the relevant element of the phrase.

There are three possible ways of using it:

- a. *In a phrase*
- b. *With a relevant element*
- c. *Alone*

4.6.1. ERE - ALSO

When a phrase refers to a person, **ERE** is placed after the relevant element. Here are some examples:

- a) **Amaiak ERE gaur pastelak ekarri ditu.**
Amaia **also** has brought cakes today {someone else brought cakes too; expl.}.
- b) **Amaiak gaur ERE pastelak ekarri ditu.**
Amaia has brought cakes today again [**also**] {she brought cakes yesterday also; expl.}.
- c) **Amaiak gaur pastelak ERE ekarri ditu.**
Amaia has brought cakes **also** today {she brought cakes and something else; expl.}.

As these examples show, **ERE** effects a specific element in the phrase, and it changes the whole meaning depending on the element to which it relates. Here are some more examples:

- a) **Jon bihar Bilbora joango da** : Tomorrow Jon will go to Bilbao.
Josu ERE Bilbora joango da : Josu **also** will go to Bilbao.
- b) **Jon gaur Bilbora joango da** : Jon will go to Bilbao today.
Bihar ERE Bilbora joango da : Tomorrow **also** he will go to Bilbao.
- c) **Jon bihar Gernikara joango da** : Tomorrow Jon will go to Gernika.
Durangora ERE joango da : He will go to Durango **also**.

When the element effected is a verb, **ERE** is placed after the verb, and the verb **EGIN** is appended to **ERE**. Here are some examples:

Ikusi ez ezik; PROBATU ERE EGIN dugu.

(We) haven't only seen it {it wasn't only seen; lit.}; we **also** tried it.

Pensatu ez ezik; IDATZI ERE EGIN dut.

(I) didn't only think (of) it; I **also** wrote it.

4.6.2. ERE BAI / ERE EZ; BAITA... ERE / EZTA...ERE - TOO, AS WELL

When a verb doesn't appear in the clause it is necessary to indicate if the clause is affirmative or negative, so **ERE** is not enough, and you must also add **BAI** or **EZ**. There are two possibilities, depending on whether the affirmative or negative particle is placed in front of or after the relevant element. Here are some examples:

Mikel zinetokira joan da : Mikel has gone to the movies.

a) **Koldo ERE BAI:** Koldo too/as well.

b) **BAITA Koldo ERE:** Koldo too/as well.

Mikel ez da eskolara joan : Mikel has not gone to school.

a) **Koldo ERE EZ:** Nor Koldo.

b) **EZTA Koldo ERE:** Nor Koldo.

Jonek autoz etorri da : Jon has come by car.

a) **Nik ERE BAI:** Me too/as well.

b) **BAITA nik ERE:** Me too/as well.

Jonek ez du ezer erosi : Jon hasn't bought anything.

a) **Nik ERE EZ:** Me neither.

b) **EZTA nik ERE:** Me neither.

4.6.3. BAITA / EZTA - AS WELL, NEITHER

When the relevant element in the phrase is implied you use the forms **BAITA/EZTA**, depending on whether the phrase is affirmative or negative. In this case the use of the particle **ERE** is optional. Here are some examples:

- | | | |
|----|---|---------------------|
| a) | Gaur itxita dago. Eta bihar? | BAITA (ERE). |
| | Today it is shut. And tomorrow? | As well. |
| | Gaur ez dute zabaltzen. Eta bihar? | EZTA (ERE). |
| | Today they don't open. And tomorrow? | Neither. |

- | | | |
|----|---|---|
| b) | Eta Miren ERE etorriko da?
And will Miren come also?
Eta Miren ERE ez da etorriko?
And will Miren not come either. | BAITA (ERE).
As well.
EZTA (ERE).
No (her) neither. |
| c) | Josu etorriko da, eta zu?
Josu will come, and you?
Josu ez da etorriko, eta zu?
Josu will not come, and you? | BAITA (ERE).
(Me) as well.
EZTA (ERE).
Not (me) neither. |

4.6.4. OTHER USES OF ERE

On some occasions **ERE** is used to re-enforce an assertion. In the examples below the right hand element of the clause which precedes **ERE** has its meaning accentuated.

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---|---|
| Ez da INOR etorri | - | Ez da INOR ERE etorri. (no one has come.) |
| Ez dut EZER esan | - | Ez dut EZER ERE esan. (I haven't said anything.) |
| ASKOZ handiagoa da- | | ASKOZ ERE handiagoa da. (it is much bigger.) |

Apart from the uses already described, **ERE** is also used in common expressions, like:

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| HALA ERE | : still like that |
| BATEZ ERE | : above all |
| IZAN ERE | : in effect |
| HAIN ZUZEN ERE | : precisely |
| HALA ETA GUZTIZ ERE | : in spite of it all |
| BAT ERE EZ | : not one |
| BETI ERE | : always |
| BADAEZPADA ERE | : just in case |
| NOLANAHI ERE | : in any way |

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. There are abundant errors when using **ERE**, because in English it is used in a very different way. Normally the mistakes have to do with placing **ERE** in the wrong place, or using the incorrect forms. Here are some examples of these incorrect uses:

I **also** have seen him/her/it

***Nik ERE BAI ikusi dut.**

Nik ERE ikusi dut.

Also tomorrow we will go

***Bihar joango gara ERE BAI.**

Bihar ERE joango gara.

Mikel **also** is here

***Mikel hemen dago ERE.**

Mikel ERE hemen dago.

If Martha is going, I (will) **also**

***Marta badoa, ni ERE.**

Marta badoa, ni ERE BAI.

If you don't go, **neither** (will) I

***Zu ez bazoaz, ni ERE.**

Zu ez bazoaz, ni ERE EZ.

4.7. SOMEONE; SOMEBODY; WHOEVER - *INOR; NORBAIT; EDONOR*

In Euskara the interrogative pronouns produce a series of forms which work as indefinite pronouns. If we take the interrogative **NOR**, for example, we can get the following forms:

1. **INOR**
2. **NORBAIT (NOREDO NOR)**
3. **EDONOR (NORNAHI, NORGURA)**

4.7.1. INOR; INOR EZ - SOMEONE; NO-ONE

This form is obtained by adding a prefix of **I-** if the interrogative begins with **-N**, and **E-** if it starts with **-Z**. Here are some examples:

I-	<u><i>nor</i></u>	:	Inor, Inoiz, Inola, Inon...
E-	<u><i>zer</i></u>	:	Ezer, Ezelan, Ezergatik...

These forms can have two meanings, depending on whether they are used in affirmative or negative clauses. For example:

INOR	: someone	NOR EZ	: no-one
EZER	: something	EZER EZ	: nothing
INOIZ	: sometime	INOIZ EZ	: never
INOLA	: somehow	INOLA EZ	: no how, no way

These forms are normally used in the following cases:

- a) **NEGATIVE** clauses : **Ez da INOR etorri.**
No-one has come.
- b) **INTERROGATIVE** clauses : **NOR etorri da?**
Has someone come?
- c) **CONDITIONAL** clauses : **INOR badator, abisatu.**
If someone comes, tell (me).

Sometimes the particle **ERE** is placed after the indefinite to re-enforce what is being said. Here are some examples:

Ez dut EZER ulertzen	: I don't understand anything .
Ez dut EZER ERE ikusten	: I don't see anything at all .
Hemen ez dago INOR	: No-one is here.
Hori ez dut INOIZ probatu	: I have never tried that. {That I have never

	tried; lit.}
Ez du INORK ERE egin nahi	: Nobody at all wants to do it.
Aurkitu duzue EZER?	: Have you found anything ?
Ezin dut INOLA ERE zabaldu	: There is no way I can open it. {I can't open it (in) anyway at all ; lit.}
Ez naiz INORA joango	: I will not go [to] anywhere .

We can respond to the same question in two different ways. Here are some examples:

ZER esan duzu?	a) EZER (ERE) EZ	: Nothing.
<i>What did you say?</i>	b) Ez dut EZER (ERE) esan	: I haven't said anything.
NOR etorri da?	a) INOR (ERE) EZ	: No-one.
<i>Who has come?</i>	b) Ez da INOR (ERE) etorri	: No-one has come.

So, when you use these forms only in the negative sense, they must be accompanied with the particle **EZ**; if not, they are affirmative.

4.7.1.1. INONGO, INOLAKO - NO, NONE OF

To express *no girl, no problem*, you use **INONGO** and **INOLAKO (EZELAKO)** followed by the corresponding word. Here are some examples:

Hemen ez da INONGO neskarik bizi.

No girl lives here.

Nik ez dut INONGO argirik piztu.

I haven't turned on any light. {no light; lit.}

Ez daukat INOLAKO (EZELAKO) arazorik.

I don't have any problems. {no problems; lit.}

Ez dago INOLAKO (EZELAKO) zalantzarik.

There is no doubt.

4.7.2. NORBAIT (NOR EDO NOR) - SOMEBODY, SOMEONE

These two forms are equivalent, and they are created according to the following template:

1.	<i>nor</i>	-BAIT		
2.	<i>nor</i>	EDO	<i>nor</i>	
NOR	:	norbait	nor edo nor	[nonor]
ZER	:	zerbait	zer edo zer	[zeozer]
NOIZ	:	noizbait	noiz edo noiz	[nonoiz]
NON	:	nonbait	non edo non	[nonon]

The forms in the brackets show the pronunciation of the written forms to their left, as they are hardly ever spoken in the way they are written.

These forms are employed in the following cases:

- | | | |
|----|-----------------------|---|
| a) | AFFIRMATIVE clauses | : NORBAITEK apurtu du.
Someone has broken it. |
| b) | INTERROGATIVE clauses | : Etorri da NORBAIT?
Has someone come? |
| c) | CONDITIONAL clauses | : ZERBAIT badago, ekarri.
If (there) is anything , bring (it). |
| d) | NEGATIVE clauses | : ZERBAIT ez dago ondo.
Something isn't good. |

Here are some more examples:

Goazen ZERBAIT (ZER EDO ZER) hartzera.

Let's go (and) [to] drink {take; lit.} **something**.

NORBAITEK (NOR EDO NORK) puzkerra bota du.

Someone has farted.

NONBAIT (NON EDO NON) egon behar du.

It has to be **somewhere**.

Hori, NOLABAIT (ZELANBAIT, ZER EDO ZELAN), neurea sentitzen dut.

That, **some how** I feel is mine.

NORBAITEKIN (NOR EDO NOREKIN) hitz egin duzu?

Have you talked **with someone**?

NONBAITETIK (NON EDO NONDIK) sartu behar dugu.

We have to get in **from somewhere**.

As shown in these examples, these terms can be declined. Here are some examples:

norbait	zerbait	nonbait	
norbaitEK	zerbaitEK	nonbaitEKO	
norbaitI	zerbaitI	nonbaitERA	(norabait)
norbaitEN	zerbaitEN	nonbaitETIK	(nondikbait)
norbaitEKIN	zerbaitEKIN	nonbaitERAINO	

The declensions of **NONDIK** and **NORA** present two different possibilities, as the declension of **NONBAIT** and **NON** are different.

NORA	-	nonbaitERA / NORA bait
NONDIK	-	nonbaitETIK / NONDIKbait

INOR is not NORBAIT

It is common to confuse these two forms, even though they have different meanings. **NORBAIT** is generally used in a positive sense, and **INOR** in a negative sense. This is seen clearly in the negative clauses. Here is an example:

- a) **INORK ez du ordaindu** : *No-one* has paid.
 b) **NORBAITEK ez du ordaindu** : *Someone* hasn't paid.

As well as this difference, these forms are not equivalent, as it is not possible to say ***Ez du NORBAITEK ordaindu** as **Ez du INORK ordaindu** is the correct form.

But the majority of the mistakes originate in the interrogative clauses, and the conditional clauses. Here is an example:

- a) **INORK deitzen badu, abisatu** : If **anyone** calls, tell me.
 b) **NORBAITEK deitzen badu, abisatu** : If **someone** calls, tell me.

In example a) the person talking does not expect a call, they are simply contemplating the possibility of someone calling. But if you are waiting for a call, then the correct form to use would be example b).

NOLA EDO HALA

The construction which we will study in this part is quite similar to the form **ZER EDO ZER**. It is made with an interrogative, followed by the particle **EDO** and an adverb. Here are some of the more frequent forms:

- NOLA EDO HALA** : in one way or another
ZELAN EDO HALAN : in one way or another
NON EDO HAN : in one place or another
NORA EDO HARA : to one or another place {to there (near) or to there (far); lit.}
NONDIK EDO HANDIK : from side to side, from place to place

NOLA EDO HALA lortu behar dugu.

We have to get it in **one (way) or another**.

NORA EDO HARA joan beharko du.

She/he/it will have to go to **one (place) or another**.

NONDIK EDO HANDIK aterako dugu.

We will get it **from one (place) or another**.

4.7.3. EDONOR (NORNAHI, NORGURA) - ANYONE

These three forms are practically the same, and conform to the following template:

1.	EDO	<i>nor</i>		
2.		<i>nor</i>	NAHI	
3.		<i>nor</i>	GURA	
NOR	:	edonor	nornahi	norgura
ZER	:	edozer	zernahi	zergura
NON	:	edonon	nonahi	nongura
NOIZ	:	edonoiz	noiznahi	noizgura

The rest of the interrogative forms follow the same template. Here are some examples:

Harri hori du EDONORK (NORNAHIK) jaso.

Anyone can lift that rock.

Hori EDONORI (NORNAHIRI) gerta dakioko.

That can happen to anyone.

Gaur egun EDOZEIN etxetan daukate bideoa.

These days any household has a video.

Hori ezin da EDOZELAN (NOLANAHI) egin.

That can't be done just any way (you want).

Hori EDONON (NONAHI) saltzen dute.

They sell that anywhere.

Hemen EDOZERGATIK kaleratzen zaituzte.

Here they put you out on the street for anything. {from any reason; lit.}

ZENBATGURA (ZENBATNAHI) jan dugu.

We have eaten as much as (we) wanted.

Hona NORGURA (NORNAHI) sartzen da.

Here anyone comes in.

ZERGURA (ZERNAHI) jaten du horrek.

That (person) eats anything.

The forms made with NAHI and an interrogative ending in -N, -T, or -K can be written in two ways and on some occasions they are written without the hyphen:

non-nahi / nonahi
 zenbat-nahi / zenbanahi
 nondik-nahi / nondinahi

SUMMARY

Here are some templates of the forms we have studied in this section:

- | | | | |
|----|------------------------|---|---|
| 1. | I-<u>nor</u> | / | E-<u>zer</u> |
| 2. | <u>nor</u>-BAIT | | (<u>nor</u> EDO <u>nor</u>) |
| 3. | EDO-<u>nor</u> | | (<u>nor</u> -NAHI / <u>nor</u>-GURA) |

The table below shows some distinct declined forms. The rest of the declension cases can be formed easily from those in the table.

ezer	zerbait	zer edo zer	edozer	zernahi
ezein	-	-	edozein	zein-nahi
ezertarako	zerbaitetarako	zer edo zertarako	edoziertarako	zernahitarako
ezelan	zelanbait	zer edo zeland	edozeelan	zelan-nahi
ezerगतिक	zerbaitengatik	zer edo zergatik	edozerगतिक	zernahirengatik
-	-	-	edozenbat	zenbat-nahi
inor	norbait	nor edo nor	edonor	nornahi
inork	norbaitek	nor edo nork	edonork	nornahik
inori	norbaiti	nor edo nori	edonori	nornahiri
inoren	norbaiten	nor edo noren	edonoren	nornahiren
inon	nonbait	non edo non	edonon	non nahi
inongo	nonbaiteko	non edo nongo	edonongo	non nahiko
inora	norabait	nora edo nora	edonora	noranahi
inondik	nonbaitetik	nondik edo nondik	edonondik	nondik-nahi
inoiz	noizbait	noiz edo noiz	edonoiz	noiznahi
inola	nolabait	nola edo nola	edonola	nolanahi

TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK

1. An easy mistake to make is to use forms such as **INOR, EZER...** alone, without the negative particle **EZ**. Here are some examples:

ZER esan duzu?	*EZER. EZER (ERE) EZ.
NOR etorri da?	*INOR. INOR (ERE) EZ.
NORA joango zara?	*INORA. INORA (ERE) EZ.
NOREKIN egon zara?	*INOREKIN. INOREKIN (ERE) EZ.

2. Sometimes people go to the other extreme and use **EZ** twice in the same clause. For example:

NOTHING	-	I haven't said ANYTHING (NOTHING)
EZER EZ	-	*EZ dut EZER EZ esan.

This happens quite often in the biscayan dialect which uses the form **EZEBEZ** instead of **EZER ERE EZ**. Here are some more examples of this:

I haven't said anything	*Nik ez dut EZER EZ (EZEBEZ) esan Nik ez dut EZER esan.
I don't understand anything	*Ez dut EZER EZ (EZEBEZ) ulertzen Ez dut EZER ulertzen.
Here there is nothing	*Hemen ez dago EZER EZ (EZEBEZ) Hemen ez dago EZER.
No-one has come	*Ez da INOR (ERE) EZ etorri. Ez da INOR (ERE) etorri.

4.8. COUNTABLE NOUNS, MEASURABLE NOUNS - ASKO is not HANDIA

In Euskara the nouns can be classified into two groups, depending on whether they can be counted or not. So, countable nouns can go with numbers (**lau etxe, sei auto...**); and uncountable nouns cannot be accompanied by a number (***hiru haize, *lau ke...**).

With the uncountable nouns we must distinguish those that can be measured (**ur, ardo, olio, irin...**) and those that cannot (**beldur, maitasun, min...**). So, for example, *water* (**ur**), and all liquids in general, can be measured (**litro bat ur, sei litro ardo...**), whilst fear (**beldur**) or love (**maitasuna**) cannot be measured.

The nouns behave differently in some constructions, for example, they use different forms to indicate abundance. Here are some examples:

<i>Countable</i>	ASKO / GUTXI
<i>Measurable</i>	ASKO / GUTXI
<i>Non-countable</i>	HANDI / TXIKI
<i>Non-measurable</i>	LUZE / LABUR
	GOGOR / LEUN

Here are some examples:

a) *Countable nouns*

etxe ASKO / etxe GUTXI : many houses / few houses
mutil ASKO / mutil GUTXI : many boys / few boys

b) *Non-countable nouns, measurable*

ur ASKO / ur GUTXI : a lot of water / not much water
gatz ASKO / gatz GUTXI : a lot of salt / not much salt
irin ASKO / irin GUTXI : a lot of flour / not much flour

c) *Non-countable nouns, non-measurable*

su HANDIA / su TXIKIA : a big fire / little fire
soka LUZEA / soka LABURRA : a long rope / short rope
haize GOGORRA / haize LEUNA : a hard wind / gentle wind

In some cases both forms are possible, but they have different meanings:

Su ASKO (GUTXI) dago	: There are many (few) fires.
Su HANDIA (TXIKIA) dago	: There is a big (little) fire.
Buruko min ASKO dauzkat	: I have a lot of headaches.
Buruko min HANDIA dauka	: I have a big headache.
Argi ASKO (GUTXI) dago	: There are a lot (few) of lights.
Argi HANDIA (GUTXI) dago	: There is a lot (few) of light.
Soka ASKO (GUTXI) ekarri	: Bring a lot (few) of ropes.
Soka LUZEA (LABURRA) ekarri	: Bring a long (short) rope.

Here are some other examples:

Egia esan ez daukat gogo HANDIRik	To tell the truth, I don't (really) wish to {To tell the truth I don't have a big wish to {to do something; impl}; lit.}
Kontu HANDIZ ibili beharko dugu	We will have to go very carefully. {with a lot of care; lit.}
Jonek erraztasun HANDIA dauka horretarako	Jon does that (with) a lot of ease. {Jon has a lot of ease for (doing) that; lit.}
Horrek irudimen HANDIA dauka	That (person) has a lot of imagination.
Gela honetan hotz HANDIA egiten du	It is very cold in this room.
Ez daukat joateko gogo HANDIRIK	I don't have a big wish to go.
Horretarako denbora LUZEA behar da	There is not enough time for that. {There has to be a long time for that; lit.}
Bide LUZEA falta da oraindik	There is still a long way left. {There is still a lot of road left; lit.}
Hara joateko bide ASKO daude	There are a lot of roads/ways to get [to] there.
Horrek aurpegi GOGORRA dauka	That (person) is very bold. {That (person) has a hard face; lit.}

NON-COUNTABLE NOUNS

With Non-countable nouns, instead of **ASKO / GUTXI**, we use a pair of adjectives:

HANDI / TXIKI	: bero, hotz, gose, egarri, beldur, lotsa, maitasun, gogo, gorroto, logura, kakagura, txizagura, hazkura, min...
LUZE / LABUR	: denbora, soka, hari, bide...
GOGOR / LEUN	: haize, euri, aurpegi...
ASKO / GUTXI	: ur, ardo, esne, olio, irin, gari, gatz, mahats...

It is important to note that the guidelines given in this section are not always true. So, for example, the opposite of **HANDI** is not always **TXIKI**, as in some cases **GUTXI** is used. Here are some examples:

Gela honetan argi GUTXI dago	: There is little light in this room.
Honek kalitate GUTXI dauka	: This is {has; lit.} poor quality.
Egia esan, gogo GUTXI daukat	: To tell the truth, I have little desire.

ASKO is not OSO

In some cases, the non-measurable nouns, use the adjective **OSO** instead of using **ASKO**. Here are some examples:

OSO gose naiz	: I am very hungry.
OSO bero naiz	: I am very hot.
Hori OSO gustatzen zait	: I like that very (much) . {That is very appealing to me; lit.}
OSO tristetu zen	: She/he was very sad.
OSO maite zaitut	: I love you a lot. {I have very (much) love for you; lit.}

TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK

1. A mistake which is easy to make is to treat non-countable nouns as if they were countable. For example:

It is very hot	*Bero ASKO egiten du. Bero HANDIA egiten du.
It is very cold	*Hotz ASKO egiten du. Hotz HANDIA egiten du.
It is very windy	*Haize ASKO egiten du. Haize GOGORRA egiten du.
I am very hungry	*Gose ASKO daukat. OSO gose naiz.
It is a long way yet	*Bide ASKO falta da. Bide LUZEA falta da.
It is a long time	*Denbora ASKO da. Denbora LUZEA da.
It is a short time	*Denbora GUTXI da. Denbora LABURRA da.

You should note that in some cases the use of both **ASKO** and **GUTXI** is so extensive that it can be considered correct in contradiction of the rules given here. This is the case of the word **denbora**. Here are some examples:

- Denbora GUTXI geratzen da.** : There is little time remaining.
Denbora GUTXI barru. : In a little while
Orain dela denbora ASKO etorri zen. : She/he came a long time ago

But when it is possible you should follow the recommendations given in this section.

4.9. INTENSIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS - *Pertsona-Izenordain Indartuak*

This is a very complex topic, as intensive personal pronouns vary according to their use as well as the place in which they are spoken. In this section we are going to limit ourselves to the most simple explanation, and the most commonly used forms.

4.9.1. I MYSELF - NI / NEU

In English we can summarize the meaning of intensive personal pronouns to be *I myself, You yourself...* In Euskara we find a series of intensive forms (**neu, neuk, neuri...**) which fulfil a similar function. Note that this is different to the reflexive pronouns *myself, yourself ...* which do not have a direct equivalent in Euskara. Here are some examples:

Zuk ezin baduzu, NEU joango naiz	: If you can't, I myself will go.
Hori ZEUK erabaki behar duzu	: You must decide that yourself .
GEUK egin beharko dugu	: We will need to do it ourselves .

But, when do we use the simple forms, and when do we use the intensive forms? As a rule, we can say that the intensive forms are used when the personal pronoun is the *inquired element* (**galdegaia**). As a consequence, in all of the cases in which the personal pronoun is not the inquired element, the simple form should be used. This is true for negative clauses, the interrogative clauses, and the vocative. Here are some examples:

Simple forms:

Ez dut NIK egin; Josu izan da
ZUK nola egin duzu?
ZU, Mikel, zer ordua da?

Intensive forms (complex)

ZEUK ikusiko duzu zer egiten duzun	: You yourself will see what you do.
Azkenean NEUK egin beharko dut	: In the end I myself will need to do it.
BERAK jakingo du zer egiten duen	: He himself will know what he does.
Lasai; GEUK konponduko dugu	: Calm down; we will fix it ourselves .
Hori EUREK erabaki behar dute	: They themselves must decide that.
Hori NEURETZAT erosi dut	: I have bought that for me myself .
Nik NEUK egin nuen	: I did it myself .

This is a table with some declension case forms of the intensive personal pronouns:

NOR	NORK	NORI	NOREN
neu	neuk	neuri	neure
heu	heuk	heuri	heure
bera	berak	berari	bere
geu	geuk	geuri	geure
zeu	zeuk	zeuri	zeure
zeuek	zeuek	zeuei	zeuen
eurak	eurek	eurei	euren

We have included the forms corresponding to the third-person (**bera / eurak**) at the end of the table, even though they aren't considered to be personal pronouns in the strict sense of the word. You should also note that in some places, instead of **EURAK**, **BERAIK** is used, even though it is quite a recent form. The rest of the declensions which aren't in the table can be derived from the declension of **NOREN** without difficulty: **neureKIN**, **neureTZAT**, **neureGATIK**, **neureGAN**...

In some locations instead of these forms, others are used. Here is a table of the equivalent forms:

neu	nerau (neroni)	nihaur
heu	herori	hihour
-	-	-
geu	gerok	guhaur
zeu	zerori	zuhaur
zeuek	zerok	zuihauk
-	-	-

In English the reflexive pronoun can be used without a true reflexive meaning. In such cases it is not translated into Euskara. Here are some examples:

Jaietan ondo pasa gara	: We enjoyed ourselves at the festival.
Bakarrik pasatu gara	: We spent time by ourselves. {alone; lit.}

4.9.2. MINE, MY OWN - NIRE / NEURE

As shown in the previous section, the intense personal pronouns can be declined in their distinct cases. But the forms which are declined in the case of **NOREN** present differences. In reality, the differences have more to do with reflexive forms rather than the intensive forms. Here are some examples:

Ni NEURE autoan etorri naiz	: I have come in my own car.
ZEURE apunteak ekarri dizkizut	: I have brought [to] you your own notes.
GEURE etxera eraman dugu	: We have taken it/him/her to our own house.

Jonek BERE autoa ekarri du	: Jon has brought his own car.
Azkenean NIRE autoa eraman du	: Finally she/he has taken my own car.
Martak ez du BERE lana egin	: Marta hasn't done her own work.

As shown in these examples, the intensive forms have the function of the possessive pronouns, and the norm given in the previous section is not always followed. So, for example, in the last example the intensive form has been used (**bere**), even though it is a negative clause. In the example before that we used the simple form (**nire**), even though it was an inquired element.

It is not easy to give general norms for which the intensive forms should follow, because of the abundant exceptions, however this rule governs the majority of sentences:

**You use the intensive forms of the possessive
personal pronouns when
a said person is referred to in the auxiliary verb.**

Note that there are exceptions to this norm!! But have the peace of mind that whenever you use this rule you will be using a correct form. Here are some examples:

ZEURE anaiari deitu dioZU?	: Have you called your brother?
ZEURE anaiak deitu diZU	: Your brother has called you .
ZURE anaiak deitu du	: Your brother has called.
GEURE etxean lo egin duGU	: We have slept in our house.
GEURE etxera deitu diGUte	: They have called [to] us at our house.
GEURE etxera ekarri GAITUzte	: They brought us to our house.
GURE etxean lo egin dute	: They slept in our house.

4.9.3. HER'S, HIS, ITS - HAREN / BERE / BERAREN

Third person singular possessives present three different forms: **haren**, **bere** and **beraren**. So, how do they differ? When do we use each of them?

The form of **BERAREN** comes from adding the prefix **BER-** to the simple form **haren**, and is used when the person referred to has been previously mentioned. **BERE** is the intensive form of **HAREN**, and to use this we should follow the forms given in the previous section. Here is an example:

a) Ana BERE etxera joan da	: Ana has gone to her own house (to her own house).
b) Ana HAREN etxera joan da	: Ana has gone to her/his house (to the house of another person).

In example a) the person that the possessive pronoun refers to is included in the verb (Ana has gone to the house of Ana), and that is why we used **bere**. In example b) the person that the possessive refers to is not the subject of the verb (Ana has gone to the house of Miren), and so we used the form **haren**. Here are some more examples:

Jon BERE autoan etorri DA	: Jon has come in his (own) car.
Ni HAREN autoan etorri naiz	: I have come in her/his car.
Marta BERE ahizparekin bizi da	: Marta lives with her (own) sister.
Ni HAREN ahizparekin bizi naiz	: I live with her/his sister.
Xabier BERE lagunekin joan da	: Xabier has gone with his (own) friends.
Gu HAREN lagunekin goaz	: We have gone with his/her friends.

4.9.4. VARIOUS OTHER USES - *Beste Zenbait Erabilera*

The intensive personal pronoun forms are also used in some common expressions. You can find more about the uses of intensive personal pronouns in 4.5.15. and 4.5.16.

4.9.4.1. *I PERSONALLY - NIK NEUK*

This expression is formed by adding the simple personal pronoun form to the intensive, and declining both in the same case. It means something similar to *personally* in English. Here are some examples:

Ez dut uste NI NEU joango naizenik	: I don't think that I, personally will go.
NIK NEUK ez nuke horrela egingo	: Personally, I wouldn't do it like that.
GU GEU ez gara joango	: Personally, we won't go.
ZUK ZEUK nola ikusten duzu?	: Personally , how do you see it?
NIRI NEURI berdin dit	: Personally , it's the same to me . {No matter how you do it; expl. }

4.9.4.2. *ALSO, NOT EVEN I - NEUK ERE*

This construction is made by adding the particle **ERE** to the intensive personal pronoun. It means something like: *I also, not even I* in English. Here are some examples:

NEUK ERE ez dakit nola gertatu den	: Not even I know how that has happened.
EURAK ERE ez daude ziur	: Not even they themselves are sure.
Hori NEUK ERE badakit	: I also know that.
BERAK ERE ez daki nola egin duen	: Not even he himself knows how he did it.
GEUK ERE egin dugu	: We also have done it.

4.9.4.3. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

There are no direct counterparts for the English reflexive pronouns such as myself, yourself,... Instead reference is made to a body part as in many other languages around the world. Hence, reflexive pronouns are formed by combining the *intensive genitive pronoun* with the noun **BURU** (head) plus the article **A**. Here are some examples of its use:

NEURE BURUA jantzi naiz	: I dressed myself .
EUREN BURUA hil zuten	: They killed themselves .
ZEUREN BURUA garbitu al duzue?	: Have you{pl.} washed yourselves .

The reflexive component **BURU** can take any of the declension case endings appropriate for the context and must agree with the correct auxiliary verb as shown in these examples:

NEURE buruakA ikusi dut ispiluan	: I saw myself in the mirror.
Nik NEURE buruAK eta biok hitzegiten dugu	: I talk to myself .
Nik NEURE buruARI galdetu diot	: I questioned [to] myself .

The first example should not be confused with the following example:

Hark BERE BURU ikusi du ispiluan : She/he saw **her/his head** in the mirror.

4.9.5. RECIPROCAL PRONOUN - ELKAR

The reciprocal pronoun meaning *each other*, or *one another* is **ELKAR**, **ELGAR**, **ALKAR**. The case declensions must have the correct semantic agreement with the verb and the auxiliary verb. Note that when **ELKAR** acts as an object or an indirect object it always requires a singular conjugation in the auxiliary verb. The subject of the auxiliary verb is always plural. Here are some examples:

ELKARREKIN hitz egiten dugu egunero.	We talk with each other every day.
BESTEAK nolako pertsona zen neurtzen ari ziren.	They were measuring what sort of person the other was.
ELKARRA nolako pertsona zen neurtzen ari ziren.	They were measuring what sort of person each other was.
Haiek ELKARRI opari bat erosi diote	They bought a present (for) [to] each other .
Zuek ELKARRENTZAT liburu bat ekarri duzue.	You {pl.} brought a book for each other .
Haurrak gurasoak ELKARRENGANATZ etorri dira.	The children and parents came towards each other .

SUMMARY

Here is a summary of the expressions in which simple and intensive forms of personal pronouns are used. Remember that as a general rule we use the intensive forms when the personal pronoun is the inquired element or **galdegaia**.

1. Simple forms

- a) Negative clauses

Ez dut NIK egin : I didn't do it.

- b) Interrogative parts

ZUK, zer egin duzu? : You, what have you done?

- c) Vocatives

ZU, kontuz ibili! : You, be careful!!

2. Intensive forms

- a) The personal pronoun is an inquired element

Hori NEUK egin dut : I did that myself.

- b) Certain expressions: **NIK NEUK, NEURE kontura, BERE BURUA...**

NIK NEUK ez dut ikusi : Personally, I didn't see it.

BERE BURUA hil du : He has killed himself. {He has killed his head; lit.}

- c) With the particle **ERE**.

NEUK ERE EZ dakit egiten : Not even I know (how) to do it.

ZEUK ERE badakizu nor den : You also know who it is.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. When you use expressions such as **nik pertsonalki** instead of the genuine form **nik neuk**. Here are some examples:

I personally do not agree.

***Ni PERTSONALKI ez nago ados.**
NI NEU ez nago ados.

We personally do not know him/her.

***Guk PERTSONALKI ez dugu eza-**
gutzen.
GUK GEUK ez dugu ezagutzen.

4.10. AFFIXES - *Atzizkiak*

Suffixes have a major function in Euskara whereas there are few prefixes, which are for the most part borrowed from other languages.

4.10.1. SUFFIXES

Suffixes can be classified as to the part of speech they create when used. Generally this is very stable whether they create nouns, adjectives, verbs or adverbs. While some suffixes can be used on words with only certain parts of speech others may be used on any type of word. We deal here with those that are not explained in other sections of this book and are relatively common.

4.10.1.1. DIMINUTIVES

Diminutives have existed in Euskara from the earliest records we have going back to Roman times in the predecessor language of Aquitanian. Here are the ones most currently in use:

-ko	-ska	-tto	-txa	-txo
-no	-txu	-tila	-xka	

Here are some examples of their use:

Tira, mutiko, etorri hara	: Hey boy come [to] here.
Mendiska gure herritxo atzean da	: (There) is a hill behind our small village.
Maritxu nora zoaz	: [To] where are you going [little] Mari.

4.10.1.2. NOUN AND ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES

This is a list of the most common suffixes used with nouns and adjectives.

-ada, -kada	: physical blow, action	ostikada , kick
-aga	: place of	urberoaga , place of hot springs
-aldi	: period of time	eguraldi , weather
-ar, -dar, -tar	: native of	Bizkaitar , Biscayan
-ari, -dari, -kari	: agent, (-er in English)	lehendakari , president
-arte, -tarte	: space between	bitarte , between two
-barne	: interior	belarribarne , inner ear
-dun, -tun	: possessor	euskaldun , one who has euskara
-era	: act	esaera , saying
-gai	: aptness	andregai , fiancée (capable of

-garri	: agent	being wife)
-gile, kile, le, zale	: agent (-er in English)	apaingarri , ornament
-kera	: manner	langile , worker
-keria	: abstract quality of perjorativeness	eginkera , way of doing
-keta	: search	indarkeria , violence
	: competition	urketa , search for water
-ki	: piece of	lasterketa , race
-kide, ide	: friend	egurki , piece of wood
-kizun	: specific act	lankide , workmate
		etorkizun , future (act of com- ing)
-ondo	: proximity	elizondo , by the church
	: tree	intxaurondo , walnut tree
-pe	: under	lurpe , underground
-talde	: group of	abestalde , choir
-tzaile, -zaille	: agent (-er in English)	mendizaille , mountaineer
-tzain, -zain	: keeper	atezain , doorman
-une, -gune	: time, moment	harrigune , quarry
-zko	: made of	urrezko , made of gold
-tasun, -tarzun, -asun	: quality of	edertasun , beautiful

4.10.1.3. VERB SUFFIXES

Here are the most common suffixes used with verbs. In some cases they make nominalisations and in other cases verbal phrases:

-ahal	: everything possible	eginahal , possible
-aldi	: time for	ikusaldi , visit
-arazle	: instigator	abiarazle , initiator
-dura	: effect of action	erredura , act of burning
-era	: manner	esaera , saying
-erazi, -arazi, arazo	: to make happen	ezkondarazi , make marry
-gabe	: without	ezkongabe , unmarried
-gai	: matter, object	ikasgai , lesson
-gailu	: suitable for	edergailu , suited of beautifying
-gaitz	: difficult	ulergaitz , difficult to under- stand
-gale	: anxious	logale , anxious to sleep
-garri	: worthy of	ikusgarri , spectacular
-kera	: manner, way	egikera , way of doing
-keta	: act of, activity	salaketa , denunciation
-kor	: tendency to	aldakor , changeable
-kunde	: action	sorkunde , conception
-kuntza	: action	atzerkuntza , regression
-le	: doer (-er in English)	ikusle , onlooker

-men	: capacity	ikusmen , sight
-mendu	: act of	sentimendu , feeling
-ratu	: to progress in a direction	etxeratu , to go home
-tu	: participle of verb	maitatu , to love
-tza	: act	bizitza , act of living
-tzaile	: agent	saltzaile , seller
-ztatu	: action	urreztatu , to gild

4.10.1.4. ADVERB SUFFIXES

Here is a list of most common suffixes used on adverbs:

-ka	: in groups of	binaka , in twos
-ki	: manner	poliki , slowly
-kiro	: manner	maitekiro , courteously
-la	: manner	bestela , in another way
-na	: in groups	launa , four each
-ro	: manner	geldiro , slowly
-tsu	: approximately	oraintsu , recently
-zki	: manner	egiazki , truly

4.10.2. PREFIXES

A number of words are used as the first component in compound formations but these are not considered as prefixes. The list below shows the most common prefixes:

atze-	: behind	atserritar , foreigner
aurre-	: front	aurrekalde , forward
azpi-	: under	azpialde , underside
basa-	: wild	basurde , wild boar
berr-, ber-, bir	: repetition	berregin , redo
des-	: contrary	desberdin , different
era-	: compel	eragin , make do
ez-	: contrary (un-, non-)	ezjakin , uneducated
gain-	: upper, over	gainerakoak , leftovers
larr-	: wild, excessive	larregi , excessive
sasi-	: wild, uncultivated	sasiezhortza , co-habitation

4.10.3. PSUEDO SUFFIXES

There are a group of words that have been used so often as final elements in compounds that they have developed distinct forms. Here are some examples:

-dar, -tar	ar	: male	katar , tomcat
-degi, -egi	tegi	: place	apaindegi , hairdresser
-kalde	alde	: side	sukalde , kitchen
-kide	ide	: fellow	adiskide , friend
-koi	ohi	: manner	edankoi , fond of wine
-kume	ume	: female	katume , kitten
-min	min	: pain	burukomin , headache
		: longing	etxemin , homesick
-ola	ola	: place	urkiola , birch grove
-pide	bide	: way	ogibide , profession
-pegi	begi	: eye	aurpegi , face
-puru	buru	: head	mahaiburu , presiding officer

4.11. COMPOUND WORDS - *Hitz Elkartuak*

Compounds can be formed quite readily between nouns and between verbs but is much less frequent between adjectives. Combining words is clearly a very old facility of the language and has led to differences in the forms of words depending on whether they are in combination or in free form. While the new learner may not feel confident using these rules for compound formation they are helpful in understanding unfamiliar compounds when they arise.

The change in the morphology of a word is strongly dependent on whether it is the first or second element of a compound. One strong feature of Euskara is the phenomenon of haplology. This is the process of removing one syllable when two identical syllables occur one after the other, when two words are compounded. Here are some examples:

sagar + ardo (apple + wine)	sagardo (apple cider)
eme + magin~a (female + sheath)	emagin~a (vagina)

Also some syllables can be lost even when they are not exactly the same:

ume + berri (child + new)	umerri (lamb)
beko + gorri (forehead + red)	bekorri (animal with red-marked forehead)

4.11.1. FIRST ELEMENTS

The first element of a compound undergoes the greatest changes. These changes are not applied uniformly so we will only discuss the most common.

4.11.1.1. VOWELS

Final vowels in the first syllable are usually unmodified. Here are some examples:

lo + gela (sleep + room)	logela	: bedroom
ke + zulo (smoke + hole)	kezulo	: chimney

Final vowels in the second syllable can undergo three different types of change.

(i) Usually they are lost before a following vowel:

baso + herri (woods + living site)	baserri	: farmhouse
ama + ona (mother + good)	amona	: grandmother
oilo + ar (hen + male)	oilar	: rooster

(ii) A final **I** is usually lost whether it is succeeded by a vowel or consonant:

harri + -gin (stone + marker)	hargin	: stonemason
herri + beste (country + other)	herbeste	: foreign

(iii) When followed by a consonant the final **-A**, **-O** and **-E** are all changed to **-A**:

zulo + -tu (hole + to)	zuloA	: to dig
maitE + -tu (love + to)	maitA	: to love
aza + lore (cabbage + flower)	azAlore	: cauliflower

Final vowels in the third or later syllables are lost:

txapela + -dun (beret + having)	txapeldun	: champion
itsaso + untzi (sea + vessel)	itsasuntzi	: ship
iturri + buru (fountain + head)	iturburu	: fountainhead

The vowel 'U' is treated in various ways including remaining unchanged, conversion to 'A' or complete loss:

katU + kume (cat + offspring)	katAkume	: kitten
burU + -kide (head + fellow)	burkide	: comrade
eskU + zabal (hand + wide)	eskUzabal	: generous

The removal of a vowel often leaves a plosive consonant (**B**, **D**, **G**) at the end of the first element. If the second element of the compound begins with a vowel or a sibilant consonant (**S**, **Z**) then the consonant converts to a **T**. Here are some examples:

beGI + ile (eye + hair)	beTile	: eyelash
saGU + andre (mouse + lady)	saTandre	: weasel
oGI + sein (bread + boy)	oTsein	: servant
arDI + zain (sheep + guardian)	arTzain	: shepherd

If the removal of the vowel produces two plosive consonants (**B**, **D**, **G**) beside each other then they are reduced to one voiceless plosive (**P**, **K**, **T**):

beGI + Buru (eye + head)	bePuru	: eyebrow
iDI + Tegi (ox + place)	iTegi	: stable for oxen
loT + -Garri (fasten + suffix)	loKarri	: link

4.11.1.2. CONSONANTS

When consonants are final all the phenomenon already discussed can be found. For example the combining form of **EGIN** is **EGI**, and for **GIZON** is **GIZA**. However there are many exceptions that clearly date back into antiquity. They are too numerous and variable to discuss here.

4.11.2. SECOND ELEMENTS

One of the standard changes to the second element of a compound is the removal of the aspiration **H**. Hence:

zahar	old	-zar
behe	below	-be, -pe
mehe	slender	-me
gehi	quantity	-gei, -gai
ohi	habit	-(k)oi

Here are some examples:

ardi + zahar	artzar	: old sheep
zur + mehe	zume	: osier
zeta + bake	zetabe	: fine sieve

Various other reductions occur:

luze	long	-luz
gabe	without	-bage, -ga, -ge, -ke
duen	one who has	-dun

Here are some examples:

indar + gabe	indarga	: feeble
bizar + duen	bizidun	: bearded person
egi + luze	egiluz	: long slope

4.11.3. COMPOUNDS with NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

The common compounds are formed by pairing nouns together. The principal term is the second element of the construction. Here are some examples:

esku + lan	eskulan	: handcraft
esne + kafe	esnekafe	: coffee (with) milk
kafe + esne	kafesne	: milk coffee

Occasionally the compound includes the relational suffix **-KO**. Here are some examples:

buruko + min	burukomin	: headache
etxeko + jauna	txeko jauna	: master of the house

Other constructions can use adjectives and verbal particles:

zain + zuri	zainzuri	: tendon {white vein; expl}
gari + gorri	galgorri	: wheat {red wheat; expl}
eme + galdu	emegaldu	: prostitute {lost woman; expl}

The second of these examples shows one of the many transformations that can occur in compounds. This is known as the combining form of the word. Here are the combining forms of some common nouns:

egun	day	egu-, egur-
gizon	man	giza-
jaun	lord	jaur-
ur	water	u-
zur	wood	zu-
lur	earth	lu-
adar	branch	ada-
hamar	ten	hama-
behor	mare	beho-
izter	thigh	izte-

4.11.4. COMPOUNDS WITH VERBS

The pattern of two verbs combined together is relatively infrequent. Here are some examples:

janedan	: food and drink {eat + drink; lit}
joanetorri	: return trip {go + come; lit}

However the concatenation of verbs with nouns and adjectives is more common, such as,

ikusbide	: vision
ikusgarri	: visible
ikasgais	: lesson
eginbide	: procedure
jantzigela	: dressing room

Compound verbs, also known as verbal phrases, are discussed in section 5.8

V

THE VERB

- *Aditza*

5.1. THE VERB OF EUSKARA - *Euskal Aditza*

It is widely believed that the verb in Euskara is very hard to grasp. It is true that it is very different to the English verb, and at the start this can be a little disconcerting. However with time it becomes familiar, and you begin to realise that it is extremely logical and systematic, which is a great help when you are learning it.

Historical linguists believe that in ancient Euskara all verbs used the prefix **E-**, which is now manifest variously as **E-**, **I-**, and **J-**, for some grammatical function, maybe to convert nouns into verbs. The majority of ancient verbs end in **-I** which is thought to have been used at one time to create the infinitive form of the verb. With the arrival of the Romans about 2 millennia ago, the heavy borrowing of words lead to the adoption of **-TU/DU** as a verb producing suffix and the loss of the use of **-I** which now remains as a fossil relic of the ancient tradition. The change is so complete that now some of the ancient verbs that have the **-I** require the **-TU** as well. There are also a number of ancient verbs ending in **-N** which have some peculiar features when used with other morphological constructions such as nominalisation. Larry Trask argues that these verbs would have ended in **-I** at one time but lost the **-I** because their stem ended in **-N**.

Before going into a full analysis of the verb, here are some examples that demonstrate the variety of forms that are available:

Hau nirea DA	: This is mine.
Bihar mendira JOANGO NAIZ	: Tomorrow I will go to the mountain.
Auto berri bat EROSI DUT	: I have bought a new car.
Erlojua GALDU ZAIT	: I have lost the watch. {The watch is lost from me ; lit. }
Opari bat EKARRI DIZUT	: I have brought [to] you a present.
Atzo HELDU ZEN	: It arrived yesterday.
Lehen hemen JATEN NUEN	: I have eaten here before.
Etxera NOA	: I am going [to] home.
Lanetik GATOZ	: We are coming from work.
Ez DAUKAT denborarik	: I don't have any time.

The first thing to note from these examples is that some verb forms consist of a single word, while others consist of multiple words. In effect, there are two different forms of verbs in Euskara:

1. *Periphrastic* : A verb made up of two or more words.
2. *Synthetic* : The verb is found in a single word.

5.1.1. PERIPHRASTIC VERBS - *Adizki Perifrastikoak*

All verbs can be conjugated in the periphrastic form, including those which are of the ‘synthetic’ form. In the periphrastic form we can distinguish two parts:

- a) The **PRINCIPAL** verb. This is the verb which carries the meaning. In other words, the verb which tells us what action is happening.
For example: **erosi, galdu, ekartzen...**
- b) The **AUXILIARY** verb. This verb tells us about when, who, and on whom the action is done as well as the tense of the verb. For example: **naiz, dut, zait, dizut, zen...**

A total of 9 tenses can be constructed using the auxiliary verbs of which the full conjugations are shown in Appendix 1. Further tenses are created by the way in which the various aspects of the principal verb are combined with the various tenses of the auxiliary.

5.1.2. SYNTHETIC VERBS - *Adizki Trinkoak*

Some twenty-one verbs have synthetic forms. In these cases the verb is found in one word. For example: **daukat** (from **eduki**), **nator** (from **etorri**), **noa** (from **joan**). Appendix 2 provides the full conjugation of the most common synthetic verbs, while the following table gives their infinitive form:

eduki	: to have	egin	: to do/make	egon	: to be(location)
ekarri	: to bring	eman	: to give	entzun	: to listen/hear
erabili	: to use	eraman	: to carry	esan	: to say/tell
etorri	: to come	etsan	: to lie	ezagutu	: to know
ibili	: to go/move	ihardun	: to spend time	ikusi	: to see
iraun	: to last	irudi	: to seem/appear	izan	: to be
jakin	: to know	joan	: to go	ukan	: to have

5.2. ASPECT - *Aspektua*

As described in the previous section, the periphrastic verbs consist of two parts: the PRINCIPAL verb and the AUXILIARY verb. The principal verb can be in five forms known as aspects. Here is an example followed by a description of each form:

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1. ETOR zaitez | : [you] come |
| 2. ETORRI da | : She/he/it has come |
| 3. ETORTZEN da | : She/he/it usually comes |
| 4. ETORRIKO da | : She/he/it will come |
| 5. ETORRIA da | : She/he/it has come (at sometime in the past) |

5.2.1. ~~ETOR~~ - IMPERATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, POTENTIAL

This is the root of the verb, and it is only used for the imperative, subjunctive and potential. You make this form by taking the participle (**ETORRI**) and removing the ending. The endings that you remove are **-TU/-DU**, or **-I** except with the verbs ending in **-KI**. Verbs with other endings do not change. Here are some examples:

etorrI	ETOR	egin	EGIN
ikusI	IKUS	jaso	JASO
harTU	HAR	atera	ATERA
apurTU	APUR	jaiki	JAIKI

5.2.2. **ETORRI** - NEAR PAST

ETORRI is the participle form of the verb. In Euskara you use the participle to name verbs, not the infinitive. Generally participles have one of two common endings **-TU/-DU** or **I**, where **-TU** is the common verb creating suffix for new verbs. It becomes **-DU** after **N** or **L**. There are a small number of verbs with other endings: **esan**, **jaso**, **bete**,...

This verb aspect expresses an action that has already happened or finished in the near past, usually limited to the last 24 hours. Anything older must use the past tense of the auxiliary verb. This aspect translates as the Simple Past and the Present Perfect of English. Here are some examples:

Jon IKUSI dut	: I have seen Jon.
Euskara IKASI dut	: I have studied Euskara.
Gutun bat IDATZI diot	: I have written a letter to him/her.
Berandu HELDU naiz	: I arrived late.

5.2.3. ETORTZEN - HABITUAL

This habitual form is constructed by adding **-TZEN/-TEN** (depending on the verb) to the root of the verb (**ETOR**). One of the uses of this form of the principal verb is to express an action which is habitual or periodic, and is still happening. For example:

Jon IKUSTEN dut	: I see Jon.
Euskara IKASTEN dut	: I study Euskara.
Berandu HELTZEN naiz	: I arrive late.
Nik hemen LAN EGITEN dut	: I work here.

It can also be used to express the future in time references and if-clauses. Here are some examples:

BUKATZEN duzunean etxera joango gara.	When you are finished we will go home.
Ongi EGITEN baduzu, opari bat emango dizut.	If you do it well, I will give [to] you a present.

Other uses are described in sections 5.4, 5.8 and 5.10.2.

So, when do you use **-TZEN**, and when do you use **-TEN**? Here is an explanation of what verbs take what forms, depending on their endings:

-TZEN		
-A,-E,-O	: botA - bota TZEN ;	betE - bete TZEN ...
-KI/GI	: jaiKI - jai kiTZEN ;	esekI - eseki TZEN ...
-LI	: itzaLI - itza lTZEN ;	bidaLI - bida lTZEN ...
-(R) RI	: jaRRI - ja rTZEN ;	eroRI - eror TZEN ...
-TU/-DU	: harTu - har TZEN ;	galDU - gal TZEN ...
-TEN		
-N	: egiN - egi TEN ;	esaN - esa TEN ...
-TSI/-TZI/-TXI	: ida TZI - ida zTEN ;	jai TSI - jai sTEN ...
-ZI/-SI	: ha ZI - ha zTEN ;	iku SI - iku sTEN ...
-ZTU/STU	: ho ZTU - ho zTEN ;	hu STU - hu sTEN ...

So, the verbs which end in **-N** or whose root ends in **-S/-X/-Z** take the ending of **-TEN**. All other verbs take **-TZEN**. Also, any verb ending in **-N** loses the **-N** when it takes on **-TEN**. In the same way, those ending in **-TZI**, **-TSI**, and **-TXI** lose the **-T** as well as the **-I** when they acquire the **-TEN**. This is because it would be very hard to say words like: ***eginten**, ***itxten**, ***hautsten**... Here are some examples:

iTXI	- ix TEN	hauTSI	- ha ustEN
iriTZI	- iriz TEN	iriTSI	- iri sTEN

5.2.4. ETORRIKO - FUTURE

This form of the principal verb is obtained by adding **-KO/-GO** to the participle. It is used for a number of different types of constructions.

a. It is used to express an action which is going to happen in the future. All of the verbs have the form **-KO**, except those ending in **-N**, which have the form **-GO**.

Here are some examples:

Bihar helduKO naiz	: I will arrive tomorrow.
Gero joanGO naiz	: I will go later.
Noiz eginGO duzu?	: When will you do it?
Nor etorriKO da?	: Who will come?

b. It is used in other tenses such as the Future-in-the-Past, the Indicative Potential (Indikatibozko balalintzo ondorioa) and the Indicative Hypothetical (Baldintzeko baldintza).

c. It can be used to express a wish, request or an offer.

Beste edari bat hartuKO duzu?	: Will you take another drink?
Autoan sartuKO zara, mesedez?	: Will you get in the car, please?
Botila irekiKO dizut?	: Will I open the bottle for you?

d. It can be used to conjecture about something in the present.

Mahian nire betaurrekoak egongo dira.
(I suppose) my glasses are on the table.

In the Eastern dialects, in certain cases, the form **-(R)EN** is used in the place of **-KO**. For example:

Bihar eginEN dut	: I will do it tomorrow.
Noiz izanEN da hori?	: When will that be?
Gero joanEN gara	: We will go later.

5.2.5. ETORRIA - PERFECT

The perfect verb construction reinforces the idea of an action being completed or that a state has been achieved, hence it is a substitute for the near and remote past tenses. The template for its formation is:

verb participle + **A/AK** + *auxiliary*

The participle can have the singular or the plural suffixes. For an intransitive verb the participle must agree with the subject of the verb. For transitive verbs the participle must agree with the direct object. Here are some examples:

Katua etxera ETORRIA da.

The cat has (**definitely**) come home.

Gazteek legatz batzuk HARRAPATUAK ditute.

The youngsters **have caught** some hake (at some time).

Aitona eta amona Iparraldetan IZANAK dira.

Grandfather and grandmother **were** in Iparralde (at some time).

Orduan Australiara JOANA nintzen.

At that time I **had gone** to Australia.

Note the difference between these phrases:

Garia heldu zen	: the wheat ripened
Garia heldua zen	: the wheat was ripe

Where the first phrase records an event the second expresses a completed state. Here is another example:

Ardia galdu da	: The sheep got lost.
Ardia galdua da	: The sheep is lost.

These expressions need to be differentiated from the adjectival form of the verb as in:

Hori ardi galdua da	: That is the lost sheep.
----------------------------	---------------------------

TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK

- Be careful not to confuse the form used for the future tense (-**KO**) with the construction -**T(Z)EKO**. Examples:

I will go tomorrow	* Bihar joaTEKO naiz. Bihar joanGO naiz.
Where will we put it?	* Non ipinTZEKO dugu? Non ipiniKO dugu?

When **will** you come?

***Noiz etorTZEKO zara?**
Noiz etorriKO zara?

2. Another mistake, which is easy to make, is when you use the present habitual form **-T(Z)EN** in the place of the future **-KO** to suggest actions which take place in the future. This is because in English you can use the present tense in these situations. Here are some examples:

What time today are you going out?
***Zer ordutan irteTEN zara gaur?**
Zer ordutan irtenGO zara gaur?

Are we going to have a coffee?
{ Will we go to take a coffee?; lit. } ***JoaTEN gara kafe bat hartzera?**
JoanGO gara kafe bat hartzera?

What are we starting?
***Zer hasTEN gara?**

{ What will we start?; lit. } **Zer hasiKO gara?**

When will the course start?
***Noiz hasTEN da ikastaroa?**
Noiz hasiKO da ikastaroa?

3. It is also common to use the expression **aspaldian** (for a long time...) with the form **-T(Z)EN**, because of the influence of Spanish.

I haven't seen her for a long time ***Aspaldian ez dut ikusTEN.**
Aspaldian ez dut ikusI.

We haven't gone for a long while ***Aspaldian ez gara joaTEN.**
Aspaldian ez gara joan_.

5.3. THE AUXILIARY VERB - *Aditz Laguntzailea*

As shown in the last section, the periphrastic verbs consist of two parts: the principal verb and the auxiliary verb. The auxiliary verb tells us of the person, number, tense and mode in which the action of the principal verb is executed. The synthetic forms of two verbs are used as the main auxiliary verbs, while one of them (**izan**) can also be used in the periphrastic form with an auxiliary.

IZAN : to be
UKAN : to have

Here are some examples:

Ni hemengoa NAIZ : I am from here.
Kalera JOAN NAIZ : I have gone to the street.
Ez DUT gogorik : I don't wish it.
Ez DUT ezer ESAN : I have not said anything.

There is another verb **EDUKI**: *to have* which is also used as a synthetic verb. In some situations **EDUKI** can be used to express '*to have*', and **UKAN** is used only as an auxiliary verb. In other situations to express '*to have*' both verbs can be used with distinct variations in meaning. In this book we have opted for the first convention so as to be consistent. We will use the following convention:

UKAN : as auxiliary (to have)
EDUKI : as synthetic (to have)

Two other verbs, ***EDIN** and ***EZAN** are only used as auxiliaries for a second group of modalities for which they are the counterparts of **IZAN** and **UKAN** being intransitive and transitive respectively. Note that they are both reconstructed verbs and can never be used periphrastically. Following is a table of the usage of these four auxiliary verbs:

IZAN, UKAN	Indicative	: Simple - Present & Past
	Conditionals	: Hypothetical, Present & Past
*EDIN, *EZAN	Potential	: Present, Past, Hypothetical
	Subjunctive	: Present & Past
	Imperative	

5.3.1. PERSON - *Pertsona*

The auxiliary in Euskara has a peculiarity we are unfamiliar with in English. Here it is in an example:

ekarri DUT	: I have brought it
ekarri DIOT	: I have brought it to him/her
ekarri DIZKIOT	: I have brought them to her/him

In these examples, the verb in English (have brought) does not change, but in Euskara, the auxiliary takes different forms. This is because in the auxiliary verb there is information which refers to:

- | | | |
|----------------|------------|------------|
| 1. NOR | : whom? | (absolute) |
| 2. NORI | : to whom? | (dative) |
| 3. NORK | : who? | (ergative) |

So, when we say **ekarri DIZKIOT**, there is information inside the auxiliary about ‘who?’ (I), ‘to whom?’ (to him), and ‘what?’ (various objects). This can seem complicated, but in reality it is quite simple. The information is found inside the auxiliary verb rather than in independent words.

In the auxiliary we can distinguish three persons:

NOR NORI NORK

There are four possible combinations of these three elements:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. NOR | : DA (eman DA : it is given) |
| 2. NOR-NORI | : ZAIT (eman ZAIT : it is given to me) |
| 3. NOR-NORK | : DUT (eman DUT : I have given it) |
| 4. NOR-NORI-NORK | : DIOT (eman DIOT : I have given it to him) |

Note that **NOR** is always present. The forms which don’t have **NORK** are similar to those which we call intransitive in English, and are conjugated with the verb **IZAN**. Those which have **NORK** are equivalent to the transitive verbs, and these are conjugated with the verb **UKAN**.

To name the four types, we have taken the case of **NOR**, but this doesn’t necessarily mean that the auxiliary is only used with animate beings. It is just as relevant for inanimate objects as it is with animate beings. Just as we use **NOR**, we could also use **ZER**. For example, the clause “I have brought you a book”, has the form of **ZER-NORI-NORK**, that is to say, with one person (**NORK**) who has brought something (**ZER**) for another person (**NORI**); but the convention is to use the label **NOR-NORI-NORK**.

Here are some examples to illustrate the differences which exist in these four forms:

Jonen etxea erre DA	: Jon’s house has burned (down).
Joni etxea erre ZAIO	: Jon has had (his) house burned (down).
Anak Jonen etxea erre DU	: Ana has burnt (down) Jon’s house.
AnaK Joni etxea erre DIO	: Jon has had (his) house burnt (down) by Ana.

To continue, we will look at the forms of the different persons of various verbs:

1. NOR

Nor is the subject of an intransitive verb, such as **Ni altua naiz** : *I am tall*, or the object of a transitive verb, such as, **Haiek ni ikusi naute** : *They have seen me*.

ni	N-		: Naiz, Nago, Nintzen...
hi	H-		: Haiz, Hago, Hintzen...
hura	D- (<i>present</i>)		: Da, Dago, Du, Diot...
	Z- (<i>past</i>)		: Zen, Zegoen, Zuen...
gu	G-		: Gara, Gaude, Ginen...
zu	Z-		: Zara, Zaude, Zinen...
zuek	Z-	-TE-	: ZareTE, ZineTEen...
haiek	D- (<i>pres.</i>)	-TE-	: Dira, Daude, DuTE...
	Z- (<i>past</i>)		: Ziren, Zeuden, Zuten...

2. NORI

Nori is called the “dative of interest”. It is used to specify the indirect object of an action, even for intransitive actions. It is often used to indicate another person is personally affected by some external action. So one could say: **Nire osaba etorri da** : *My uncle has come*, or alternatively **Osaba etorri zait** : *Uncle has come to me*.

niri	-T/DA		: zaiT, diDAzu, diDAte...
hiri	-K/-N		: diK, diN, didaK...
hari	-O		: zaiO, diOt, niOn...
guri	-GU		: zaiGU, diGU, ziGUen...
zuri	-ZU		: zaiZU, diZU, ziZUen...
zuei	-ZUE		: zaiZUE, diZUE, ziZUEen...
haiei	-E		: zaiE, dizkiE, niEn...

3. NORK

Nork is the subject of a transitive verb, such as **Nik ikusi dut** : *I have seen it*.

nik	-T (DA)		: duT, dioT, zintuDAN...
hik	-K/-N		: duK, duN, didaK...
hark	-∅		: du, dio, ditu...
guk	-GU		: duGU, dioGU, zintuGUen...
zuk	-ZU		: duZU, dioZU, ninduZUen...
zuek	-ZUE		: duZUE, dioZUE, nauZUE...
haiek	-TE		: duTE, dioTE, nauTE...

5.3.2. THE IMPERSONAL - *Inpertsionala*

In the majority of clauses there is a subject that does the action (this is so in examples a and b below). But for some occasions we use the impersonal form, which means that there is no certain subject (see example c).

- a) **Nik hemendik ondo ikusten DUT** : From here **I** see well.
 b) **Zuk hemendik ondo ikusten DUZU** : From here **you** (can) see well.
 c) **Hemendik ondo ikusten DA** : From here **it** looks good.

The impersonal is obtained by changing the auxiliary verb to the intransitive verb, that is, you eliminate the **NORK** subject from the auxiliary:

NOR-NORK becomes **NOR**
NOR-NORI-NORK becomes **NOR-NORI**

Entzutuen DUT (I hear it) - **Entzutuen DA** (One hears it)
Ematen DIOT (I give it to him) - **Ematen ZAIO** (It is given to him)

- Nola esaten DA hori?** : How **is** that said?
Nola egiten DA hau? : How **is** this done?
Oso ondo ikusten DIRA : They look very good. {**They** (can) **be** seen well; lit.}
Horiek ondo egin behar DIRA : Those must **be** done well.
Etxera hortik joaten DA : To go home **is** that (way).
Ez DA ezer entzuten : Nothing (can) **be/is** heard.
Ez DA ezer ikusten : Nothing (can) **be/is** seen.
Irakasle bat behar DA : A lecturer/teacher **is** needed.
Horiei ezin ZAIE (dier) ezer esan : (One) cannot say anything to those (people). {I can't say anything to them; using **dier**.}
Ez ZAIZUE (dizuet) ezer ulertzen : You {pl.} don't understand anything. {I don't understand anything [from] you {pl.}; {using **dizuet**}}
Ezin ZAIO (dier) gehiago eskatu : (One) can't ask (her/him) (for) more. {I can't ask (for) more [from] her/him; {using **dier**}}
Hori ezin DAITEKE (dezaket) egin : (One) couldn't do that [to her/him]. {I couldn't do that to her/him; {using **dezaket**}}

5.3.3. NUMBER/AMOUNT - *Numeroa*

We will study two different forms of **NORK** verbs (those equivalent to transitive verbs in English); one with the single object, and the other with plural objects. In Euskara we can tell if the object is singular or plural through the auxiliary verb. Here are some examples:

Liburu bat DAUKAT	: I have a book.
Liburu bi DAUZKAT	: I have two books.
Lagun bat ikusi DUT	: I have seen a friend.
Lagun batzuk ikusi DITUT	: I have seen some friends.

5.3.3.1. *Asko DAGO / asko DAUDE*

When the object is indeterminate, that is to say it is neither plural nor singular, the verb can be either. Here are some examples:

Zenbatek daki/dakite?	: How many know it?
Zenbat ikasle etorri da/dira?	: How many students have come?
Zenbati esan diOzu/diEzu?	: To how many have you said it? {lit.}
Zenbatek deitu du/dute?	: How many have called?
Askok ez daki/dakite ezer?	: Many don't know anything.

In these circumstances, the verb originally was conjugated in the singular. But over time, the language developed use of the plural form. In this sense, you should know that both forms are correct, but sometimes the use of the singular can sound unpleasant, hence the plural form can be preferred.

5.3.3.2. *ETA* - AND

When more than one object that is joined by the particle **ETA** appears, the verb should be plural. For example:

Ogia ETA txorizoa ekarri DITUT	: I have brought the bread and [the] salami.
Papera ETA boligrafoa behar DITU	: She/he needs [the] paper and [the] pen.

5.3.3.3. *BALIO IZAN*

The verb **balio izan** (to be worth) is an exception to what we have just been talking about. Here are some examples:

Mila eta seihun pezeta balio DU	: It is worth one thousand six- hundred pesetas.
Ehun eta bost pezeta balio DU	: It is worth one-hundred and five pesetas.

The reason for this exception can be found in the meaning of the verb. In English we can translate it approximately to be 'it has a value of', and so the singular conjugation of the verb is used, even though the object is plural.

5.3.3.4. JAN, GOSALDU, BAZKALDU, AFALDU

Something similar happens with some other verbs when the mentioned objects are considered to be a whole. This is the case with the verbs **jan**, **afaldu**, **bazkaldu**. Here are some examples:

Entsalada eta bixigua jan DUGU.

We have eaten salad and [the] sea bream

Zopa eta patata-tortila afaldu DUT.

I have dined on soup and potato omelette.

Arraultzea patata frijituekin bazkaldu DUT.

I have lunched on [the] egg with fried potatoes.

This last example of *eggs and fried potatoes* is considered to be one plate/dish, even though it is made up of various things. Similarly, in the previous examples the diverse elements are considered as one thing.

5.3.3.5. PARE BAT

The expression **pare bat** (a pair of) uses a singular verb even though its meaning is plural. Here are some examples:

Gauza PARE BAT esan behar DIZUT.

I must tell you a couple {a pair; lit.} (of) things.

Non dago papera?, orri PARE BAT behar DUT eta.

Where is the paper, because **I need a couple** (of) pages?

Zer erosi duzu? Zapata PARE BAT erosi DUT.

What have you bought? **I have bought a pair** (of) shoes.

5.3.4. TENSE - *Aldia*

In Euskara the distinct verb tenses are made by combining the forms we studied in section 5.2 with the corresponding auxiliaries. The basic structure for forming the future is very simple and just requires the suffix **-KO** to be added to the main verb. To create a past tense form the auxiliary is conjugated in the past. Here are some examples:

INTRANSITIVE

etorri da : she/he/it has come
etorTZEN da : she/he/it usually comes
etorriKO da : she/he/it will come
etorri zen : she/he/it came
etorTZEN zen : she/he/it used to come

TRANSITIVE

apurTU du : she/he has broken it
apurTZEN du : she/he usually breaks it
apurtuKO du : she/he will break it
apurTu zuen : she/he broke it
apurTZEN zuen : she/he used to break it

5.3.5. MODE - *Modua*

In English the verb presents various verb modes/forms: indicative, potential, subjunctive, imperative. In Euskara there are also different verb modes, but they don't coincide exactly with the English modes. In the next sections we will look at the indicative, potential and imperative modes.

5.4. INDICATIVE - *Indikatiboa*

In English there are diverse forms to express the different verb tenses of the indicative form, for example: *I am, I was going, I have been/gone, I went, I will go...* In Euskara different tenses can also be expressed, but the system is not the same as in English.

The auxiliary verbs in the indicative can take two forms:

a)	<i>Present</i>	: naiz, zait, dut, diot...
b)	<i>Past</i>	: nintzen, zitzaidan, nuen, nion...

On the other hand, the principal verb can take three different forms in the indicative:

1. Perfect	- \emptyset	: etoRRI, apurTU, egin, esan, ikusI...
2. Simple	-T(Z)EN	: etorTZEN, apurTZEN, egiTEN, esaTEN...
3. Future	-KO (-GO)	: etorriKO, apurtuKO, eginGO, esanGO...

The diverse verb tenses emerge from the combination of these forms. Here are the verb tenses of the indicative which are known as compound tenses:

Present

1. Present Perfect/ Near Past	joan_ jan_	DA DU	: she/he has gone : she/he has eaten
2. Present Progressive	DOA jaTEN ARI	DA	: she/he is going : she/he is eating
3. Simple Present/ Present Habitual	joaTEN jaTEN	DA DU	: she/he usually goes : she/he usually eats
4. Simple Future	joanGO janGO	DA DU	: she/he will go : she/he will eat

Past

1. Past Perfect/ Remote Past	joan jan_	ZEN ZUEN	: she/he went : she/he ate
2. Past Progressive	ZIHOAN jaTEN ARI	ZEN	: she/he was going : she/he was eating
3. Simple Past/ Past Habitual	joaTEN jaTEN	ZEN ZUEN	: she/he usually went : she/he usually ate
4. Future in the past	joanGO janGO	ZEN ZUEN	: she/he was going to go : she/he was going to eat

The top half of the table presents the tenses made with the *present* tense auxiliary, and the lower half of the table presents the tenses made with the *past* tense auxiliary. There are however, some irregularities: Where do **doa**, **zihoan**, **jaten ari da** and **jaten ari zen** come from?

ikusTEN DUT / ikusTEN ARI NAIZ

In the table for each tense there are two examples, one that has synthetic forms (**JOAN**), and one which doesn't (**JAN**). To get the continuous form, the verb **JOAN** uses its synthetic forms (**DOA**) for the present and (**ZIHOAN**) for the past. As the verb **JAN** does not have synthetic forms, it uses another method. Its continuous form is constructed by using the verb '**ARI IZAN** : to be doing something'. So all verbs that don't have a synthetic form (the majority of them) must build the continuous form by using the verb **ARI IZAN**. This is one of the forms of the periphrastic aspects.

You must be careful because the verb **ARI IZAN** only has a **NOR** declension, that is, it is intransitive. So the subject changes from a **NORK** declension to a **NOR** declension with the exception of atmospheric phenomena. For example:

JONEK atea zabaldu DU : **Jon has opened** the door.
JON atea zabaltzen ari DA : **Jon is opening** the door.

So, to express an action that is happening in the moment, the verbs which lack a synthetic form use **ARI IZAN**. However, forms (3) from the table are also used to express an ongoing action, but they indicate that there is some habitual or repeated element in the action. Here is an example:

a) **ikusTEN ARI NAIZ** : I am seeing (right now.)
 b) **ikusTEN DUT** : I see/ I usually see it.

These two forms are not equivalent and have a small but important difference. **IKUSTEN ARI NAIZ** indicates *being occupied*, in other words, the person is occupied in *seeing* or *looking at* something, and this is going on at the time of speaking. **IKUSTEN DUT** only indicates *I see* as a regular or habitual act.

Let's suppose that we are in a room in which music can be heard from outside. If at that moment someone enters the room and asks us if we are listening to the music, they would use this form:

a) **EntzuTEN ARI ZARA musika?** : **Are you hearing** the music? {listening to; lit.}

If, on the other hand, the person wants to know if we hear the music, to know if they are bothering us, or even if they are unsure if we actually hear it, they would use the following form:

b) **EntzuTEN DUZU musika?** : **Do you hear** the music/ **Have you heard** the music?

Here are some more examples:

Ikusten DUZU etxe hura? : Do you see that house?
Ikusten DUT, bai : I see it, yes.

Etxea ikusten ARI ZARA?	: Are you seeing the house (right now)?
Gogoratzten DUZU?	: Do you remember it?
Bai, gogoratzten DUT	: Yes, I remember it.
Bai, gogoratzten ARI NAIZ	: Yes, I am remembering it (right now).
Zer entzuten DUZU?	: What do you hear?
Zer entzuten ARI ZARA?	: What are you listening to?

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. A very frequent error is to conjugate the verbs which have synthetic forms in the same way as those that don't have them. For example:

I am going home	*Etxera JOATEN ARI NAIZ. Etxera NOA.
We are going to work	*Lanera JOATEN ARI GARA. Lanera GOAZ.

In some cases both forms are possible, but with distinct meanings. For example:

Liburuak EKARTZEN ARI NAIZ	: I am bringing the books.
Liburuak DAKARTZAT	: I bring the books.

5.4.1. INDICATIVE : PRESENT - *Indikitibozko Orainaldia*

In the previous sections we have seen that:

- a) In Euskara there are two main auxiliary verbs : **IZAN** and **UKAN**.
b) There are four forms for auxiliaries:

1. NOR	: da	(IZAN)
2. NOR-NORI	: zait	(IZAN)
3. NOR-NORK	: du	(UKAN)
4. NOR-NORI-NORK	: diot	(UKAN)

In the next section we are going to study each of these forms.

5.4.1.1. *NOR (izan)*

NOR - type verbs (intransitive) use the synthetic forms of the verb **IZAN** as the auxiliary.

ni	naiz
hi	haiz
hura	da
gu	gara
zu	zara
zuek	zarete
haik	dira

These forms are used to express an intransitive clause, that is when there is no object to the action in the clause. For example:

Bihar Gernikara joango NAIZ	: Tomorrow I will go to Gernika.
Noiz etorriko ZARA?	: When will you come?
Non bizi ZARETE?	: Where do you live?
Euskara ikasten ari DIRA	: They are studying Euskara.
Nondik sartu ZARETE?	: [From] Where did you come in?
Bihar hobe izango DA	: It will be better tomorrow.
Zer gertatzen DA?	: What's happening?

These forms are also employed to make impersonal constructions. For example:

Ez DA ondo entzuten	: It is not heard well.
Oso erraz apurtzen DIRA	: They are broken very easily.
Zelan egiten DA hori?	: How do you do that? {How is that done?; lit.}

5.4.1.2. *NOR-NORI (izan)*

This is the second form of the auxiliary verb **izan**. Here is the conjugation for only third person subject in the singular and plural. The complete table is presented in Appendix 1.

NORI	<i>Sing.</i> (NOR)	<i>Plur.</i> (NOR)
niri	zait	zaizkit
hiri	zaik/n	zaizkik/n
hari	zaio	zaizkio
guri	zaigu	zaizkigu
zuri	zaizu	zaizkizu
zuei	zaizue	zaizkizue
haiei	zaie	zaizkie

In these forms we can distinguish two parts:

1. **NOR** : indicates the subject. (who?)
2. **NORI** : indicates who receives the action or the indirect object. (to/from whom?)

For example, in the clause *The apples have fallen (from me)* we can distinguish two elements: **niri**: to/from me, and **sagarrak**: the apples, or **NORI** and **NOR**. Here are some examples:

Sagarrak erori ZAIJKIT	: The apples have fallen [from me]; lit.
Osaba etorri ZAIT	: (My) Uncle has come [to me].
Ideaia bat bururatu ZAIT	: I've had an idea. {An idea has occurred to me ; lit.}
Gustatzen ZAIZU?	: Do you like it? {Does it please you? ; lit.}
Gustatzen ZAIJKIZU indabak?	: Do you like kidney beans? {Do kidney beans appeal to you? ; lit.}
Lagun bat etorri ZAIGU	: (Our) friend has come. {A friend has come to us ; lit.}
Lagun batzuk etorri ZAIJKIGU	: (Our) friends have come. {Some friends have come to us ; lit.}
Hau izugarri gustatzen ZAIO	: She/he likes this (one) enormously. {This is enormously pleasing to her/him ; lit.}
Betaurrekoak galdu ZAIJKIO	: His/her glasses have been lost. {The glasses have been lost from her/him ; lit.}
Telefonia ahaztu ZAIZU	: You have forgotten the telephone. {The telephone has been forgotten by you ; lit.}

These forms are also used to form impersonal constructions. For example:

Ondo entzuten ZAIT?	: Am I heard well?
Betaurrekoak apurtu ZAIJKIO	: His glasses have broken.
Ez ZAIO ezer ulertzen	: She/he doesn't understand anything.

In effect the element which is the subject of the verb in English is seen as the recipient or indirect object. Hence if something is lost, forgotten, or fallen, then someone is affected by it and is the recipient rather than the agent. This construction can also be used for intransitive verbs of motion when it is relevant to another person. This form of the auxiliary verb has no direct equivalent in English. It is used to express a subject and indirect object when there is no direct object. It has more similarity to the passive voice than anything else in English grammar, but it is not the same construction.

5.4.1.3. **NOR-NORK** (*ukan*)

The auxiliary verb **UKAN** is used to conjugate transitive verbs with just a subject and an object. Here is the conjugation table for third person singular and plural subjects (**NOR**). The complete table can be found in Appendix I.

NORK	NOR - Sing.	NOR - Plur.
nik	dut	ditut
hik	duk/dun	dituk/ditun
hark	du	ditu
guk	dugu	ditugu
zuk	duzu	dituzu
zuek	duzue	dituzue
haiek	dute	dituzte

These forms are used when there is an active subject (**NORK**), in other words, a subject of a **NORK** - type verb (transitive) that performs an action upon an object (**NOR**). Here are some examples:

Lagun bat ikusi DUT	: I have seen a friend.
Lagun batzuk ikusi DITUT	: I have seen some friends.
Non ipini DUZUE liburua?	: Where have you put the book?
Non ipini DITUZUE?	: Where have you {pl.} put them ?
Nork hartu DITU nire prakak?	: Who has taken my pants?
Mikelek bideoa erosi DU	: Mikel has bought the video.

In the above examples there are only the forms in which the object is the third person singular (**DUT, DUZU...**) or the plural (**DITUZU, DITUT...**). The auxiliary verb system is more extensive than shown here and includes forms in the object position (**NOR**) for first and second person in singular and plural as well. Not all combinations are semantically sensible, that is, to combine either the first or second person with itself is not possible, for example, **I saw me*, is not sensible. Here is the complete table for constructing all possible combinations of transitive relationships.

NOR	NORK
NAU	T
HAU	K/N
DU	-
GAITU	GU
ZAITU	ZU
ZAITUZTE	ZUE
DITU (z)	TE

In the **NOR-NORI-NORK** forms three elements come into play, and so there are three columns in the verb table.

1. **NOR** : The element receiving the action (whom)
2. **NORI** : Indicates who the action is directed to/from (to/from who)
3. **NORK** : The active subject who does the action (who)

For example, in the clause ‘I have brought you a present’ there are three elements:

1. **ZER** : A present (*sing.*)- **DI**
2. **NORI** : **ZURI** (to you) - **ZU DIZUT**
3. **NORK** : **NIK** (I) - **T**

I have brought you a present : **Opari bat ekarri DIZUT**
 I have brought you some presents : **Opari batzuk ekarri DIZKIZUT**

Here are some more examples:

Ez DIOT ezer esan : I haven’t said anything **to him/her.**
Utziko DIZKIDAZU apunteak? : (Will) **you** leave **me** the notes?
Zergatik ez DIDAZU esan? : Why haven’t **you** told/said **it to me?**
Nori eman DIZKIOZU? : **To whom** have **you** given **them?**
Ez DIZKIGUTE ekarri : **They** haven’t brought **them for/to us.**
Noiz ekarriko DIZKIGUZUE? : When will **you** bring **them to us?**

The table of **NOR-NORI-NORK** was presented to you so that the logic of the template is clear, but if you want to learn it off by heart, then the following table may be more useful:

	NOR-NORI	NORK	NOR-NORI	NORK
nik	DIT/DA	T	DIZKIT/DA	T
hik	DIK/N/A/NA	K/N	DIZKIK/N/A/NA	K/N
hark	DIO	-	DIZKIO	-
guk	DIGU	GU	DIZKIGU	GU
zuk	DIZU	ZU	DIZKIZU	ZU
zuek	DIZUE	ZUE	DIZKIZUE	ZUE
haiek	DIE	TE	DIZKIE	TE

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. One of the most frequent errors is that the forms **NOR-NORK** are confused with the forms **NOR-NORI-NORK**. Here is an example:

- a) I HAVE brought you by car : **Autoz ekarri ZAITUT.**
- b) I HAVE brought you a book : **Liburu bat ekarri DIZUT.**

As shown, in English both clauses have the same verb construct, but in Euskara there are distinct auxiliary verbs for each clause. So, what is this due to?

In both examples, the subject is the same. But, while in the first example *I brought* has the object of **ZU**: *you*, in the second example the object is **LIBURU BAT**: *a book*. On the other hand, in the first clause there are only two elements related to the action (*I/you*), whilst in the second clause we find three (*I/you/a book*). This difference is very evident on some occasions. For example:

- a) **erosi DIZUT** : I have bought you (something)
- b) **erosi ZAITUT** : I have bought you (so you are my slave)

Here are some examples of this incorrect use:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| This morning I saw you | *Gaur goizean ikusi DIZUT.
Gaur goizean ikusi ZAITUT. |
| Mother, Josu has hit me | *Ama, Josuk jo DIT.
Ama, Josuk jo NAU. |
| I know (him/her/it) | *Ezagutzen DIOT.
Ezagutzen DUT. |

5.4.2. INDICATIVE: PAST - *Indikatibo*zko *Lehenaldia*

For the indicative past tense you use the past tense forms of the synthetic verbs **IZAN** and **UKAN** as auxiliaries and as in the present tense there are the same four forms of verbs:

- | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. NOR | : zen | (IZAN) |
| 2. NOR-NORI | : zitzaion | (IZAN) |
| 3. NOR-NORK | : zuen | (UKAN) |
| 4. NOR-NORI-NORK | : zion | (UKAN) |

The past tense is particularly characterised by the fact that all of the forms end in **-N**.

Before looking at the structure of the auxiliaries a brief analysis of the aspects of the principal verb will be helpful.

Past Habitual Tense

This expresses an habitual action in the past. It can also represent constant states in the past. For example:

Ez zintudan EZAGUTZEN : I didn't **know** you (then).
Txikitan eskolara JOATEN nintzen : When I was small I **used to go** to school.

Remote Past Tense

The Remote Past tense is equivalent to the Simple Past of English when referring to anything that happened before today. Here are some examples:

Noiz JOAN zen familia Ameriketara : When did (your) family go to America?
Oheratu zinenean zer gertatu zen bart : What happened when you went to bed last night?

Future-in-the-Past

This expresses something that did or could have happened from a perspective in the past. Here are some examples:

Sagararak EROSIKO NITUEN, merkeagoak balira.
I **would have bought** the apples if they had been cheaper.
Ba nekien EGINGO NUEla eta egin dut.
I knew that I **could** do it and I did it.

This tense can also be used to express unfulfilled conditions from the past as in these examples:

GUSTATUTAKO ZITZAIDAN joatea.
I **would have liked** to go.
JAKINGO NUEN esan baninduzu.
I **would have known** if you had told me.

This tense is also used to represent a conjecture about a past event. Here are some examples:

Norbaitek gehiago eskatu du; nor IZANGO ZEN?
Someone asked for more; who **could it have been?**
Dirua AHAZTUKO ZITZAIZUN.
You (probably) **forgot** the money.

5.4.2.1. NOR (*izan*)

This is the past tense of the intransitive auxiliary verb.

ni	nintzen
hi	hintzen
hura	zen
gu	ginen
zu	zinen
zuek	zineten
haik	ziren

Here are some examples:

Atzo hondartzara joan NINTZEN	: Yesterday I went to the beach.
Noiz heldu ZEN Josu?	: When did Josu arrive?
Atzo etorri GINEN	: We came yesterday.
Zertan ari ZIREN?	: What were they doing? {In what were they busy?; lit. }

As shown in these examples there is only one subject implied in the action, with no object as a recipient. These forms use **NOR** verb forms. You can also use **NORK** verbs with **IZAN** as the auxiliary to make impersonal 'constructions'. For example:

Atzo ondo ikusten ZEN	: Yesterday she/he/it looked good. or, Yesterday one (could) see it well.
Lehen honela egiten ZIREN	: Before they were done like this. or, Before they did it like this.

5.4.2.2. NOR-NORI (*izan*)

	NOR - Sing.	NOR - Plur.
niri	zitzaidan	zitzaidan
hiri	zitzai(n)an	zitzaidan
huri	zitzaien	zitzaidan
guri	zitzagun	zitzaidan
zuri	zitzazun	zitzaidan
zuei	zitzazuen	zitzaidan
haiei	zitzaien	zitzaidan

You use the forms in the second column if the object (**NOR**) is singular and those in the third column if it is plural. As shown the plural forms are obtained by inserting the infix -**ZKI**- into the singular form.

Here are some examples:

Lehen gustatzen ZITZAIZKIDAN	: I used to like them / I liked them before. {Before they appealed to me ; lit.}
Atzo erlojua galdu ZITZAIDAN	: Yesterday I lost (my) watch. {Yesterday (my) watch was lost from me ; lit.}
Atzo apurtu ZITZAIZKION	: Yesterday he broke them. { They were broken by him yesterday; lit.}
Zer gertatzen ZITZAIZUN atzo?	: What happened to you yesterday?
Atzo gutun bat heldu ZITZAIGUN	: Yesterday we got a letter. {Yesterday a letter arrived for us ; lit.}

As shown, in these examples there are two subjects related to the action. On the one hand there is the real subject of the action (**NOR**), and on the other hand is the one that receives the action (**NORI**). For example, in the clause **Atzo erlojua galdu ZITZAIDAN**: ‘Yesterday I lost my watch’ we have:

ZER	:	erlojua	- ZAI -(the watch)
NORI	:	niri	- DA -(to me)

5.4.2.3. *NOR-NORK (ukan)*

	NOR - Sing.	NOR - Plur.
nik	nuen	nituen
hik	huen	hituen
hark	zuen	zituen
guk	genuen	genituen
zuk	zenuen	zenituen
zuek	zenuten	zenituzten
haiek	zuten	zituzten

As with the other forms, the plural forms are obtained by inserting the pluralizer **-IT-** into the corresponding singular forms. Here are some examples:

Atzo ekarri NUEN	: I brought it yesterday.
Atzo ekarri NITUEN	: I brought them yesterday.
Zer egin ZENUEN atzo?	: What did you do yesterday?
Pote batzuk hartu GENITUEN	: We took some jars.
Zer esaten ZUTEN horiek?	: What did those (people) say?
Non utzi ZENITUZTEN zapatak	: Where did you {pl.} leave the shoes?

These forms, even though they are the most common, are not the only forms possible. In the table above there are only those forms that correspond to the third person singular (**NUEN**) and the plural (**NITUEN**) of the **NOR** cases. Here is a table for the other 5 persons of **NOR**:

NOR	NORK		
NINDU	DA		N
HINDU	A/NA		N
-	-	(e)	N
GINTU	GU		N
ZINTU	ZU		N
ZINTUZTE	ZUE		N
-	(z)	TE	N

The **z** of **-(z)TE** is only used with **GINTU-** and **ZINTU-**, that is, the forms ending in **-TU**; and the **e** is used with those ending in **-TU/-DU**. The two vacant spaces in the **NOR** column refer to the different conjugation for third person objects which is presented in the preceding table. In this table the left column indicates who receives the action, and the right who does the action. Here is an example:

Atzo ikusi ZINTUDAN (nik zu) : Yesterday I saw you.

[zu: ZINTU] + [nik: DA] + -N = ZINTUDAN

Here are some more examples:

Ez NINDUEN agurtu : She/he didn't greet me.
Leihotik ikusi ZINTUZTEGUN : We saw you {pl.} from the window.
Atzo ez ZINTUGUN ikusi : We did not see you yesterday.
Jonek ekarri GINTUEN : Jon brought us (here).
Afaltzera gonbidatu NINDUTEN: They invited me to dinner.
Ezagutu nahi ZINTUDAN : I wanted to meet you. {know you; lit.}
Josuk ikusi nahi ZINTUEN : Josu wanted to see you.

5.4.2.4. NOR-NORI-NORK (*ukan*)

NORK	NOR	NORI	
NI		DA	N
HI		A/NA	N
ZI		O	N
GENI	(ZKI)	GU	N
ZENI		ZU	N
ZENI		ZUE	TE N
ZI		E	TE N

This table presents an irregularity compared to what we have seen with the present tense. There are still three columns, however **NORK** has moved from the end of the verb to the beginning:

1. **NORK** : the left column
2. **NOR** : the middle column (*Sing.: I / Plur.: IZKI*).
3. **NORI** : the right column

The two **-TE**'s that appear correspond to **NORK**, and they are used to distinguish **ZU/ZUEK** and **HURA/HAIEK**. For example:

ZENI	O		N	you {sing.} - to him
ZENI	O	TE	N	you {pl.} - to him
ZI	DA		N	him - to me
ZI	DA	TE	N	they - to me

Here are some more examples:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Ez NION ezer esan | : I didn't say (to him/her) anything. |
| Autoa eskatu ZIDAN | : He/she asked me (about) the car. |
| 100 pzta. eman ZIZKIDATEN | : They gave me 100 pesetas. |
| Zer egin ZENIEN | : What did you do to them ? |
| Ez GENION ezer esan | : We didn't say anything to him/her . |
| Atzo apunteak ekarri NIZKION | : Yesterday I brought him/her the notes. |

5.5. POTENTIAL - *Ahalera*

In Euskara the potential and imperative tenses use the auxiliary verbs of EDIN and EZAN as counterparts to IZAN and UKAN respectively. The potential tense is used to express the concept of ability or possibility by the English verb *can*. In Euskara all forms of the potential (**ahalera**) are characterized by the morpheme **-KE**. Here are some examples:

Sar NAITEKE ala itxarongo dut?	: Can I come in, or should I {will; lit.} wait?
Etor ZAITEZKE apurtxo batean?	: Can you come for a moment?
Hori edonork egin DEZAKE	: Anyone can do that.
Ezin DITZAKEGU horrela egin	: We can't do them like that.

As shown in the previous examples, the principal verb always takes the stem form, or the root of the verb. In the negative clauses the participle is frequently used, mainly in spoken Euskara. Here are a couple of examples:

Bihar EZIN naiteke etor(ri)	: Tomorrow I cannot come.
EZIN zaitezke gehiago hurbil(du)?	: Can't you come (any) {more; lit.} closer?

Note that in some places the negatives use the particle **EZ** (instead of **EZIN**) but the form of **EZIN** is the most widespread. Here are some examples:

Gaur EZ(IN) naiteke joan	: Today I cannot go.
Nik bakarrik EZ(IN) dezaket egin	: I can't do it alone.

The potential has three forms: *present as a certainty, future as a possibility, and a possibility in the past* and in English we represent these by the expressions *I can, I could, I could have*. At this point we are going to limit ourselves to the present tense forms. Here are some examples for the basic potential structures:

etor_DAI TEKE: she/he can come	har_DEZAKE: she/he can pick it up
---------------------------------------	--

So, how do we express the other forms of potential statements that don't appear in the examples? We use the verbs **AHAL IZAN** and **EZIN IZAN**, when we want to express affirmative or negative clauses. Here is a table of the most well used forms:

Affirmative	Negative
joan AHAL IZAN da : has been able to go	EZIN IZAN da joan: has not been able to go
joan AHAL da : can go	EZIN da joan: cannot go
joan AHAL IZATEN da : usually can go	EZIN IZATEN da joan: usually cannot go
joan AHAL IZANGO da : will be able to go	EZIN IZANGO da joan: will not be able to go
joan AHAL IZAN zen : could have gone	EZIN IZAN zen joan: could not have gone
joan AHAL zen : could have gone	EZIN zen joan: could not go
joan AHAL IZATEN zen : used to be able to go	EZIN IZATEN zen joan: did not used to be able...
joan AHAL IZANGO zen : was going to be able...	EZIN IZANGO zen joan: was not going to be able...

sar NAITEKE *is not* **sartu AHAL NAIZ**

In this section we have studied two ways to say ‘I can come in’:

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| a) sar NAITEKE | : I can come in - I will be able to come in. |
| b) sartu AHAL NAIZ | : I can come in - I am able to come in. {I am getting in now.} |

Even though in English both ideas are said the same, in Euskara they are not entirely the same. So, what makes them different? Example a) is an action which is going to happen in the future (and I am sure of being able to do it), even though the potential is in the present (I haven’t yet tried, but I believe that I can). In example b), the action is happening, and the potential has been tried out (I am coming in, and later it will be evident that I have come in).

Imagine that we are in front of a house, and the only way to get in is through an extremely small window, and we really want to get in. Before seeing if we really fit in the window, we would say ‘**Sar NAITEKE/Ezin NAITEKE sar(tu)**’. But when we are trying to get in, and we have gotten half-way through, we would say ‘**Sartu AHAL NAIZ/EZIN NAIZ sartu**’.

So, the forms that use the indicative **AHAL** express the potential of an action which is happening, whereas the potential forms which incorporate the morpheme **-KE**, express the potential of an action that happens in the future. In summary:

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------------|---|-----------------------|
| NAIZ | : present action | = | proven potential |
| NAITEKE | : future action | = | non-proven potential. |

Here are some more examples:

- | | |
|--|---|
| Egin DEZAKEDALA uste dut | : I believe that I can do it. |
| Saiatzen ari naiz, baina EZIN DUT | : I am trying it, but I can’t . |
| ZabalDEZAKEZU lata hau, mesedez? EZIN DUT lorik egin; urduri nago | : Can you open this can, please?
: I can’t sleep; I am nervous. |

- Nahi baduzu, lo egin DEZAKEZU** : If you want, **you can** sleep.
Nahi baduzu, joan ZAITEZKE etxera : If you want, **you can** go [to] home.
Ikusten duzu nola AHAL DUZUn? : Do you see how **you can**?
Nigatik nahi dutena egin DEZAKETE : As far as I'm concerned, **they can** do what they want. {From me, the (thing) that they want they can do; lit. }

Tables exist for all five forms of the auxiliaries *EDIN and *EZAN but their use is beyond the scope of this book. They can be found in Appendix 1. Here are the tables for NOR and NOR-NORK

1. NOR (*edin)

ni	naiteke
hi	haiteke
hura	daiteke
gu	gaitzke
zu	zaitzke
zuek	zaitzketete
haik	daitezke

Here are some examples:

- Sar NAITEKE? Bai horixe!** : **Can I** come in? Yes, of course!
Nahi baduzu, joan ZAITEZKE : If you want, **you can** go.
Non ezkuta GAITEZKE? : Where **can we** hide?
Amaitu dugula esan DAITEKE : **It can** (be) said that we have finished.
Zu gabe EZIN GAITEZKE irten : **We can't** go out without you.

2. NOR-NORK (*ezan)

	NOR - Singular	NOR - Plural
nik	dezaket	ditzaket
hik	dezakek/n	ditzakek/n
hura	dezake	ditzake
guk	dezakegu	ditzakegu
zuk	dezakezu	ditzakezu
zuek	dezakezue	ditzakezue
haiek	dezakete	ditzakete

As shown, the plural forms are created by changing the **E** in the singular to the pluralizer **IT**. Here are some examples:

Hori edonork lor DEZAKE.

Anyone **can** get that.

Nigatik, nahi duten bezala egin DITZAKETE.

In my opinion, **they can do them** as they want. {From me, as they want they can do them; lit. }

Horrek edonor asper DEZAKE.

That (thing) **can bore** anybody.

Haiek ere EZIN DITZAKETE konpon(du).

Those (ones) **can't fix them** either.

Nahita ere, EZIN DEZAKEGU okerrago egin.

Even (if we) wanted, **we can't do it worse**.

TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK

1. A common error occurs when a suffix is applied to the verb forms ending in **KE**. Remember that the verb forms ending in **KE** get a second e when you add a suffix. For example:

They said that you can go

***Joan zaitzkeLA esan dute.**

Joan zaitzkeELA esan dute.

I think I can go in

***Sar naitekeLA uste dut.**

Sar naitekeELA uste dut.

5.6. IMPERATIVE - *Agintera*

The Imperative is used to communicate requests or commands and is constructed in various ways. It is used more frequently in Euskara than in English particularly for requests. You will find that its use in situations where in English it would seem too severe or at least brusque.

1. <i>Participle</i>	ETORRI!	: Come!
2. <i>Periphrastic Form</i>	ETOR ZAITEZ!	: Come!
3. <i>Synthetic Form</i>	ZATOZ!	: Come!

5.6.1. THE PARTICIPLE - ETORRI

The most common imperative in spoken Euskara is made with the verbal *participle*. Here are some examples:

ETORRI hona!	: Come [to] here! {sing. and pl.}
JOAN etxera!	: Go [to] home! {sing. and pl.}
Kontuz IBILI!	: Be careful! { Go with care!} {sing. & pl.}
ITXARON apur batean!	: Wait a moment! {sing. and pl.}
UTZI bakean!	: Leave me in peace! {sing. and pl.}
Lasai EGON!	: Calm down! { Be tranquil!; lit.} {sing. & pl.}
Isilik EGON!	: Be quiet! {Shut up!} {sing. and pl.}
Geldi EGON!	: Calm down! { Be stopped!; lit.} {sing. & pl.}
Ez KEZKATU!	: Don't worry! {sing. and pl.}
Ez ESAN ezer!	: Don't say anything! {sing. and pl.}
Ez EGIN hori!	: Don't do that! {sing. and pl.}
Ez IZAN txotxoloa!	: Don't be a fool! {sing. and pl.}

In some places, instead of using the participle, the root of the verb is used. For example:

IKUSI hori	= IKUS hori	: Look at that
EKARRI umeak	= EKAR umeak	: Bring the children.
IRAKURRI berriro	= IRAKUR berriro	: Read it again.

5.6.2. PERIPHRASTIC FORM - ETOR ZAITEZ

This form uses the root of the verb, with the appropriate auxiliary. Here is a table of the auxiliaries in the imperative:

NOR		NOR-NORK		
ni	-	nik	-	-
hi	hadi		ezak/n	itzak/n
hura	bedi		beza	bitza
gu	-		-	-
zu	zaitetz	zuk	ezazu	itzazu
zuek	zaitezte	zuek	ezazue	itzazue
haik	bitez	haiek	bezate	bitzate

Here are some examples:

Joan ZAITEZ pikutara!	: [You] Go to hell!
Ez ZAITEZTE haserretu!	: [You] Don't get angry! {pl.}
Jezar ZAITEZ oraintxe bertan!	: [You] Sit down, right now!
Isil ZAITEZTE!	: [You] Be quiet! {pl.}
Errepika EZAZU, mesedez!	: [You] Repeat it, please!
Ez EZAZUE begira!	: [You] Don't look! {pl.}
Ez ITZAZU bota!	: [You] Don't throw them!
Utz ITZAZUE mahi gainean!	: [You] Leave them on the table! {pl.}
Ez EZAZU horrelakorik esan!	: [You] Don't say that!

When the statement requires the first and third person, normally the subjunctive conjugations are used instead of the imperative.

5.6.3. SYNTHETIC FORM - ZATOZ

Some verbs have synthetic forms for the imperative. Here are some of the more frequently used ones:

ZATOZ	: come	ZATOZ arin!	: Come quickly!
ZATOZTE	: come {pl.}	ZATOZTE hona!	: Come [to] here! {pl.}
ZOAZ	: go	ZOAZ pikutara!	: Go to hell!
ZOAZTE	: go {pl.}	ZOAZTE hemendik!	: Go from here! {pl.}
ZAUDE	: be	ZAUDE lasai!	: Calm down!
ZAUDETE	: be {pl.}	ZAUDETE isilik!	: Be quiet! {pl.}

As well as these verb forms, there are a series of frequently used verbs which present synthetic forms. Note that these verbs are usually placed at the beginning of a sentence. They

are formed from contractions of the full auxiliary verb construction as shown by the components in brackets. Here are some examples:

	NOR	NORI	NORK	VERB	
ESA	I(eza)	DA	-	esaiDAzu, esaizkiOzu...	ESAN
EMA	I(eza)	-	ZU	emaiDAzu, emaizkiGUzue...	EMAN
UTZ	I(eza) (ZKI)	iO	-	utziDAzu, utzizkiGUzue...	UTZI
EKAR	-	GU	-	ekarDAzu, ekarGUzue...	EKARRI
ERAMA	I(eza)	-	ZUE	eramaiozu, eramaizkiEzue...	ERAMAN
GALDE	I(eza)	iE	-	galdeiOzu, galdeiDAzu...	GALDETU

Esaidazu	ESAIDAZU egia!	: [You] Tell me the truth!
Esaiozu	ESAIIOZU amari!	: [You] Tell it to mother!
Emaidazu	EMAIDAZU ogia!	: [You] Give me the bread!
Emaizkidazu	EMAIZKIDAZU niri!	: [You] Give them to me!
Emaiozu	EMAIOZU aitari!	: [You] Give it to the father!
Emaizkiozu	EMAIZKIOZU orain!	: [You] Give them to him now!
Utzidazu	UTZIDAZU liburua!	: [You] Leave me the book!
Utziozu	UTZIOZU umeari!	: [You] Leave it to the child!
Eramaiozu	ERAMAIOZU Joni!	: [You] Take it to Jon!
Galdeiozu	GALDEIOZU berari!	: [You] Ask him!

It is useful to be aware that for the first and third persons, normally, instead of the imperative, the subjunctive is used, except in a few phrases like **Goian BEGO**: Rest in peace! {Rest on high; lit.} **Hala BEDI**!: It should be like this! Here are some examples:

Goazen	GOAZEN kalera	: Let's go to the street!
Datorrela	DATORRELA bera	: He should come!
Datozela	DATOZELA gero!	: They should come later!
Doala	DOALA pikutara!	: She/he should go to hell!
Doazela	DOAZELA etxera!	: They should go home!

5.6.4. OTHER WAYS TO EXPRESS THE IMPERATIVE

Often the imperative is implicit in phrases or expressions.

Geldi!	: Quiet!	Lasai!	: Hush! (Tranquil; lit.)
Begira!	: Look!	Beitu!	: Look!
Kontuz!	: Careful!	Tori!	: Take it!, Have it!
Isilik!	: Be quiet!	Ixo!	: Quiet!!
Ospa!	: Big!	Alde!	: Go away!
Kanpora!	: Out!	Aurrera!	: Onwards!
Utikan!	: Leave me in peace!	Zutik!	: Stand!

Jausi BARIK!

In Euskara there is an expression that is used frequently in negative phrases, and its function is similar to that of the imperative. It uses the particle **BARIK**.

Kontuz, jausi BARIK!	: Be careful, don't fall!
Begiratu, baina ukitu BARIK!	: Look, but don't touch!
Bultzatu BARIK!	: Don't push!
Haserretu BARIK, e!	: Don't get angry, eh!

Hori ez DA egiten!

Another way to construct phrases with a similar function to the imperative is found in the impersonal form.

Umea! Hori ez DA egiten!	: Child! That is not done!
Hau ez DA ukitzen!	: This is not (to be) touched!
Hori ez DA esaten!	: That is not said!

TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK

1. A mistake many people make is using **GOAZEN** in phrases which are not imperative. Here is an example to demonstrate this:

- a) **Let's go home!/We're going home!:** **GOAZEN etxera!**
- b) **Let's go home?/ Are we going...? :** **JOANGO GARA etxera?/ BAGOAZ etxera? .**

In this example the type of verb in English doesn't change, but in Euskara it does. So, the imperative cannot be used in a question:

What, are we going?	*Zer, GOAZEN?
Are we going to the street?	Zer, JOANGO GARA?/Zer, BAGOAZ?
	*GOAZEN kalera?
	JOANGO GARA kalera?/BAGOAZ kalera?

2. It is also common to make the mistake of using **GOAZ** instead of **GOAZEN**. For example:

Let's go home!	*GOAZ etxera!
	GOAZEN etxera!
Let's get out of here!	*GOAZ hemendik!
	GOAZEN hemendik!

3. Another common mistake is when the imperative is intended, but the indicative is used. For example:

Bring that!

***EKARRI DUZU hori!**

EKARRI hori!

Tell the truth!

***ESAN DUZU egia!**

ESAN egia!

5.7. SYNTHETIC VERBS - *Adizki Trinkoak*

As shown previously, the synthetic verbs are those in which the whole verb is found in one word. Scholars believe that at one time the synthetic verb was the only type of verb in Euskara and that eventually periphrastic verbs developed and now the active use of synthetic verbs is diminishing.

Only a few verbs have synthetic forms, and these can only be used to indicate some tenses. Here we are going to limit ourselves to the study of the most commonly used indicative forms although a fuller list is presented in Appendix 3. We will present the synthetic forms of the following verbs:

Type NOR verbs

EGON	: to be
ETORRI	: to come
IBILI	: to go (about)
JOAN	: to go

Type NORK verbs

EDUKI	: to have
EGIN	: to do/make
EKARRI	: to bring
ERAMAN	: to take
ESAN	: to say/tell
IRUDITU	: to seem/appear
IRITZI	: to have an opinion
JAKIN	: to know

5.7.1. PRESENT TENSE - *Orainaldia*

These forms are equivalent to the present progressive of English. (TO BE: *I am, you are, she/he is, we are, you/she/he is (formal), they are*).

Type NOR verbs:

	EGON	ETORRI	IBILI	JOAN
	to be	to come	to go about	to go
ni	nago	nator	nabil	noa
hi	hago	hator	habil	hoa
hura	dago	dator	dabil	doa
gu	gaude	gatoz	gabiltza	goaz
zu	zaude	zatoz	zabiltza	zoaz
zuek	zaudete	zatozte	zabiltzate	zoazte
haik	daude	datoz	dabiltza	doaz

Type **NORK** verbs:

	EDUKI to have	EGIN to do/make	EKARRI to bring	ERAMAN to take
nik	dau(z)kat	dagit	dakar(tza)t	darama(tza)t
hik	dau(z)kak/n	dagik/n	dakar(tza)k/n	darama(tza)k/n
hark	dau(z)ka	dagi	dakar(tza)	darama(tza)
guk	dau(z)kagu	dagigu	dakar(tza)gu	darama(tza)gu
zuk	dau(z)kazu	dagizu	dakar(tza)zu	darama(tza)zu
zuek	dau(z)kazue	dagizue	dakar(tza)zue	darama(tza)zue
haiek	dau(z)kate	dagite	dakar(tza)te	darama(tza)te
	ESAN to say/tell	IRUDITU to appear/seem	IRITZI to think of	JAKIN to know
nik	diot	dirudit	deritzot	daki(zki)t
hik	diok/n	dirudik/n	deritzok/n	daki(zki)k/n
hark	dio	dirudi	deritzo	daki(zki)
guk	diogu	dirudigu	deritzogu	daki(zki)gu
zuk	diozu	dirudizu	deritzozu	daki(zki)zu
zuek	diozue	dirudizue	deritzozue	daki(zki)zue
haiek	diote	dirudite	deritzote	daki(zki)te

Here are some examples:

Jon komunean DAGO

: Jon is in the toilet.

Nora ZOAZ hain presaka?

: [To] Where are you going so fast?

Nola ZABILTZA?

: How are you going?

Non DAUKAZU erlojua?

: Where is the watch?

{ Where do you have the watch?; lit. }

Horrek galdera guztiak DAKIZKI

: That (person) knows all (of) the questions.

Lagun batzuk DAKARTZAT

: I am bringing some friends.

Bi urte DARAMATZAT itxaroten

: I have been waiting for two years.

{ I am taking two years waiting; lit. }

Zer DIOZU?

: What are you saying?

Batzuetan tontoa DIRUDIZU?

: Sometimes you seem (to be) stupid.

Zer DERITZOZU honi?

: What do you think (of) this?

Zer dagite?

: What are they doing?

5.7.2. PAST TENSE - *Lehenaldia*

These are the equivalent of the past progressive of the indicative.

Type **NOR** verbs:

	EGON	ETORRI	IBILI	JOAN
	to be	to come	to go about	to go
ni	nengoen	nentorren	nenbilen	nindoan
hi	hengoen	hentorren	henbilen	hindoan
hura	zengoen	zetorren	zebilen	zihoan
gu	geuden	gentozen	genbiltzan	gindoazen
zu	zeunden	zentozen	zenbiltzan	zindoazen
zuek	zeundeten	zentozten	zenbiltzaten	zindoazten
haik	zeuden	zetozen	zebiltzan	zihoazen

Type **NORK** verbs:

	EDUKI	EGIN	ERAMAN	EKARRI
	to have	to do/make	to take	to bring
nik	neu(z)kan	negien	nerama(tza)n	nekar(re/tza)n
hik	heu(z)kan	hegien	herama(tza)n	hekar(re/tza)n
hark	zeu(z)kan	zegien	zerama(tza)n	zekar(re/tza)n
guk	geneu(z)kan	genegien	generama(tza)n	genekar(re/tza)n
zuk	zeneu(z)kan	zenegien	zenerama(tza)n	zenekar(re/tza)n
zuek	zeneu(z)katen	zenegiten	zenerama(tza)ten	zenekar(tza)ten
haiek	zeu(z)katen	zegiten	zerama(tza)ten	zekar(tza)ten

	ESAN	IRUDITU	IRITZI	JAKIN
	to say/tell	to seem/appear	to think of	to know to
nik	nioen	nirudien	neritzon	neki(zki)en
hik	hioen	hirudien	heritzon	heki(zki)en
hark	zioen	zirudien	zeritzon	zeki(zki)en
guk	genioen	genirudien	generitzon	geneki(zki)en
zuk	zenioen	zenirudien	zeneritzon	zeneki(zki)en
zuek	zenioten	zeniruditen	zeneritzoten	zeneki(zki)ten
haiek	zioten	ziruditen	zeritzoten	zeki(zki)ten

Here are some examples:

Lehen itxita ZEGOEN
Etxera GINDOAZEN
Ez ZEBILEN oso ondo
Ez NEKIEN hori

: Previously **it** was shutting.
 : **We** were going [to] home.
 : **It** wasn't going very well.
 : **I** didn't know that.
 { I wasn't knowing that; lit. }

Non ZERAMAN dirua?	: Where was she/he taking the money? { Where was she/he carrying the money?}
Nik ez NIOEN hori	: I wasn't saying that.
Zailagoa ZIRUDIEN	: It seemed harder. { It was appearing harder; lit. }
Nik ondo NERITZON joateari	: I thought it was good to go. { I had the opinion (that it was) good to go; lit. }
Zer HEGIEN etxean?	: What were you doing in the house?

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. You must be careful that you don't get some forms confused, because they are quite similar. For example:

ZEUNDEN	: you were
ZEUDEN	: they were

2. Another common mistake happens when you conjugate verbs with a synthetic form the same way as verbs without a synthetic form. For example:

I am going home	*Etxera JOATEN ARI NAIZ. Etxera NOA.
We are going to work	*Lanera JOATEN ARI GARA. Lanera GOAZ.

In some cases both forms are possible, but they have distinct meanings. For example:

Liburuak EKARTZEN ARI NAIZ	: I am bringing the books.
Liburuak DAKARTZAT	: I bring the books.

5.8. COMPOUND VERBS - *Aditz Lokuzioak*

There are a series of compound verbs or verbal phrases which consist of a word and one of the common verbs such as **IZAN**, **UKAN**, **EGIN**, **EMAN**, and **HARTU**. In this section we are going to study how these verbs are used. Most of the common verbs of this type of construction that are to be found in Aulestia's dictionary are presented in Appendix 6.

Here is a list of the most frequent compound verbs that use **IZAN**:

bizi izan	: to live	ari izan	: to be doing something
komeni izan	: to be convenient	espero izan	: to hope (desire)
nahi izan	: to want, desire	nahiago izan	: to prefer
gura izan	: to want, desire	gurago izan	: to prefer
balio izan	: to be of value	behar izan	: to need, to owe
uste izan	: to believe	merezi izan	: to deserve
maite izan	: to love	gorroto izan	: to hate
ahal izan	: to be able	ezin izan	: to not be able to

As shown, all of these examples are made of a noun, followed by the verb **IZAN**. This doesn't mean, however, that all of these verbs take the **NOR** declension. The majority of them take a **NORK** declension. This can seem inconsistent, but in reality the verb **IZAN** has various meanings:

IZAN	<i>to be</i> (descriptive)	Pelotaria IZAN naiz	: I have been a pelota player.
	<i>to have</i>	Ez dut astirik IZAN	: I haven't had time.
	<i>to be</i> (locational)	Non IZAN zara?	: Where have you been?

So, we could translate the above verbs approximately like this:

BIZI IZAN	: to live
NAHI IZAN	: to have desire, to want
BEHAR IZAN	: to have a need, must

The aspect of these verbs are created by verbs such as **IZAN**, according to the corresponding substantive. For example the past, present and future tenses and the habitual and perfect moods are presented here for **BIZI** and **NAHI**:

BIZI IZAN	da	: has lived	NAHI IZAN	du	: has wanted
BIZI	da	: lives	NAHI	du	: wants
BIZI IZATEN	da	: usually lives	NAHI IZATEN	du	: usually wants
BIZI IZANGO	da	: will live	NAHI IZANGO	du	: will want

BIZI IZAN	zen	: had lived	NAHI IZAN	zuen	: had wanted
BIZI	zen	: lived	NAHI	zuen	: wanted
BIZI IZATEN	zen	: usually lived	NAHI IZATEN	zuen	: usually wanted
BIZI IZANGO	zen	: was going to live	NAHI IZANGO	zuen	: was going to want

The other verbs are used in the same way so it is enough to change the substantive. But, the future tense is different:

BIZI izanGO	=	BIZIKO
NAHI izanGO	=	NAHIKO
BEHAR izanGO	=	BEHARKO
EZIN izanGO	=	EZINGO

The verb **ARI IZAN** also presents other forms:

ARI IZAN	=	ARITU
ARI IZATEN	=	ARITZEN
ARI IZANGO	=	ARIKO/ARITUKO

Here are some examples:

Lehen gurasoekin BIZI nintzen	: Before I lived with (my) parents.
Zer NAHI zuten?	: What did they want ?
Ez dut ezer NAHI	: I don't want anything.
Zer BEHARKO duzu?	: What will you need ?
Zenbat BALIOKO du horrek?	: How much will that be worth ?
Ez du MEREZI IZAN	: It hasn't been deserved .
EZIN IZAN ditut ekarri	: I haven't been able to bring them.
EZIN ditut egin	: I can't do them.
EZIN IZANGO naiz joan	: I will not be able to go.
Ikasten ARITU (ARI IZAN) da	: She/he has been studying.
Irakurtzen ARI naiz	: I am reading.
Zer GURA zuen horrek?	: What did that (person) want ?
NAHIAGO IZATEN dugu hau	: We usually prefer this.
Ezetz USTE IZAN dut	: I have not believed it.
Beti MAITEKO zaitut	: I will always love you.

5.8.1. USE OF ACCOMPANYING VERBS WITH COMPOUND VERBS

Sometimes some of the compound verbs are used together with accompanying verbs. For example:

Etxera JOAN NAHI du	: She/he wants to go home.
Lanera JOAN BEHAR dut	: I must go to work.
Beste bat EROSI BEHARKO duzu	: You will need to buy another one.
Ez du ETORRI GURA IZAN	: She/he hasn't wanted to come .
EZIN IZAN naiz lehenago ETORRI	: I haven't been able to come before.

When the compound verbs go with other verbs, they present three problems:

1. *The order* : above all, in the negative constructions.
2. *The auxiliary* : whether it has to be conjugated with **IZAN** or **UKAN**.
3. *The aspect* : what form the verb takes.

5.8.1.1. THE ORDER - Ordena

Except for the cases of **EZIN IZAN**, **MEREZI IZAN** and **BALIO IZAN**, which we will analyze later, when compound verbs are used with another verb, both form an indivisible unit which is found in both positive and negative constructions. In this unit the compound verb, which is the principal verb, will go on the right of the rest of the expression. For example:

Etxera JOAN NAHI IZAN du	: She/he has wanted to go home.
Ez du etxera JOAN NAHI IZAN	: She/he has not wanted to go home.
ORDAINDU BEHAR dugu	: We have to pay .
Ez dugu ORDAINDU BEHAR	: We don't have to pay .
Euskara IKASTEN ARI da	: She/he is studying Euskara.
Ez da euskara IKASTEN ARI	: She/he is not studying Euskara.

In these examples, both verbs form an indivisible unit which is kept together even in the negative clauses. So, apart from a few special exceptions, clauses which differ from this order are incorrect.

The verb **EZIN IZAN** has another order, being a verb carrying negative semantics. Here are some examples to follow:

EZIN IZAN + *auxiliary* + (*complement*) + VERB

EZIN IZAN dut ezer EGIN	: I haven't been able to do anything.
EZIN da inor SARTU	: Nobody can come in . { Anybody can't come in; lit. }

EZINGO dugu EGIN	: We will not be able to do it.
EZIN IZAN nituen IKUSI	: I wasn't able to see them.

5.8.1.2. THE AUXILIARY VERB - Aditz Laguntzailea

In order to know the appropriate auxiliary for the compound verb you need to keep in mind that the principal verb is the verb in the compound structure, that is the reason for its location on the right of the accompanying verb. This is the verb that governs the conjugation of the auxiliary, not the accompanying verb. Here is a table which shows the auxiliary for each compound verb:

NOR (IZAN)	NORK (UKAN)	NOR-NORK (IZAN/UKAN)
bizi izan	nahi izan	ezin izan
ari izan	nahiago izan	ahal izan
komeni izan	gura izan	
mintzo izan	gurago izan	
	behar izan	
	balio izan	
	uste izan	
	merezi izan	
	maite izan	
	gorroto izan	

The verbs **EZIN IZAN** and **AHAL IZAN** change according to the verb they accompany. Here are some examples:

Gaur ezin NAIZ joan	: Today I cannot go.
Gaur ezin DUT egin	: Today I cannot do it.
Sentitzen dut, baina ezin DUT	: I'm sorry, but I can't.
Sartu ahal GARA?	: Can we come in?
Egin ahalko DUZU?	: Will you be able to do it?

Exceptions

In some parts of Euskal Herria what we have presented above doesn't happen, and **EZIN IZAN** and **AHAL IZAN** use the auxiliary **UKAN**.

Gaur EZIN DUT JOAN	: Today I cannot go.
Bihar JOAN AHAL DUGU	: We can go tomorrow.

Also **BEHAR IZAN** changes auxiliary according to geographical area, so it takes **IZAN** or **UKAN** as an auxiliary, according to the accompanying verb. For example:

Etxera joan BEHARKO NAIZ : I will have to go home.
Ogia erosi BEHAR DUT : I have to buy the bread.

But, the most accepted form is to conjugate **BEHAR IZAN** with **UKAN** no matter which verb accompanies it. Also, for all speakers, when **EZIN IZAN** and **AHAL IZAN** are used by themselves, they are always conjugated with **UKAN**. For example:

Etorriko zara? Ezin DUT : Will you come? I can't.
Egingo duzue? Ezin DUGU : Will you do it? We can't.
Ahal baDUZU, etorri : If you can, come.

5.8.1.3. THE ASPECT - Aspektua

We said above that the accompanying verb always takes the same form, however it can vary according to the aspect we wish to convey in conjunction with the compound verb it accompanies. Here is a table of the aspects that these verbs use:

NAHI/GURA IZAN		: IKUSI nahi dute.
NAHIAGO IZAN		: Nahiago dute ez EGIN.
BEHAR IZAN		: IKUSI behar dute.
AHAL IZAN		: IKUSI ahal dute.
EZIN IZAN		: Ezin dute IKUSI.
-T(Z)EN	ARI IZAN	: IKUSTEN ari da.
-T(Z)EA	KOMENI IZAN	: Ondo egiTEA komeni da.
	MEREZI IZAN	: IkusTEA merezi du.
-T(Z)EAK	BALIO IZAN	: IkusTEAK ez du balio.

Here are some examples:

Ez du ezer IKASI nahi : She/he doesn't want to **study** anything.
Gaur ETORRI behar duzu : You must **come** today.
Ezin da UKITU : It cannot be **touched**.
Telebista IKUSTEN ari da : She/he is **watching** the television.
Berriro egiTEA komeni da : It is convenient to **do** it again.
Ez du merezi JOATEA : It isn't worth **going**.
 {It doesn't deserve [the] **going**; lit. }
Tranpa EGITEAK ez du balio : It isn't worth playing {**doing**; lit.} tricks.

I don't want to	*Ez NAHI DUT. Ez DUT NAHI.
I want to go in	*NAHI dut SARTU. SARTU NAHI dut.

2. Another common mistake is to change the form of the accompanying verb. For example:

I will need to go	*JoanGO behar dut. Joan beharKO dut.
We will need to do it	*EginGO behar dugu. Egin beharKO dugu.
I cannot do it	*Ezin dut egiTEA. Ezin dut EGIN.

3. A third mistake is confusing the different compound usages. For example:

I haven't been able to do it	*EZIN DUT egin. EZIN IZAN DUT egin.
She/he hasn't wanted to go	*Ez du JOAN NAHI. Ez du JOAN NAHI IZAN.
She/he has needed to go	*JOAN BEHAR du. JOAN BEHAR IZAN du.

4. The use of the form **-T(Z)EN** is also common with some compound verbs, using the analogy of other verbs. Here are a couple of examples:

Where do you live?	*Non biziTZEN zara? Non BIZI zara?
I live alone	*Ni bakarrik biziTZEN naiz. Ni bakarrik BIZI naiz.
How much time is left?/How long to go?	*Zenbat denbora faltaTZEN da? Zenbat denbora FALTA da?

5. The verb **merezi izan** causes much confusion. This is why it is common to use it with the form **T(Z)EAK**, instead of the correct form of **-T(Z)EA**:

I isn't worth trying {It doesn't deserve trying; lit.}	*Ez du merezi saiaTZEAK. Ez du merezi saiaTZEA.
It has been worth coming	*Merezi izan du etorTZEAK. Merezi izan du etorTZEA.
Jon deserves to win	*JonEK merezi du irabazTEAK. JonEK merezi du irabazTEA.

In this last example **irabazTEA** has the function of the object, not the subject, hence you should use the form **-TZEA** not **-TZEAK**. A similar error can be

seen in the following examples with the word **pena**, which has been influenced by Spanish, and in these cases the subject is even omitted.

It isn't worth it { the hurt/worry; lit. } ***Ez du PENA merezi.**

Ez du MEREZI.

It is worth trying it

***PENA merezi du saiatzea.**

MEREZI du saiatzea.

5.9. VARIOUS PROBLEMATIC VERBS - *Zenbait Aditz Problematiko*

In this section we analyse a series of verbs which can often be problematic.

5.9.1. NOR/NORK

The first problem a verb can present is to establish whether it functions as a **NOR** (intransitive) or **NORK** (transitive) verb. It is not always easy to know when a verb functions as **NOR**, and when it functions as **NORK**, and sometimes a verb can function as both. Here is an example:

Jon armairuan SARTU DA : Jon has **put** (himself) in the wardrobe.
JonEK jaka armairuan SARTU DU : Jon has **put** the jacket in the wardrobe.

What is it that changes in the clauses? In the first example the person that 'puts' is Jon, and what was put is Jon also, in other words, who does the action and what receives the action are one and the same. In the second example, the person that puts is Jon, but the 'put' thing is the jacket. So, the subject that does the action and the subject receiving the action are not the same. We know that 'Jon' is the subject because it is marked by the ergative case marker **-EK**. Here are some more examples:

Ama etxetik ATERA DA : Mother **has gone out** from the house.
AmaK umea etxetik ATERA DU : Mother **has taken** the child **out** from the house.
Mikel ERRE DA : Mikel **is burnt**.
MikelEK eskua ERRE DU : Mikel **has burnt** (his) hand.
Ana atzo HIL ZEN : Ana **died** yesterday.
AnaK atzo sagu bat HIL ZUEN : Ana **killed** a mouse yesterday.
Ama OHERATU DA : Mother **has gone to bed**.
AmaK umeak OHERATU DITU : Mother **has put** the children **to bed**.
Jon aulkitik ALTXATU DA : Jon **has gotten up** from the chair.
JonEK aulkia ALTXATU DU : Jon **has lifted** the chair.

You cannot use all verbs both ways. But normally all verbs follow these rules:

NOR (da) : When the subject does no action on a person or object.
NORK (du) : When the subject acts upon an object, whether it is present or not in the clause.

Here are some verbs which only use the one type of auxiliary verb:

IKUSI	: look	(I always see something	- NORK)
EGIN	: do	(I always do something	- NORK)
ENTZUN	: hear	(I always hear something	- NORK)
HELDU	: arrive	(I don't arrive anything	- NOR)
JAUSI	: fall	(I don't fall anything	- NOR)
JOAN	: go	(I don't go anything	- NOR)

Here are some of the verbs whose meaning changes according to the auxiliary used (i.e. **NOR (da) / NORK (du)**):

		NOR	NORK
hil	-	to die	to kill
sartu	-	to go in	to put in
altxatu	-	to get up	to lift

5.9.2. EGON / IZAN / ARI IZAN

The verb *to be* can be expressed in many different forms. Here are some examples:

The child <i>is</i> in the bed	: Umea ohean DAGO.	(EGON)
The child <i>is</i> in the street	: Umea kalean DA.	(IZAN)
The child <i>is</i> studying	: Umea ikasten ARI DA.	(ARI IZAN)

As shown, in English the verb remains the same - *is*, but in Euskara three different verbs are used. So how are we to know which one to use? Here is a brief explanation which describes the differences between the verbs and their meanings:

IZAN	It expresses a situation which is not marked; in other words, we don't know if the subject is still (quiet), moving around, or doing something. Also it expresses permanent attributes.
EGON	It expresses a momentary situation; in other words, the subject remains still, in the same place. Specifies time/place and changeable attributes.
ARI IZAN	It expresses a continuous action that is happening in the current moment, that is, the subject is doing something.

lanean DA / lanean DAGO / lanean ARI DA

Here is an example of a conversation where you can observe the use of these verbs, so you can compare their meaning and usage.

<i>Umea</i>	: Non DA* aita?	- Where <i>is</i> father?
<i>Ama</i>	: Ez al dakizu non DEN?	- Do you know where he is?
<i>Umea</i>	: A, bai, lanean DAGO^.	- Ah yes, he is at work.
<i>Ama</i>	: Lanean baDAGO, ez du ezer askorik egingo.	- He is at work, it's not a big thing.
<i>Umea</i>	: Ez, lanean ARI DA#.	- No, he is working.
<i>Ama</i>	: Ziur lanean ARI DELA?	- (Are you) sure that he is working?
<i>Umea</i>	: A, ez; lanean DA@.	- Ah, no; he is at work.
<i>Ama</i>	: A, hori bai.	- Ah, yes that.

* - Here the child doesn't know if her father is active or not, so the non-marked form of **IZAN** is used.

^ - Here the child corrects herself, and uses the verb **EGON**, which presupposes that the father is 'static', and so her mother corrects her.

- Here the child corrects herself, and instead of using **EGON**, uses **ARI IZAN**, which supposes that the father is working, so he is doing something, so her mother corrects her again.

@ - At last the child realizes her mistake, and uses the correct form (**IZAN**) to express that the father is at work without stating whether he is doing something or not.

This example doesn't have an exact equivalence in English so we have given you some explanations along with the translation so that it can be understood. Here are some more examples:

Non DIRA umeak? Ikusi Aditza?	: Where are the kids? Have you seen them?
Jon kalean jezarrita DAGO	: Jon is sitting in the street.
Umeak gaisorik DAUDE	: The children are sick.
Gaur mendian IZAN gara	: Today we have been on the mountain.
Eta Mikel? Kanpoan DA	: And Mikel? He's outside.
IZAN zara inoiz Jonen etxean?	: At any time have you been in Jon's house?
Gaur Donostian IZAN naiz	: Today I have been in Donostia.

ARI IZAN can use both the NOR and the NOR-NORI forms of the auxiliary verb so we can have two forms of the following sentence:

Nik Mikeli liburua irakurri diot.	
I read the book to Mikel.	
Ni Mikeli liburua irakurtzen ARI natzaio.	
I am reading the book to Mikel {right now}.	
Ni liburua irakurtzen ARI NAIZ.	
I am reading the book {right now}.	

EGON / IBILI

In some regions the form **ARI IZAN** is hardly ever used, but the verbs **EGON** or **IBILI** are used instead. They apply a nuance to the main verb of a steady state or a continuous action respectively. Here are some examples:

EGON	- a static action.
IBILI	- a dynamic action.
Telebista ikusten DAGO	: She/he is watching the television.
Jolasean DABIL	: She/he is playing.
Liburuak saltzen DABIL	: She/he goes (around) selling books.
Lan bila GABILTZA	: We are searching (for) work.
Paseatzen NABIL	: I am walking. {doing a walk; lit.}

5.9.3. SPECIAL VERBS - *Aditz Bereziak*

There are some verbs that don't behave regularly for a variety of reasons so we have to look at each one individually.

5.9.3.1. Lagundu - Help, Accompany

The verb **lagundu** can be conjugated as **NOR-NORK (dut)** and as **NOR-NORI-NORK**, but this varies its meaning. Here is a pair of examples:

Etxera lagundu DUT	: I have accompanied (her/him) home. { <i>accompany</i> }
Egiten lagundu DIOT	: I have helped her/him do it. { <i>to help</i> }

5.9.3.2. Utzi - Leave, Let, Stop

The verb **utzi** can be conjugated in both ways, giving different meanings. Here are some examples:

Erretzen utzi DUT	: I have left him/her smoking. { <i>left him to him-self</i> }
Erretzen utzi DIOT	: I have let him/her smoke. { <i>by agreement</i> }
ErreTZEARI utzi DIOT	: I have stopped smoking. { <i>stopped</i> }
	{I have left off from smoking; lit.}

The last construction is always used when SINESTU and UTZI are put together, for example:

Gizabanakoak jainko batengan SINESTEARI utzi DIO.

Individual(s) have given up believing in a god.

5.9.3.3. Ulertu - Understand, Comprehend

The meaning of the verb **ulertu** also changes, depending on how it is conjugated.

Ulerzen ZAITUT : I understand you. {I understand you as a person}
Ulerzen DIZUT : I comprehend you. {I understand what you are saying}

5.9.3.4. Deitu - Call

This verb can be used with both auxiliaries, and its meaning does **not** change. Both forms are correct, but the most commonly used form is with **NOR-NORI-NORK**. Here is an example:

Jon_ deitu DUT : I have called Jon.
JonI deitu DIOT : I have called [to] Jon.

The form **NOR-NORK (dut)** may seem more logical, but this verb comes from the verb **DEI EGIN** (to call, to make a call), which always takes the form **NOR-NORI-NORK**.

5.9.3.5. Hasi, hasi nahi, hasi nahian - Begin/start

The verb **hasi** (to begin) has a variety of constructions. When you use it with the construction **-T(Z)EN**, its auxiliary is **IZAN (da)**. Anywhere else the auxiliary is **UKAN (du)**. Here is an example:

a) **Nobela bat irakurTZEN hasi NAIZ** : I have begun to read a novel.
b) **Nobela bat hasi DUT** : I have begun a novel.

The difference can be found in that each form responds to different questions. In example a) we respond to the question **Zertan hasi?** (Begin to do what?) while in b) we are responding to the question **Zer hasi?** (Begin what?). Here are some more examples:

Koadro bat pintaTZEN hasi NAIZ : I have just started **to paint** a painting.
Koadro bat hasi DUT : I **have** started a painting.
Ikastaro bat egiTEN hasi NAIZ : I have started **to do** a course
Ikastaro bat hasi DUT : I **have** started a course.

There are some other special characteristics of **hasi**. When used to describe starting an action then the continuous mode of the verb is used with the intransitive auxiliary, for example:

Euskara ikasten hasi naiz : I've started to learn euskara.

In the case of the object of the verb being a noun then the transitive auxiliary is used.

Berak abestia hasi du : She/he started a song.

A common construction with **hasi** is **hasi nahi** which expresses a wish to start something, for example:

Euskara ikasi hasi nahi dut : I have wanted to start to learn Euskara.
Liburua hasi nahi dut : I have wanted to start a book.

A sharper distinction in terms of the notion of *want* can be achieved by using **nahian** which expresses the moment of wanting to do something, for example:

Euskara ikasi nahian hasi naiz... (When) I started to want to learn euskara...

Note that the change in the juxtaposition of **nahian** and **hasi** means **ikasi** is used in place of **ikasten**.

5.9.3.6. Pasa, kosta, falta izan, laga - Pass time, Cost, Lack, Leave

The verbs **pasa** (to pass time), **kosta** (to cost), **laga** (to leave), and **falta izan** (to lack) are constantly used in the wrong way. Quite often the suffix **-TU** is added to the verbs, and this is incorrect. Here is a tabulation, and then some examples:

Past	Present	Future
pasa_	pasaTZEN	pasaKO
kosta_	kostaTZEN	kostaKO
laga_	lagaTZEN	lagaKO
falta IZAN	falta_	faltaKO

Gaur primeran PASA_ dugu. : Today we have **spent** fantastically. {lit.}
Oso ondo pasaKO duzu. : You **will** go very well.
Urte asko PASA_ dira. : Many years have **passed**.
Hori ez zaizu ezer kostaKO. : That **will** not cost you anything.
Asko KOSTA zait egitea. : It has **cost** me a lot to do it.
Non LAGA_ dituzu giltzak? : Where have you **left** the keys?

- Zenbat FALTA da hasteko?** : How much (time) is **left** (before) it starts?
 {How much is **lacking** to starting; lit.}
- Ez da asko FALTA IZAN jausteko.** : She/he was close to falling. {There was
 not a lot **lacking** for her/him to fall; lit.}

pasa DUT / pasa NAIZ

The verb **pasa** can be conjugated with **NOR (IZAN)** and with **NORK (UKAN)** depending on its meaning. Here is an example:

- a) **Ondo pasa DUT** : I had a good time. {‘how were your holidays?’ ‘I passed it well’; lit.}
- b) **Bulegotik pasa NAIZ** : I have spent time in the office. {passed time; lit.}

In example a) the verb **pasa** responds to the question **Nola?**: How?, and it means ‘to have fun’. In example b), it responds to the question **Nondik?**: Where?, and it means ‘to pass’ or ‘to spend time’.

Finally, its useful to know that the verb ‘to pass’ is not always translated into the verb **pasa**. Here are some examples:

- AURRERATU auto hori.** : **Pass** that car.
- Gau osoa EMAN dut ikasten.** : I have **passed** the night studying.
- GAINDITU duzu ahozko azterketa?** : Did you **pass** the oral examination?
- Zer GERTATZEN da? Ezer ez.** : What’s **happening**? Nothing
- SARTU, ez geratu hor.** : **Pass**, don’t stay there
- Bi urte IRAGAN (IGARO) dira.** : Two years have **passed**

kostatzen DA / *kostatzen DU

The verb **kosta** is also the source of many mistakes. In effect, **kosta** should always be conjugated in the form **NOR (IZAN)**, but because of its similarity with **balio izan** it is frequently conjugated as **NORK (UKAN)** which is incorrect. Here is a pair of examples:

- Zenbat kostatzen DA?** : How much does it cost?
- Ez ZAIT ezer kostatzen egitea** : It doesn’t cost me anything to do it.

5.9.3.7. Gogoratu / Ahaztu - Remember / Forget

The verbs **gogoratu** (to remember) and **ahaztu** (to forget) can be conjugated in two different ways according to the intended meaning. The difference that exists between the two forms is very slight. Here are some examples:

- Ez DU ezer gogoratzen (oroitzen)** : She/he doesn’t remember anything.
- Ez DA ezerTAZ gogoratzen (oroitzen)** : She/he doesn’t remember **about** anything.

Giltza barruan ahaztu DUT	: I have forgotten the key inside. {lit.}
Giltza barruan ahaztu ZAIT	: The key has been forgotten by me inside. {lit.}

(Note: What is said in two different ways in Euskara (as in examples 3 and 4) would be said in one way in English because the difference is not meaningful for English speakers.)

5.9.3.8. Baliatu, jabetu, konturatu, aldatu, arduratu, kezkatu

In Euskara there are a series of verbs which require the use of **ZEREZ**. Here is a table of those most frequently used:

baliatu	: to be served by, to use, to utilize
jabetu	: to appropriate, to realize {fig.}
konturatu	: to realize, to notice, to perceive
aldatu	: to change, to alter, to move
arduratu	: to take responsibility, to look after, to be interested
kezkatu	: to preoccupy oneself, to be worried

Here are some examples:

Lagun batEZ BALIATU gara	: We have been served by a friend.
Nor JABETU da diruAZ?	: Who has appropriated the money?
Ez naiz ezerTAZ KONTURATU	: I haven't noticed [about] anything.
AutoZ ALDATU dut	: I have changed cars.
Nor ARDURATUKO da honeTAZ?	: Who will be responsible for this?
Zu ez KEZKATU horreTAZ	: You don't (have to) worry about that.

5.9.3.9. Behar, Beharra - Must, Should, Need to

These verbs express the concepts of *must*, *have to*, and *need to* where **beharra** is more emphatic. Here are some examples:

Etxera joan BEHAR nuen	: I had to go home.
Miren piperrak prestatu BEHAR ditu	: Miren needs to prepare the peppers.
Gizon horrek leihoa garbitu BEHARRA du	: That man must clean the window.

When used in negative clauses **beharra** indicates the notion of *needn't* but **behar** indicates *mustn't*. Here are some examples:

Ez duzu plater beroa hartu BEHAR	: You mustn't pick up the hot plate.
Ez duzue etxea garbitu BEHARRIK	: You{pl.} needn't clean the house.

The conditional indicative of **behar** indicates *should* or *ought to*. Here are some examples:

Han egon BEHAR nuke : I **should** be there.
Tabernara joan BEHAR genuke : We **ought to** go to the tavern.

5.9.3.10. Uste, pensatu - Believe, think

These two verbs are considered as synonyms but as USTE requires IZAN for defining its tenses then the following equivalences apply:

Present	uste dut	=	pensatzen ari naiz
Past	uste izan dut	=	pensatu dut
Continuous	uste izaten dut	=	pensatzen dut
Future	uste izango dut	=	pensatuko dut

5.9.3.11. Ezin - Cannot, Can't

Ezin represents the idea of *can't* and can be used in either transitive or intransitive clauses. It can be translated as *can't, couldn't, is not able to*. The verb that EZIN is governing is always put in the infinitive form and is never used with a nominalised verb. Here are some examples:

EZIN dut egin : I **can't** do it.
Nire Lagunak EZIN dira etorri : My friends **couldn't** come.
Osabak EZIN du hitz egingo : Uncle will **not be able** to talk.

When used with co-ordinated clauses the second verb may be omitted, in which case the auxiliary of UKAN is used. Here are some examples:

Han egon nahi nuke, baina EZIN dut.
 I would want to be there, but I **can't**.
Etxe hori erosi nahi nukeen, baina EZIN nuen garestiegia zelako.
 I wanted to buy that house, but I **couldn't** because it was too expensive.

5.9.3.12. Ohi - in the custom of

This construction gives emphasis to an act of habitual behaviour more than the habitual aspect of the principal verb. It can be translated by the expression *in the custom of, has the habit of*. Here are some examples:

Inaki egunero joan OHI da dendetara.
 Inaki has **the habit of** going to the shops everyday.
Amak liburu bat irakurri OHI zuen gauero.
 Mother had **the custom of** reading a book every evening.

It can be confused with the habitual aspect where the following two examples are considered equivalent:

Egunero egiten dut kirola	: Everyday I do a sport.
Egunero egin ohi dut kirola	: Everyday I am in the habit of doing a sport.

5.9.3.13. **Erazi, -arazi, -erazo, -arazo - to be made to**

This is used as a suffix added to a verb to express the sense of being made to do something. It is always transitive and when used the “causer” becomes the new subject and the original subject becomes either the pseudo-object of an intransitive verb or becomes the indirect object of a transitive verb. Here are some examples:

Ezkondu gara	: We have married.
EzkontARAZI gaituzte	: They have made us marry.
Oparia eman du	: He gave a present.
Oparia emanARAZI diogu	: We made him give a present.

This construction cannot normally be used on a verb that already has an indirect object. The same meaning can be achieved by using the verb **BEHARTU**. Here are some examples:

Jatera behartu zaitut	=	Janarazi dizut	: I made you eat.
Joatera behartu zaitut	=	Joanarazi zaitut	: I made you go.

5.9.3.14. **Iraun, irakin, ihardun/jardun - remain, boil, be occupied in**

These verbs have the characteristic of requiring an ergative subject even though semantically they are intransitive. Here are some examples:

UraK irakin du	: The water has boiled.
UmeEK joko batean dihardute	: The children are occupied in a game.
ZuhaitzaK zutik irauten du	: The tree remains standing.

5.9.3.15. **Other Verbs - iritzi/eritzi, ekin, eutsi, jarraitu, itxaron, begiratu, gustatu/laket**

To continue we will study some verbs which normally use the auxiliary verb form of **NOR-NORI-NORK**, where the item, that in English is the direct object, is in Euskara the indirect object which is then given the **NORI** declension:

1. **IRITZI/ERITZI** (to have an opinion, to judge)

The verb **IRITZI** is conjugated with **NOR-NORI-NORK**, so the subject has the case of **NORK** and the indirect object in the case of **NORI**. This verb also has synthetic forms.

Here are some examples:

- Ondo iritziko DIOLA espero dut** : I hope that it appears (seems/looks) good.
Zer DERITZOZU auto berriARI? : How **do you judge [to]** the new car?
 {What **opinion do you have about** the new car?; lit.}
- Nik honi ondo DERITZOT** : To me, this one appears to be good.
 {I **have** a good **opinion** to this; lit.}

2. **EKIN** (to begin something enthusiastically; to attack)

- LanaRI ekin DIO** : **She/he** has begun **to** work.

3. **EUTSI** (to put up with, hold up, to restrain, to contain, to sustain, to maintain)

- Gogor eutsi behar DIOZU** : You must hold it hard.

4. **JARRAITU** (to follow (up), to continue)

- Etixeraino jarraitu DIOT** : **I have** followed [to] **her/him** up to the house.

5. **ITXARON (ITXOIN)** (to wait for)

- Non itxarongo (itxoingo) DIZUT?** : Where will **I** wait for **you**?

Note that this verb is equivalent to the phrasal verb *wait for* and hence it does not require a special declension of *for you*.

6. **BEGIRATU** (to look at)

Note that the object of the act of *looking at* is declined as an indirect object, that is with a **NORI** declination, hence this verb is always declined with **NOR-NORI-NORK** auxiliaries.

- Zergatik begiratzen DIDAZU?** : Why do **you** look **at me**?
ZERI begiratzen DIOZU? : **What** did you look at?
 {**To what** did you look at?; lit.}

When the object “looked at” is not expressed, the auxiliary takes the form **NOR-NORK**:

- Kutxan begiratu DUZU?** : **Have you** looked in the box?
Hor ez DUT begiratu : **I have** not looked there.

The necessity for a full **NOR-NORI-NORK** conjugation of the auxiliary verb leads to an interesting side effect from an English speaking point of view. Sometimes the indirect object is the owner of the direct object, which at first is difficult to appreciate. Here is an example:

Mendian ehiztariek otsoei belarriak begira zizkieten.

On the mountain the hunters looked at the ears [from] (of) the wolves.

This is equivalent to:

Mendian ehiztariek otsoen belarriak ikusi zituzten.

On the mountain the hunters saw the wolves' ears.

7. **Gustatu, Laket** (to please, appeal to)

These verbs are used with the **NOR-NORI** conjugation making the subject of an English sentence into an indirect object. This is of course valid in English but a much older style than we use nowadays.

Neska hori gustatzen zaiT : That girl appeals to me.

5.9.4. Particles OTE and OMEN (EI)

These particles change the character of the whole clause in which they are used. They are placed immediately in front of the auxiliary and in negative clauses immediately after the **EZ**.

5.9.4.1. Ote - I wonder, if by any chance

OTE is equivalent to the English expressions *I wonder, if by any chance* so it appears in questions and expresses the speakers uncertainty at not knowing the answer. Here are some examples:

Non OTE dago aita

I wonder where father is?

Oraintxe zer egiten OTE du

I wonder what she/he is doing right now?

Galdetu zidaten liburua non zegoen OTE nekien.

They asked me **if by any chance** I knew where the book was.

5.9.4.2. Omen - They say, Apparently

OMEN is employed to generalize a statement by a speaker as being what someone else claims. It is placed between the principal verb and the auxiliary for periphrastic verbs and immediately before a synthetic verb. Here are some examples:

Eguraldia beroagoa izango OMEN da bihar.

Apparently the weather will be warmer tomorrow.

Laister gerra amaituko OMEN da.

The war will finish soon **they say**.

Gerra ez OMEN da inoiz amaituko.

They say the war will never finish.

Ba OMEN zoaz.

Apparently she/he is going.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. When you use the **NORK** verbs as if they used **NOR**, or vice versa. For example:

That thing does not bother **me**

***Niri HORI ez ZAIT molestutzen.**

Ni HORREK ez NAU molestutzen.

It doesn't work

***Ez DA funtzionatzen.**

Ez DU funtzionatzen.

We will finish tomorrow

***Bihar amaituko GARA.**

Bihar amaituko DUGU.

That doesn't cost anything

***Horrek ez DU ezer kostatzen.**

Hori ez DA ezer kostatzen.

2. When you use the wrong auxiliary for the meaning of the verb you wish to convey. For example:

She/he/it has accompanied **me** home***Etxeraino lagundu DIT.**

Etxeraino lagundu NAU.

They are not letting **me** go in

***Ez NAUTE sartzen uzten.**

Ez DIDATE sartzen uzten.

I don't understand **you**

***Ez DIZUT ulertzen.**

Ez ZAITUT ulertzen.

3. Another common mistake is when you add the suffix **-TU** to verbs that shouldn't have it. For example:

I will pass by at around six.

***Seiak inguruan pasaTUko naiz.**

Seiak inguruan pasako naiz.

How much has it cost you?

***Zenbat kostaTU zaizu?**

Zenbat kosta_ zaizu?

Is there much time left till you finish?***Asko faltaTZEN zaizu amaitzeko?**

Asko falta_ zaizu amaitzeko?

5.10. NOMINALISATION - *Nominalizazioa*

The process of nominalisation consists of taking a verb and converting it into a noun, hence it is called a verbal noun. In Euskara you take the infinitive, that is the root of the verb, and you add **-T(Z)E** to it. As this construction converts a verb into functioning as a noun, the equivalent in English is a gerund, that is, typically words ending in *-ing* which act as a noun. Here are some examples:

egin	: EGIN	+	-T(Z)E	=	egiTE	(the doing)
etorri	: ETOR	+	-T(Z)E	=	etorTZE	(the coming)
sentitu	: SENTI	+	-T(Z)E	=	sentiTZE	(the feeling)
jaiki	: JAIKI	+	-T(Z)E	=	jaikiTZE	(the getting up)

The system is the same one used to make the present habitual form, but the **-N** is omitted. This form, since it creates a noun, can be declined. Here is a table with some of the most usual cases:

NOR	egiteA	: the doing
NORK	egiteAK	: the doing
NORI	egiteARI	: upon doing
NOREN	egiteAREN	: the doing's
NON	egiteN	: doing
	egiteAN	: upon the doing
NORA	egiteRA	: (to go) to do
NONDIK	egiteTIK	: from the doing
NONGO	egiteKO	: to do
NORENGATIK	egiteAGATIK	: by doing
ZERTAZ	egiteAZ	: about the doing

In English there exists a series of verbs which when nominalised can form constructions with other verbs as either their subject or object. For example, the verbs *to start* and *to finish* use constructions such as *begin reading*, *begin eating*, *finish eating*, *finish reading*.

In Euskara there are also constructions of this type but there is greater differentiation than in English, so the nominalised verbs have different suffixes according to the verbs they are associated with. So, for example, the verb accompanying and preceding **hasi** always takes the suffix **-T(Z)EN**, while the verb preceding **lortu** is nominalised by the suffix **-T(Z)EA**. Here are some examples:

irakurtZEN hasi	: begin to read
jaTEN hasi	: begin to eat
zabalTZEA lortu	: be able to open (it)
egiTEA lortu	: be able to do (it)

Once the noun has been formed then it can be declined like any other noun. Here is a saying to illustrate this phenomenon:

Esatetik egitera alde handia dago.

From the saying to the doing [side] is a big (thing).

In this section we will study some of the verbs which have these sorts of constructions.

1. ZER?	:	-T(Z)EA
2. ZERTAN?	:	-T(Z)EN
3. ZERTARA?	:	-T(Z)ERA
4. ZERTARAKO?	:	-T(Z)EKO

5.10.1. ZER?: -T(Z)EA - WHAT

This form of nominalisation responds to the question **ZER?** and is used for verbal complements with verbs such as:

ahaztu	: to forget	irakatsi	: to teach
bururatu/otu	: to have an idea occur to you / to realise	jakin	: to know
debekatu	: to prohibit	kosta	: to cost
erabaki	: to decide	lagundu	: to help
gomendatu	: to recommend	lortu	: to get
gustatu	: to like	pentsatu	: to think
ikasi	: to learn	saiatu	: to try
		utzi	: to let, allow

Here are some examples:

Niri mendira JOATEA gustatzen zait.

I like **going** to the mountains. { **The going** to the mountains appeals to me; lit. }

Beste bat EGITEA pentsatu dut.

I have thought of **doing** another one.

Debekatuta dago autoak APARKATZEA hemen.

Parking (of) cars here is prohibited.

Sua ITZALTZEA ahaztu dut.

I have forgotten **to put out** the fire. { ...the putting out of the fire; lit. }

Azkenean, APROBATZEA lortu dut.

At last, I have managed **to approve** it. { ...the approving of it; lit }

As well as these verbs there also exists a typical construction made with the verbs consisting of an adjective and the verb **IZAN** that require the **-T(Z)EA** nominalisation in the accompanying verb. Here are the most usual forms:

alferrrik izan	: to be in vain	kaltegarria izan	: to be prejudicial
beharrezkoa izan	: to be necessary	komenigarria izan	: to be convenient
erraza izan	: to be easy	normala izan	: to be normal
ezinbestekoa izan	: to be essential	on(a) izan	: to be good
ezinezkoa izan	: to be impossible	txarra izan	: to be bad
hobe izan	: to be better	zaila (gaitza) izan	: to be hard
interesgorria izan	: to be interesting		

Here are some examples:

HOBE DA ezer ez esaTEA.

It is better saying nothing.

EdaTEA eta erreTZEA oso KALTEGARRIA DA osasunerako.

Smoking and drinking is very detrimental for (your) health.

BEHARREZKOA IZAN DA hori egiTEA.

Doing that has been necessary.

Gaur egun NORMALA DA gaisorik egoTEA.

Being sick these days is normal.

Hori esaTEA ERRAZA DA; egiTEA DA ZAILA.

Saying that is easy; doing it is hard {The saying of that is easy; the doing is hard; lit.}

Gauzak ondo egiTEA KOMENI DA.

Doing things well pays.

This form is also used as a complement to an adjective. Here are some examples:

Erreza da egiTEA : It is easy to do. {the doing; lit}

Zaila da igeri egiTEA : It is difficult (to) swim[ming].

JakiTEA ona da : It is good (to) knowing.

This form is also used as the object of **nahi ukan**. Here are some examples:

Zer nahi duzu? : What do you want?

Etxera joaTEA nahi dut : I want (to) go home.

Kotxea erosTEA nahi zuen : She/he wanted (to) buy a car.

-T(Z)ERIK

On some occasions, in negative clauses, the form **-T(Z)EA** takes the partitive. Here are some examples:

Ez dut ikusTERIK (ikusTEA) lortu : I have not been able **to see** it.

Ez zait egiTERIK (egiTEA) bururatu : It hasn't occurred to me **to do** it.

This form only uses **UKAN** and **EDUKI**, and **EGON** in the 3rd person. Here are some examples:

Klasean ez dago futbolean jolasterik : No playing football in class.

Klasean ez daukagu alkohola edaterik : We don't have drinking alcohol in class.

Klasean ez duzu jolasterik : You don't play games in class.

5.10.2. ZERTAN?: -T(Z)EN - IN DOING WHAT?

This form of nominalisation is used for verbal complements to express an ongoing activity with such verbs as:

amaitu	: to finish
ahaztu	: to forget about
ari izan	: to be (doing something)
aspertu	: to get bored of
egon	: to be (somewhere)
eman	: to give
etorri	: to come
hasi	: to begin
ibili	: to go (doing something)
ihardun	: to be doing something
ikasi	: to learn
irakatsi	: to teach
jakin	: to know (how to do something)
joan	: to go (to do/doing something)
lagundu	: to help
nekatu	: to get tired of
ohitu	: to get used to
saiatu	: to try (to do something)
segitu	: to keep on (doing something)
utzi	: to stop

Here are some examples:

Euskara ikasTEN HASI naiz	: I have begun to learn Euskara.
Alboka joTZEN IKASI dut	: I have learnt (how) to play the alboka {a Basque reed instrument; expl.}
Hori egiTEN LAGUNDUKO dizut	: I will help you (to) do that.
Ez didate sarTZEN UZTEN	: They didn't allow me to enter .
Saxoa joTZEN ahaztu zait	: I have forgotten (how) to play the saxo- phone.
Telebista ikusTEN ARI da	: She/he is watching the television.
Nik ez DAKIT txistua joTZEN	: I don't know (how) to play the txistu {a Basque wind instrument; expl.}
Hori egiTEN NEKATUTA nago	: I am tired (of) doing that.
Honela egiTEN OHITUTA nago	: I am used to doing it like this.
Gauzak konpontZEN DOAZ	: They are fixing the things. { They are going about repairing things; lit.}
Haurrari jaTEN EMAN behar diot	: I must give the child (something) to eat .

The verbs **lagundu** and **ohitu** can be used just as much with **-T(Z)EN** as with **-T(Z)ERA**.

Compound Verbs: igeriAN

Compound verbs are those formed with a noun and a verb. These verbs present nominalisation forms which differ from those we have studied so far in this section, since **ZER-TAN** does not apply to the verb but to the noun. Here are some common uses of this verb:

hitz egin	-	HIZKETAN	berba egin-	BERBETAN
lo egin	-	LOTAN	lan egin-	LANEAN
igeri egin	-	IGERIAN	amets egin-	AMETSETAN
dantza egin	-	DANTZAN		

As well as these forms there are other similar forms which are used in constructions of the type “to play”. Here are the most commonly used:

musean	: a card game
tutean	: a card game
kartetan	: cards
futbolean	: football
pilotan	: pilota {a court game; expl.}
briskan	: a card game
partxisean	: ludo
tenisean	: tennis

These forms are found by adding the **NON** declension to the corresponding word:

Kartetan	: Karta	+ -ETAN (<i>plur.</i>)
Musean	: Mus	+ -(e)AN (<i>sing.</i>)

Here are some examples:

HIZKETAN hasi zen	: She/he had started to speak .
LOTAN dago	: She/he is sleeping/asleep .
IGERIAN ikasi behar dut	: I must learn (how) to swim .
MUSEAN ikasi nahi dut	: I want to learn (how to play) mus. { a type of card game; expl. }
KARTETAN ari dira	: They are playing cards . { They are busy in cards ; lit. }
Ez dakizu TUTEAN, ala?	: Don't you know (how) to play tute , or what? {tute is a type of card game; expl. }

5.10.3. ZERTARA?: -T(Z)ERA - TO WHAT (OUTCOME)?

This form is constructed from the verbal noun ending **-T(Z)E** and the Allative case ending **-RA**. It is a nominalisation used in response to the question **ZERTARA?** (To what?) and is used on the accompanying verbs with some suggestion of motion, such as:

atera	: bring, come out	etorri	: come to
ausartu	: dare to	gonbidatu	: invite to
berhartu	: oblige to	heldu	: arrive to/come to
bidali	: send	joan	: go to
ekarri	: bring	sartu	: enter
eraman	: take		

Here are some examples:

EgiTERA BEHARTU naute	: They have compelled me to do it.
AfaITZERA GONBIDATU naute	: They have invited me to dinner.
Ez naiz egiTERA AUSARTZEN	: I don't dare [to] do it.
Ogia erosTERA JOAN da	: She/he has gone to buy bread.
Dirua eskaintZERA HELDU da	: She/he has come to offer me money.

In some places the verbs studied in this section are used with **-T(Z)EN**.

5.10.4. ZERTARAKO?: -T(Z)EKO - FOR WHAT (PURPOSE)?

This type of nominalisation responds to the question **ZERTARAKO** (for what?) and is made by adding **-KO** to the verbal noun. Here is a list of the most common verbs that require this form in the verbal noun:

asmoa izan	: to have the intention of	joera izan	: to have the tendency to
astia izan	: to have time for	lotsa izan	: to have shame of (to be ashamed of)
aukera izan	: to have the opportunity of	ohitura izan	: to have as a custom of/habit
beldurra izan	: to be afraid of	ordua izan	: to be the hour of
gogoa izan	: to want to		
prest egon	: to be inclined to/to be ready		

-T(Z)EKO can be used on just a verb, or accompanied by a noun. In the second case the two words form an indivisible unit for both negative and positive clauses. Here are some examples:

Berriro egiTEKO ASMOA daukat	: I mean to do it again . { I have the idea to do it again; lit}
ErreTZEKO OHITURA daukat	: I have a habit of smoking.
HasTEKO ORDUA da	: It is time to start .
Ez daukat ezer egiTEKO ASTIrik	: I don't have time for doing anything.
Edozer egiTEKO PREST dago	: She/he is inclined/ready to do anything.
Ez daukat afalTZEKO GOGOrik	: I don't want to dine . { I don't have any wish to dine ; lit. }
GaltZEKO ARRISKUa daukagu	: We have the risk of getting lost .

This construction is also used to express indirect commands or requests. Here are some examples:

Esan Jon joaTEKO	: Tell Jon to come.
Eskatu Mireni korrika egiTEKO	: Ask [to] Miren to run.

5.10.5. VERBS THAT DON'T ACCEPT NOMINALIZATIONS

A small number of verbs cannot be converted into a nominalised form but rather are used with the infinitive form of the verb. These are **AHAL**, **EZIN**, **BEHAR** and **NAHI**. Here are some examples:

Hori EZIN duzu egin	: You can't do that.
Autobusa gidatu NAHI dut	: I want to drive a bus.
Komunera joan BEHAR dut	: I need to go to the toilet.
Harri haundia jaso AHAL duzu	: You can lift that large stone.

5.10.6. PROBLEM CASES

The meaning of some verbs varies according to the form used, and this can easily create errors. Here are the most usual cases:

1. *Ahaztu - to forget*

The verb **ahaztu** (to forget) can be accompanied with **-T(Z)EN** just as much as with **-T(Z)EA**, but it gives it a different meaning:

- a) **Integralak egiTEN ahaztu zait** : I have forgotten to do the integers {lit.} (I have forgotten **how** to do integers. Before I knew how, but not anymore; I have forgotten how they are done).
- b) **Integralak egiTEA ahaztu zait** : I have forgotten to do the integers. {I have forgotten the doing (of) the integers; lit.}(I had to do some integers and I have forgotten to do them, but I still know how to do them.)

Here is another example:

- a) **Lesakara joaTEN ahaztu zait.** : I have forgotten (how) to go to Lesaka.
- b) **Lesakara joaTEA ahaztu zait.** : I have forgotten to go to Lesaka.

2. *Joan / etorri - to go / to come*

These two verbs can be accompanied with **-T(Z)EN** and **-T(Z)ERA**, and they also have different meanings accordingly:

- a) **IrakurTZERA etorri naiz** : I have come to read.
- IrakurTZEN etorri naiz** : I have come reading.
- b) **KantaTZERA joan da** : She/he has gone to sing.
- KantaTZEN joan da** : She/he has gone singing.

3. *Erraza / zaila izan - to be easy / to be difficult*

These two verbs can be accompanied with **-T(Z)EN** and **-T(Z)EA**, but this results in a slight difference of meaning:

- a) **Hori egiTEA zaila da** : To do that is hard. {The doing (of) that is hard; lit.}
- Hori esaTEA erraza da** : It is easy to say that. {The saying (of) that is easy; lit.}
- b) **Zaila da hori egiTEN** : That is hard to do (generally).
- Hori esaTEN erraza da** : That is easy to say (generally).

5.10.7. NOMINALISATION AND RELATIVE CLAUSES

In constructing a sentence the locational relationships of nominalised verbs and relative clauses have to be given special attention. Essentially the nominalisation cannot be the subject of a relative clause construction. Here is an explanatory example:

Jendeak gezurrak esateak hasseretzen nau

The telling of lies by people angers me.

This is an unusual construction in English although the grammar is correct. We might translate this expression more colloquially with:

People telling lies make me angry.

A closer rendering of this sentence can be made in euskara but it produces a very poor repetitive structure and would not be acceptable.

***Jendeak gezurrak esaten dituzten esateak haserretzen nau.**

Using the normal process of nominalisation with removal of the auxiliary verb gives the form originally presented above.

SUMMARY - LABURPENA

Here is a table with the nominalisations and the verbs they accompany that we have studied in this section. It's not intended that you should commit it to memory, but it is more for confirmation when in doubt. It is useful for learning (slowly) what form each verb uses.

-T(Z)EA	-T(Z)EN	-T(Z)ERA	-T(Z)EKO
<i>Adjetiboa + IZAN</i>	aditu		agindu
aduratu	adoretu	aspertu	astia izan
ahal egin	amaitu	asmoa izan	aukera izan
ahalegindu	ari izan	animatu	balio
ahaztu	aspertu	atera	beldurra izan
ahaztu	aurkitu	ausartu	eman
alferrik izan	egon	behartu	gai izan
aritu	eman	bidali	gauza izan
behar	entzun	bortxatu	gertu egon
beharrezkoa izan	etorri	bota	gogoa izan
bulzatu	geratu	bultzatu	joera izan
bukatu	gogaitu	ekarri	kapaz izan
bururatu	harrapatu	eraman	lotsa izan
debekatu	hasi	etorri	ohitura izan
egon	hatzeman	esan	ordua izan
erabaki	ibili	eskertu	prest egon

erraza izan	ihardun	gonbidatu
eskertu	ihartu	heldu
espero	ikasi	iritzi
etorri	ikusi	irten
ezinezkoa izan	ipini	joan
gomendatu	irakatsi	kondenatu
gustatu	iraun	nekatu
hobe izan	jakin	ohitu
ihasi	jarraitu	sartu
inporta	jarri	zigortu
interesatu	joan	
irakatsi	lagundu	
jakin	nekatu	
kaltegarria izan	ohitu	
komenigarria izan	saiatu	
komeni izan	segitu	
kostatu	utzi	
lagundu		
loru		
merezi izan		
nahi izan		
nahiago		
normala izan		
ona izan		
onartu		
opa izan		
otu		
pentsatu		
proposatu		
saiatu		
tokatu		
txarra izan		
utzi		
zaila/gaitza izan		
-T(Z)EAK	-T(Z)ERIK	-T(Z)EARI
transitive verbs only		
eduki	egon(3rd per)	utzi
ukan	eduki	ekin
konpondu	ukan	iritzi
essan nahi		deitu
mindu		eman(give time)
heldurtu		
harritu		
eman		

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. A mistake that is frequently made is when **-T(Z)ERA** is used instead of **-T(Z)EN**. Here are some examples:

Begin to study	*IkasTERA hasi. IkasTEN hasi.
I have begun to write	*IdazTERA hasi naiz. IdazTEN hasi naiz.
I have learnt how to programme	*ProgramaTZERA ikasi dut. ProgramaTZEN ikasi dut.
She/he has taught me (how) to use it	*ErabilTZERA irakatsi dit. ErabilTZEN irakatsi dit.

2. Another mistake that people make is to use the participle instead of the nominalisation form. For example:

I like going (to go) to the mountain	*Mendira JOAN gustatzen zait. Mendira joaTEA gustatzen zait.
I have decided to buy it	*EROSI erabaki dut. ErosTEA erabaki dut.
I have managed to do it	*EGIN lortu dut. EgiTEA lortu dut.

3. A third mistake is made when the normal use of the verb **hasi** and its construction is confused with **-T(Z)EN**. Here are some examples:

I have begun to study	*IkasTEN hasi DUT. IkasTEN hasi NAIZ.
She/he has begun to work	*LanEAN hasi DU. LanEAN hasi DA.
I have started another book	*Beste liburu bat hasi NAIZ. Beste liburu bat hasi DUT.

4. In Euskara the word **gogoa** is used in the singular. So, it is incorrect to use this form in a plural way. Here are some examples:

I want to begin (I have the want/desire to begin)	*Hasteko gogoAK dauzkat. Hasteko gogoA daukat.
I want to be with him (I have the want/desires to be with him)	*Berarekin egoteko gogoAK dauzkat. Berarekin egoteko gogoA daukat.

5. Another mistake occurs when the order of the following types of expressions is changed: **-t(z)eko gogoa**, **-t(z)eko ordua**. It is important to note that whether it is negative or positive, the order of the clause is kept:

I don't want to go (I don't have the want/***Ez daukat GOGORIK joaTEKO.**
 desire to go) **Ez daukat joaTEKO GOGORIK.**

It still isn't time to start ***Oraindik ez da ORDUA hasTEKO.**
Oraindik ez da hasTEKO
ORDUA.

I haven't got any intention of doing it***Ez daukat ASMORIK egiTEKO.**
Ez daukat egiTEKO ASMORIK.

VI

SYNTAX

- *Sintaxis*

6.1. THE SIMPLE CLAUSE - *Perpaus Bakuna*

Simple clauses are those which have one verb. We can distinguish four different types of simple clauses:

1. Interrogative
2. Affirmative
3. Negative
4. Exclamatory

6.1.1. INTERROGATIVES - *Galdezkoak*

In Euskara there are two types of interrogative clauses:

1. *Partial*
2. *General*

1. Partial

These are the clauses which ask for specific information. They are characterized by the question mark (?). For example:

NOR da hori?	: Who is that (one)?
NON dago Aitor?	: Where is Aitor?
NORK ez du nahi?	: Who doesn't want (it)?
NORK ez du irakurri?	: Who hasn't read (it)?

The inquired element, or the interrogative, is placed immediately in front of the verb. As shown in these examples, in the case of the negative interrogatives, the interrogative pronoun is placed in front of the negative particle **EZ**.

2. General

These are the clauses in which the truth or falseness of something is questioned. A response to these types of interrogatives is usually yes or a no. Here are some examples:

Ikusi dituzu nire zapatak?	: Have you seen my shoes?
Badakizu euskaraz?	: Do you know (how to speak) Euskara?
Etxera joango zara?	: Will you go home?
Ez zara enteratu?	: Haven't you found out?
Ez dituzu ekarri, ala?	: Have you not brought them, or what?

In some places the interrogatives are made by adding the particle **AL**, in order to reinforce the question. For example:

Etorriko AL zara?	: Will you come?
Ikusi AL duzu Mikel?	: Have you seen Mikel?

6.1.2. AFFIRMATIVES - *Baiezkoak*

Affirmative clauses usually place the predicate in front of the verb. This is different to English which puts it after. For example:

Josu	egongelan	dago.
Josu	in the lounge room	is.

This is the habitual construction in Euskara, but the word order varies depending on which element you wish to re-enforce. Here are some examples:

Gu Gernikan bizi gara	: We live in Gernika.
Bihar mendira joango naiz	: Tomorrow I will go to the mountain.
Amaia komunean dago	: Amaia is in the toilet.

6.1.3. NEGATIVES - *Ezezkoak*

The negative in Euskara is characterized by the presence of the particle **EZ**. For example:

Koldo EZ dago etxean	: Koldo is not at home.
Nik EZ daukat dirurik	: I don't have any money.
Irakaslea EZ da etorri	: The teacher hasn't come.
Nik EZ dut ezer esan	: I haven't said anything.

As shown, with the synthetic verb, the particle **EZ** is put in front of the verb, and the predicate after.

<i>Affirmative</i>	-	Josu jezarrita dago	: Josu is sitting.
<i>Negative</i>	-	Josu EZ dago jezarrita	: Josu isn't sitting.

When dealing with periphrastic verbs, the particle **EZ** is placed in front of the auxiliary, and the principal verb goes behind it. The complements can then be placed in different places, according to the case. For example:

<i>Affirmative</i>	-	Jon etorri da	: Jon has come.
<i>Negative</i>	-	Jon EZ da etorri	: Jon hasn't come.

Any number of words can be placed between the auxiliary and the principal verb, for example:

Jon EZ da ikastolera etorri : Jon hasn't come to school.
Jon EZ da gaur egun ikastolera etorri : Jon hasn't come to school today.

6.1.4. EXCLAMATIONS - *Harridurazkoak*

There are many types of exclamatory phrases in Euskara, so here we only present the most common ones.

6.1.4.1. HAU da HAU! - USING DEMONSTRATIVES

These types of phrases are made with the demonstratives **HAU**, **HORI**, **HURA**. Here are some idiomatic expressions:

HAU da HAU!	: This sure is!
HAU alukeria!	: What a pain in the arse!
HAU hotza!	: It's cold! { This cold!; lit.}
HAU beroa!	: It's hot! { This heat!; lit.}
HAU zoritxarra!	: What a disgrace! { This bad luck!; lit.}
HORI zortea!	: What luck! { That luck!; lit.}
HORI da ona HORI!	: That (sure) is good, that!
HURA zen gizona HURA!	: That (person) sure was a man! { That one was a man, that ; lit.}
HORIXE baietz!	: Of course!
HORIXE ezetz!	: Of course not!

Sometimes these expressions are used together with a relative clause. Here are some examples:

HORI alukeria egin didazuNA!	: You have frequently played tricks on me!
HURA mozkorra harrapatu nueNA!	: I have often gotten drunk!
HORI kolpea hartu dueNA!	: He/she has often hurt him/herself.

6.1.4.2. BAI...-LA!

This type of exclamatory remark is made by placing **BAI** before the adjective or adverb to which it belongs. It can also be followed by **-LA** attached to an auxiliary verb. The effect is to give emphasis to the exclamation in the same way 'sure' is used in English. For example:

BAI ederra!	: How beautiful!
BAI polita!	: How pretty!
BAI etxe polita!	: What a lovely house!
BAI itsusia deLA!	: She/he/it (sure) is ugly!
HORI BAI deLA!	: That (sure) is!
HAU BAI txarra!	: This (sure) is bad!
HAUEK BAI itsusiak direLA!	: These (sure) are ugly!
HAU BAI zaila deLA!	: This (sure) is difficult!

6.1.4.3. ZEIN...-N!

These interrogatives are made with **ZEIN**, followed by the suffix **-N** when there is an auxiliary verb present. This construction is only possible with adjectives and adverbs. Here are some examples:

ZEIN itsusia deN!	: What an ugly (person)!
ZEIN ergelak direN!	: How stupid they are!
ZEIN polita!	: How beautiful!
ZEIN handia deN!	: How big it is!
ZEIN ondo nagoen!	: How good I am!
ZEIN gustura geratu naizen!	: What joy it has given me! { What joy I stay with; lit.}

A variant of this construction is presented in these examples:

ZEINEN zuria deN elurra!	: (Look) how white the snow is!
ZEINEN ederrak direN!	: How beautiful they are!

6.1.4.4. A ZER NOLAKO...-N! (ZELAKO...-N!) - WHAT A...!

This is similar to the previous construction, but its difference lies in that it is used with nouns. It is an expression of surprise or admiration. This construction also has an **-N** attached to the auxiliary verb. Here are some colloquial expressions:

A ZER NOLAKO kolpea!	: Small hit!
ZELAKO kolpea hartu duEN!	: What a hit she/he has given {taken lit.} (her/himself)!
A ZER NOLAKO etxe polita!	: What a beautiful house!
ZELAKO txiste txarra!	: What a bad joke!

A ZER NOLAKO hanka politak!	: What beautiful legs!
A ZER NOLAKO zortea daukaN!	: She/he has little luck!
ZELAKO aurpegia daukazuN!	: What a face you have!
A ZER NOLAKO kortea, txo!	: Short cut, boy!

6.1.4.5. ZE... -N! - HOW! WHAT!

Sometimes, because of the influence of Spanish, instead of the more regular forms being used, the form of **ZE** (an abbreviation of **ZER**) is used. Here are some examples:

ZE txikia deN!	: How small he is!
ZE putada!	: What a pain in the arse!

There are also other forms of **ZE**. For example:

ZE arraio gertatzen zaizu?	: What the hell is happening to you? {colloq.}
ZE demontre!	: What the hell! {colloq.}

6.1.4.6. ZENBAT ...-N! - HOW MUCH, HOW LITTLE, HOW MANY

Another way to create exclamatory clauses which express the idea of abundance is to use the interrogative **ZENBAT**. Here are some examples:

ZENBAT diru!	: How much money!
ZENBAT dakizuN!	: (See) how much you know!
ZENBAT jende etorri deN!	: (Look at) how many people have come!

To express the opposite idea the expression **Zein gutxi!**: *How little/few!* is used.

ZEIN gutxi egin duzunN!	: How little you have done!
ZEIN jende gutxi etorri deN!	: How few people have come!

6.1.4.7. Handia da GERO! - ... Be careful

Another sort of exclamatory phrase is made by using the particle **GERO**. Here are some examples:

Zu ere, izatekoa bazara GERO, e!	: You also, be careful what you are, eh!
Handia da GERO!	: Be careful , it's big!
Tontoa zara GERO!	: Be careful , (because) you're stupid! / Be careful you don't be stupid!
Itsusia da GERO!	: Be careful , it's/he's ugly!
Gogorrek dira horiek GERO!	: Be careful , (because) those ones are hard!
Alferra da GERO!	: Be careful , she/he/it's vague/ lazy!

6.1.4.8. AlferrA HALAKOA! - SIMILAR, LIKE THAT, THAT KIND OF THING

This is formed by adding **HALAKO** to the adjective. It is similar to the expression *similar/like that/that kind of thing* in English. Note that both the adjective and **HALAKO** have articles. Here are some examples:

AlferrA HALAKOA!	: Lazy, that kind of thing .
AstakiloA HALAKOA!	: Stupid, like that .
LotsagabeAK HALAKOAK!	: Shameless, like that!
HarroputzAK HALAKOAK!	: Boasters, that kind of thing!

6.1.4.9. BAIETZ! / EZETZ!

Another way to make exclamatory phrases is to use the expressions **baietz**. There is no direct translation so the best colloquial translation is *That I will/I bet I will / you will and ezetz, That I won't...* followed by the verbal participle. Here are some examples:

EZETZ irabazi! BAIETZ!	: I bet you won't win!! (I bet) I will!
BAIETZ asmatu! EZETZ!	: I bet I will guess it! (No) you won't!
BAIETZ zu baino lehenago heldu!	: I bet I will arrive earlier than you!
EZETZ hau egin! Ezetz?	: I bet you won't do this! I won't?
EZETZ igerri nor etorri den!	: I bet you won't guess who has come!

As you can see, in these examples it is sufficient to put the verbal participle after **BAIETZ/EZETZ** for all persons:

BAIETZ irabazi!	: So what do I win!
	: So what does she/he win!
	: So what do we win!
	: So what do you {pl.} win!

6.1.4.10. ESKERRAK ...-N - Just as well / thank goodness

This expression is similar to *just as well/thank goodness* in English. Here are some examples:

ESKERRAK etorri zareN!	: Just as well that you came!
ESKERRAK esan didazuN!	: Thank goodness you told me!
ESKERRAK EZ deN konturatu!	: Just as well that she/he didn't realize!
ESKERRAK EZ gaitueN ikusi!	: Thank goodness she/he didn't see us!
ESKERRAK joan deN; bestela...!	: Just as well she/he went; if not...!
Ez zaio ezer gertatu. ESKERRAK !	: Nothing has happened to her/him. Thank goodness!

In some places, instead of the suffix **-N**, the suffixes **-NA**, **-LA**, and **-NARI** are used. Here are a couple of examples:

ESKERRAK ondo dagoeNA! : Thank goodness she/he is o.k!
ESKERRAK ondo dagoeNARI! : Just as well she/he is o.k.!

6.1.4.11. Interjections

We now present a series of words and expressions frequently used in exclamatory phrases. Some of them don't have an exact equivalent in English, so the translation uses colloquial expressions. Here are some examples:

Oi!	hey!	Oi, zein polita!	: Oh, how beautiful! (<i>exclamation of pain/surprise</i>)
Ai!	ouch!	Ai! Min ematen didazu!	: Ouch! You're hurting me! (<i>pain or desire</i>)
Ene!	my, my!	Ene!, zer da hau?	: So, what's this then? (<i>surprise, pain</i>)
Ai, ene! Epa!	Poor me! ah!	Epa! Ez zaitut ikusi!	: Excuse me, I didn't see you!
Tira!	hey!	Tira, ze erremedio!	: Hey, what option is left for me!
Beno!	good!	Beno, ez dago hain txarto!	: Well, it's not that bad!
Arren!	please!	Ez jo, arren!	: Don't hit me, please! (<i>petition</i>)
Otoi!	please!	Otoi, barkatu!	: Please, forgive me! (<i>request, prayer</i>)
Utikan! Beharko!	go away!	Utikan! Etorriko zara? Beharko!	: Leave me in peace! : You will come? What a relief!
Eskerrak!	thank	Ondo dago. Eskerrak!	: She/he/it is good / well/ fine. Thank goodness!
Arraioa!	hell!	Arraioa! Zer da hau?	: Good heavens! What is this?
Arrano pola! Kaka zaharra!	gosh!	Arrano pola! Kaka zaharra!	: Goodness gracious! : Old shit!
Txo!	boy!	Zelako kortea, txo!	: Short cut, boy!
Aizu!	Hey you!	Aizu!, zer ordu da?	: Hey!, what is the time?
Aizue!	Hey you!	Aizue, itxaron!	: Hey you {pl.}, wait (for me)!

Alabaina!	Of course!	agian bai!	: I wish, I hope '
Hara!	look!	Hara bestea!	: Look at the other one!
et, et, et!	Be careful	Bai zera!	: I doubt it, no way!
Begira!	look!	Begira, hortxe dago!	: Look, she/he/it is right there!
Beitu!	look!	Beitu!, hobe duzu joatea	: Look! It's better you go.
Hanka!	get out!	Jakina	: Of course!
Kontuz!	Be careful!		

Some interjections are used as a greeting. For example:

Eup!	Eup! Zer moduz?	: Hello! How are you?
Aupa!	Aupa! Zer moduz?	: Hello! How are you?
Kaixo!	Kaixo! Zer moduz?	: Hello! How are you?
Agur!	Agur, bihar arte!	: Goodbye, until tomorrow!
Adio!	Adio eta bihar arte!	: Goodbye and see you tomorrow!

TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK

1. A mistake which is often made is to forget to put the **-N** on the end of the exclamatory phrase. Here are some examples of this incorrect usage:

How hard it is!

***Zein gogorra DA!**

Zein gogorra dEN!

What a house you've got!

***Zelako etxea DAUKAZU!**

Zelako etxea daukazuN!

How sweet it is!

***Zein gozo DAGO!**

Zein gozo dagoEN!

You know so much!

***Zenbat DAKIZU!**

Zenbat dakizuN!

6.2. WORD ORDER - *Hitz Ordena*

In Euskara, words are not put in the same order as in English. Here is an example:

Jon	etxera	joan da.
Jon	home[to]	has gone.

It is evident that in English it is not usual to say **Jon home has gone*. In Euskara it is common for the verb to go at the end, after the complement. But also it is possible to have more than one order as the following sequences show:

- a) **Jon etxera joan da.**
- b) **Etxera joan da Jon.**
- c) **Etxera Jon joan da.**
- d) **Jon joan da etxera.**

But, these phrases are not identical; they have distinct meanings. Here is another example:

- a) **Hau Jon da** : This is Jon.
- b) **Jon hau da** : This is Jon.

These two examples have different meanings. Each of them responds to a different question, and places emphasis on different parts of the phrase. This is how you respond in English to these questions:

- a) **NOR da hau?** : Who is this? (one) = **Hau JON da** : This is Jon.
- b) **NOR da Jon?** : Who is Jon? = **Jon hau da** : This is Jon.

As shown, in English both questions are answered in the same way, but the meaning is different. In Euskara, however it is not the same:

- a) **NOR da hau?** : **Hau JON da.** (This is Jon, not Michael)
- b) **NOR da Jon?** : **Jon HAU da.** (Jon is this one, not that one)

The distinction between the two forms is defined by the requirement that:

The most important element of the clause goes immediately before the verb.

This is known as the *inquired element* or **GALDEGAIA**. The rest of the elements are quite *free*, and can be placed in front of as well as behind the verb nucleus formed by the inquired element and the verb, and the order is stable for:

- a) *Interrogative clauses*
- b) *Affirmative clauses*
- c) *Negative clauses*

6.2.1. INTERROGATIVE - *Galdezkoak*

As we have studied in the previous section, there are two types of interrogatives: the *partial* and the *general*. (see 6.1.1.)

6.2.1.1. PARTIAL INTERROGATIVES

The order of a partial interrogative is very simple. The most important thing about an interrogative clause is the interrogative pronoun. It is sufficient to place the interrogative pronoun followed by the verb or particle **EZ** in the negative interrogatives. The rest of the elements can go anywhere, either in front or behind, according to the case. Here are some examples:

NOR da mutil altu hori?	: Who is that tall boy?
NON dago Miren?	: Where is Miren?
NORA joango da Jon bihar?	: Where will Jon go to tomorrow?
Neska hori NONGOA da?	: Where is that girl from ?
NORK ez daki hori?	: Who doesn't know that?
ZERGATIK ez zara etorri?	: Why haven't you come?
NORENAK dira zapata hauek?	: Whose are these shoes?

6.2.1.2. GENERAL INTERROGATIVES

These are made in exactly the same way as affirmatives, so, the most important element in the clause is placed in front of the verb. The only peculiarity is when the inquired element is the proper affirmation, then the verb is placed in front, and if it is a synthetic verb it has the particle **BA-**. For example:

GAUR joango zara?	: Will you go today ?
JOANGO ZARA gaur?	: Will you go today? (yes or no?)
ETORRIKO ZARA bihar?	: Will you come tomorrow?
IKUSI DUZU Amaia?	: Have you seen Amaia?
BADAKIZU nor etorri den?	: Do you know who has come?
BADAUKAZU boligrafarik?	: Do you have a pen?
EZ nauzu ezagutzen, ala?	: Don't you know me, or what?
EZ duzu ezer entzun?	: Haven't you heard anything?

6.2.2. AFFIRMATIVE - *Baiezkoak*

In affirmative clauses there are three possibilities, according to the inquired element:

1. *An element of the clause (except the verb)*
2. *The proper affirmation*
3. *The verb*

6.2.2.1. THE INQUIRED ELEMENT - *Galdegaia*

The inquired element is placed in front of the verb. The rest of the elements can go in front or behind. So, there are many possible constructions, and each responds to a different question. For example:

NORA joango da Jon bihar? (To) <i>where</i> will Jon go tomorrow?	-	Jon bihar MENDIRA joango da. Jon will go to the <i>mountain</i> tomorrow.
NOR joango da bihar mendira? <i>Who</i> will go to the mountain tomorrow?	-	Bihar JON joango da mendira. Tomorrow <i>Jon</i> will go to the mountain.
NOIZ joango da Jon mendira? <i>When</i> will Jon go to the mountain?	-	Jon BIHAR joango da mendira. Jon will go to the mountain <i>tomorrow</i> .

If in doubt, it is easy to know which is the inquired element. You just ask the corresponding question, and the interrogative pronoun will tell which element you are requesting. You can also omit all of the elements of the clause except for the inquired element. For example:

NON dago Mikel?	-	KOMUNEAN
NOR dago komunean?	-	MIKEL
NORA joan da Mikel?	-	KOMUNERA

6.2.2.2. THE PROPER AFFIRMATION

Sometimes we cannot pick any element from the clause, so we must enforce the affirmation, that is, say yes, it is true. There are two cases:

- a) *Synthetic verbs*
- b) *Periphrastic verbs*

a) *Synthetic verbs*

In the case of a synthetic verb it is enough to add the particle **BA-** to the front of the verb which creates the type of affirmation achieved by the use of *already* in English. For example:

Badakizu nor den? Do you [already] know who it is?	BAI, BAdakit nor den. Yes, I [already] know who it is.
--	---

In the previous example, the inquired element is the proper affirmation, and it is enough to respond with **BAI** to the question. So, there are three possible responses:

Badakizu nor den?	BAI: Yes.
BAI, BAdakit	: Yes, I [already] know.
BAI, BAdakit nor den	: Yes, I [already] know who it is.

Here are some more examples:

Badago ogirik?

BAI, Badago (ogia): Yes, (there) [already] is (bread).

Badaukazu dirurik?

BAI, Badaukat: Yes, I [already] have (it).

This is not necessarily the only way the particle **BA-** is used. It can be used in any situation. For example:

Hori Badakit

: I [already] know that.

Kafea Badauka; esnea falta da

: He [already] has coffee; the milk is missing.

Gu Bagaude hemen

: We are [already] here.

Kotxea Badabil, baina txarto

: The car [already] goes, but badly.

b) *Periphrastic verbs*

With periphrastic verbs no changes need to be made, as the response is formed in the same way as any affirmative clause. It is enough to say **BAI** and it can be placed in front or behind any accompanying clause. For example:

Etorriko zara, bai ala ez?

Will you come, yes or no?

BAI, joango naiz.

Yes, I will go.

Ekarri duzu autoa?

Have you brought the car?

BAI, ekarri dut autoa.

Yes, I have brought the car.

Erosi duzu egunkaria?

Have you bought the newspaper?

Erosi dut, BAI.

I have bought it, yes

Ikusi duzue partidua?

Have you [pl.] seen the match?

Ikusi dugu, BAI.

We have seen it, yes

6.2.2.3. *THE VERB - Aditza*

When the inquired element is the proper verb, in Euskara the verb **EGIN** (to do) is used. Let's suppose, for example, that we find ourselves with a friend who has just played a game (match), and we ask **ZER EGIN duzue?**: *What have you done? / How did you go?* Normally he would respond by saying:

a) **IRABAZI EGIN dugu**

: We have won.

b) **GALDU EGIN dugu**

: We have lost.

In this example the inquired element is **IRABAZI / GALDU**; and so, in this case you can simply reply:

a) **ZER EGIN duzue?**

IRABAZI

: Win.

b) **ZER EGIN duzue?**

GALDU

: Lost.

Here are some other examples:

Non dago Jon?

Where is Jon?

Non dago Jon?

Where is Jon?

Non dago ispilua?

Where is the mirror?

Non dago ispilua?

Where is the mirror?

JOAN EGIN da.

He **has gone**.

ETXERA joan da.

He has gone [to] **home**.

APURTU EGIN da.

It is **broken**.

UMEAK apurtu du.

The child has broken it.

Kontuz ibili, JAUSI EGINGO zara eta.

Go carefully, because you **will fall**.

Azkenean LORTU EGIN dugu.

Finally we have **got it**.

Ez dut erosi; ALOKATU EGIN dut.

I haven't bought it; I **rented it**.

As shown in the previous examples, **EGIN** is inserted between the principal verb and the auxiliary and it is made transitive or intransitive depending on the principal verb. On the other hand, **EGIN** undergoes all of the changes for future tense, and is the invariable verb:

Umea **JAUSI egin da**

: The child has **fallen**.

Umea **JAUSI egiTEN da**

: The child **normally falls** (down).

Umea **JAUSI eginGO da**

: The child **will fall** (down).

6.2.3. NEGATIVES - *Negitiboak*

In the case of negative clauses the verb is rarely if ever placed at the end of a sentence. Generally, there are three possible constructions, that is, with the same elements it is possible to make three clauses with three different meanings. This concept is shown in this example:

a) **Irakaslea, EZ DA ETORRI.**

b) **IRAKASLEA ez da etorri.**

c) **EZ da IRAKASLEA etorri.**

These three examples contain the same elements, but they are placed in different orders, and therefore have different meanings. We will analyse each of them one by one.

a) Irakaslea, EZ DA ETORRI

In this example we have written a comma to indicate that in the pronunciation of this sentence there is a pause, but a comma is not normally written in such a sentence. This type of sentence can be distinguished from b) through the context. This construction responds to the question:

ETORRI DA irakaslea?
Has the teacher come?

EZ, irakaslea EZ DA ETORRI.
No, the teacher has not come.

It is evident that in this case the inquired element is the particle **EZ**, but a negation has no meaning unless it refers to something, so in the negative clauses we must distinguish two types of inquired elements:

- | | |
|------------------|----------|
| 1. the principal | (EZ) |
| 2. the secondary | (ETORRI) |

In this case, **irakaslea** is a known element which is of little importance, so it is hardly necessary, and can go before or after the verb.

Irakaslea EZ DA ETORRI = EZ DA ETORRI irakaslea.

Here is a template and some examples:

EZ + *auxiliary* + *verb*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Pelikula hori EZ DUT IKUSI | : I have not seen that movie. |
| Bihar EZ NAIZ ETORRIKO | : Tomorrow I will not come . |
| Txikia EZ DUT NAHI | : I don't want the small (one). |
| Ogirik EZ DAUKAT | : I don't have any bread. |
| EZ DUGU EGINGO oraingoz | : We won't do it for now. |
| Erlojua EZ DABIL | : The watch isn't going . |
| Gu EZ GARA ENTERATU | : We haven't found out . |

b) IRAKASLEA ez da etorri

In this example there is no comma because there is no pause when the sentence is spoken. This is what makes this example different from the previous one. Here the emphasised element is **IRAKASLEA**, responding to the question:

NOR ez da etorri?
Who hasn't come?

IRAKASLEA ez da etorri.
The teacher hasn't come.

In this example the principal inquired element (**galdegaia**) is **IRAKASLEA** and the secondary is **EZ**; from there we get the order of:

GALDEGAIA + **EZ** + *auxiliary* + *verb*

Here are some examples:

NORK ez daki?	: Who doesn't know it?
JONEK ez daki.	: Jon doesn't know it.
NORI ez zaio gustatzen?	: Who doesn't she/he like?
HONI ez zaio gustatzen.	: This (is the person) she/he doesn't like.
NOR ez da etorriko?	: Who will not come?
AMAIA ez da etorriko.	: Amaia won't come.
ZERGATIK ez doa?	: Why is she/he not going?
HORREGATIK ez doa.	: That's why {from that; lit.} she/he isn't going.
NORK ez du egin?	: Who hasn't done it?
JOSUK ez du egin.	: Josu hasn't done it.

c) **EZ da IRAKASLEA etorri**

Of the three constructions, this is the most frequently used and it means: *it isn't the teacher who came, but another person.*

In this case, the principal inquired element is **EZ**, and the secondary **IRAKASLEA**. The first is placed in front of the auxiliary, and the second in front of the principal verb. Here is a template:

1. EZ + *auxiliary* + **2. GALDEGAIA** + *verb*

When using synthetic verbs the conjugated verb carries all the information of the auxiliary, so it is placed after **EZ**.

Here are some other examples:

EZ naiz EUSKALTEGIRA joango	: I will not go to the euskaltegi.
Gaur EZ naiz BERAREKIN egon	: Today I have not been with him .
Bihar EZ dut MIREN ikusiko	: Tomorrow I will not see Miren .
EZ DAUKAT gogorik	: I don't want to. {I don't have any thought to; lit.}

EZ DAGO eskubiderik!	: (There) is no right (to do that)!
Autoa EZ dit JONEK ekarri	: Jon didn't bring [to] me the car.
Anari EZ diot HORI esango	: I will not say that to Ana.

To end this discussion here are a couple of examples comparing the three possible constructions:

Jon, EZ DA ETORRI	: Jon, hasn't come. {He's done something else; expl.}
JON ez da etorri	: Jon {is the one who; expl.} hasn't come.
EZ da JON etorri	: Jon hasn't come. {it was not Jon who came but someone else; expl.}
Gaur, EZ DUT IKUSI	: Today, I haven't seen him/her.
GAUR ez dut ikusi	: Today {is the day that; expl} I haven't seen him/her.
EZ dut GAUR ikusi	: I haven't seen him/her today {but I have on another day; expl}.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. A mistake which is easy to make is to place a word between the interrogative pronoun and the verb. For example:

Why is she/he/it bad?	*Zergatik TXARTO dago? Zergatik DAGO txarto?
-----------------------	---

2. Another mistake is to use the synthetic verbs without the particle **BA-**. For example:

Do you have any money?	*Daukazu dirurik? BADAUKAZU dirurik?
Do you (already) know that?	*Dakizu hori? BADAKIZU hori?
Is there (already) any coffee?	*Dago kaferik? BADAGO kaferik?
Do you (already) have time?	*Daukazu astirik? BA DAUKAZU astirik?

3. Another mistake that is made is to respond to a determined question with an answer that is for another question. For example:

NOR da hori?	*Mikel hori da.	(Michael is that one)
	Hori MIKEL da.	(That is Michael)
NOR da Eibarkoa?	*Amaia eibarkoa da.	(Amaia, she's from Eibar)
	AMAIA da Eibarkoa.	(Amaia is from Eibar)
NOR bizi da Bilbon?	*Jon bilbon bizi da.	(Jon, he lives in Bilbao)
	Bilbon JON bizi da.	Jon lives in Bilbao)

C. Negatives

1. **Josuk, EZ du EGIN**
2. **JOSUK ez du egin**
3. **EZ du JOSUK egin**

: Josu, he **hasn't done** it.

: **Josu** {is the one that; expl.} hasn't done it

: **Josu hasn't** done it {another has; expl.}

6.3. COORDINATION - *Koordinazioa*

The simple clauses that we have previously studied can be combined to create compound clauses, and there are two types of these clauses:

1. COORDINATED CLAUSES
2. SUBORDINATED CLAUSES

In this section we will look at the first group, that is, the COORDINATED CLAUSES. In these clauses we can distinguish five classes of clause:

1. *Conjunction*
2. *Adverse*
3. *Disjunctive*
4. *Distributive*
5. *Elative*

6.3.1. CONJUNCTION - *Elkarritzak*

These conjunctions have the function of directly linking two clauses.

6.3.1.1. ETA - AND

Aita sukaldean dago ETA ama tabernara joan da.

Father is in the kitchen, **and** mother has gone to the tavern.

Nik lapurtu egiten ditut ETA honek saldu egiten ditu.

I steal them **and** this person sells them.

Oso onak dira ETA nahiko merke saltzen dituzte.

They are very good, **and** they sell them very cheap {cheaply enough; lit.}

ETA can also express a sequence in time when used at the end of a clause immediately following a verb, meaning *and then*. Here are some examples:

Miren etxera joan ETA oheratu zen.

Miren went home **and then** went to bed.

Aulkia konponduko ETA telebista ikusiko dut.

I will fix the chair **and then** watch television.

ETA is often pronounced **TA** or **DA** but in writing **ETA** should always be used except when used with number.

6.3.1.2. *ERE, ERE BA, ERE EZ - ALSO, EITHER, AS WELL*

ERE means also and is placed immediately after the item it refers to. If it is used in the context of a synthetic verb then the verb is preceded with **BA**. If agreement is being made with a negative expression then **ERE EZ** is used.

Ni hondartzara noa, eta Josu ERE badator.

I am going to the beach, and Josu is **also** coming.

Ama ez da enteratu, eta aitak ERE EZ daki.

Mother hasn't found out, and father doesn't know **either**.

Jon etxera joan da, eta ni ERE laster joango naiz.

Jon has gone home, and I will go soon **as well**.

6.3.1.3. *BAITA...ERE - AND...ALSO/SO, EVEN*

Niri asko gustatzen zait, BAITA Mireni ERE.

I like it a lot, **and so** does Miren.

Denak joango dira, BAITA lehendakaria bera ERE.

Everyone will go, **and also** the actual president.

Hori BAITA tontoenak ERE badaki.

Even the (most) stupid knows that.

6.3.1.4. *EZTA...ERE - NOT...ALSO, EVEN, NEITHER*

Niri ez didate ezer esan, EZTA etxekoei ERE.

They haven't said anything to me, and **neither** to (those) at home. {the ones of home; lit.}

Hori inork ere ez daki, EZTA irakasleak berak ERE.

No-one knows that, **not even** the actual teacher.

Ez dut egingo, EZTA zuk ERE.

I will **not** do it, and you (won't) **either**.

6.3.2. *ADVERSE - Aurkariak*

These conjunctions have the function of contrasting two clauses.

6.3.2.1. *BAINA - BUT*

This is the most frequently used conjunction and is the same as *but* in English. Observe that clauses which use **BAINA** are separated by a comma. Here are some examples:

Asko gustatzen zait, BAINA garestiegia da.

I like it a lot, **but** it is too expensive.

Berarekin egon naiz, BAINA ez dit ezer esan nahi izan.

I have been with her/him, **but** she/he doesn't want to tell me anything.

Ez dakit zelan, BAINA moldatuko naiz.

I don't know how, **but** I will fix it up.

When used at the end of a clause it means *though*. Here is an example:

Hori ikusi dut, ez dut ulertzen BAINA.

That's what I see, **though** I don't understand it.

6.3.2.2. *ORDEA, OSTERA, ALDIZ, BERRIZ - ON THE OTHER HAND, HOWEVER*

These forms are practically the same. A general rule is to place **BERRIZ** and **ALDIZ** behind the first element of the second clause, on the other hand **ORDEA** and **OSTERA** are placed at the end of the second clause. Notice that both clauses are separated by a semicolon, and the conjunction is between commas. Here are some examples:

Hau sano polita da; beste hori, ORDEA, ez zait gustatzen.

This (one) is very beautiful; that other (one), **on the other hand**, I don't like it.

Hori merkeagoa da; beste hau, OSTERA, hobeto eginda dago.

That (one) is cheaper; this other (one), **on the other hand**, is made better.

Hori oso polita da; beste hau, BERRIZ, itsusi-itsusia.

That (one) is very beautiful; this other (one), **on the other hand** is [extremely] ugly.

Honek indabak eskatu ditu; nik, ALDIZ, nahiago dut zopa.

This (one) has asked for beans; I, **however**, prefer soup.

Etxeko guztiek erretzen dute; nik ez, ORDEA.

Everyone at home smokes; **however**, I don't.

6.3.2.3. *BAIZIK, BAIZIK ETA - RATHER, BUT, IF NOT*

This particle is the same as the expression *rather, if not, but* in English. The difference is that this term is usually placed at the end of the second clause and the verb is not repeated. Here are some examples:

Ez gara mendira joan, hondartzara BAIZIK.

We didn't go to the mountain, **rather** to the beach.

Auto hori hori ez da nirea, aitarena BAIZIK.

That yellow car is not mine, **but** my father's.

Ez da niretzat, opari bat egiteko BAIZIK.

It isn't for me, **rather** (it's) to make a present.

Ez dit horrek esan, beste hark BAIZIK.

That (person) didn't tell me, **rather** that other (person).

A variant of this is the use of the **BAIZIK ETA** to string together very long sentences, for example:

Denok ez duzue azterketa egingo, BAIZIK ETA papa den ikasitako azterketa gainditu gabe daukazuenok.

All of you don't do the exercise, **BUT RATHER** take the (lesson) paper without completing (the ones) you already have.

6.3.2.4. HALA ERE - EVEN SO

This is approximately the same as *even so* in English, and is positioned between clauses. Note that this form is preceded by a semicolon, and followed by a comma. Here are some examples:

Nobela hori oso ona da; HALA ERE, ez zait gehiegi gustatu.

This novel is very good; **even so**, I haven't liked it too much.

Ez daukat gogorik; HALA ERE, joango naiz.

I don't really want (to); **even so**, I will go.

Ez dut uste dakienik; HALA ERE, galdetuko diot.

I don't think that she/he will know; **even so**, I will ask her/him.

6.3.2.5. HALA ETA GUZTIZ ERE - IN SPITE OF ALL..., EVEN SO

This is a similar structure to the previous one. It is similar to the expression *in spite of it all...*, *even so* in English. It is placed between clauses, and is preceded by a semicolon and followed by a comma. Here are some examples:

Itsusi samarra da; baina, HALA ETA GUZTIZ ERE, atsegin dut.

She/he/it is a little ugly; but, **in spite of** (that), I like her/him/it.

Merkea da, bai; HALA ETA GUZTIZ ERE, ez dut erosiko.

It (surely) is cheap; **even so**, I will not buy it.

Pelikula zaharra da; HALA ETA GUZTIZ ERE, merezi du ikustea.

It is an old movie; **even so**, it is worth while seeing.

6.3.2.6. DENA DELA (DENA DEN) - ANYWAY, AS IT IS, EVEN SO

This is the same as the expression *as it is*, *even so*, *anyway* in English. It is placed between both clauses, and is preceded by a semicolon and followed by a comma. Here are some examples:

Oso zaila da; DENA DELA, saiatu egin behar dugu.

It is very hard; **even so**, we must try it.

Oso txarra da; DENA DEN, interesatzen bazaizu, ekarriko dizut.

She/he/it is very bad; **even so**, if it interests you, I will bring it/her/him for you.

Niri ere ez zait askorik gustatzen; DENA DELA, eginda dago.

I don't like it much either; **as it is**, it has been done. {it is a done (thing); lit.}

DENA DELA, badakizu nire telefono-zenbakia.

Anyway, you (already) know my telephone number.

6.3.2.7. **BARIK - INSTEAD OF, IN PLACE OF**

This is similar to *instead of*, *in the place of* in English, and is placed after the element it refers to, and is followed by a comma. Here are some examples:

Amarekin BARIK, aitarekin hitz egin dut.

Instead of (with) mother, I have talked with father.

Azukrea BARIK, gatza bota diot.

Instead of sugar, I have put in salt.

Konpondu BARIK, ere gehiago hondatu du.

Instead of fixing (it), she/he has broken it even more.

Etorri BARIK, joan egin da.

Instead of coming, she/he has (definitely) gone.

Trenez joan BARIK, hegazkinez joango gara.

Instead of going by train, we will go by plane.

6.3.3. **DISJUNCTIVE - Hautakariak**

The common disjunctives are **EDO** and **ALA**. Both correspond to the English conjunction "or", but they are not totally equivalent:

ALA : Only used in interrogative clauses, and expresses an excluding disjunction.

EDO : Can be used in all of the cases, and is not excluding.

6.3.3.1. **EDO - OR (NON-EXCLUDING)**

Mikel EDO Begona ikusten badituzu, abisatu.

If you see Michael **or** Begonia, tell me.

Erosi EDO, bestala, eskatu laguneri bati.

Buy it **or** otherwise ask it (of) [to] a friend.

Joan zinetokira EDO deitu laguneri bati berarekin egoteko.

Go to the cinema **or** call a friend to be with him/her.

6.3.3.2. EDO...EDO - EITHER ... OR

The repetition of **EDO** expresses the concept of *either ... or*. Here are some examples:

EDO sartu EDO irten, baina ez gelditu hor erdian.

Either come in **or** go out, but don't (just) stay there in the middle.

EDO gaur EDO bihar hori egingo dugu.

We will do that **either** today **or** tomorrow.

Sometimes the second ending of the disjunction is omitted. Here are some examples:

Noiz etorriko da? Bihar EDO.

: When will she/he come? Tomorrow **or**.
{something like that; impl.}

Zenbat zarete? Zazpi EDO

: How many are you? Seven **or** (so).

Nola joango zara? Autoz EDO

: How are you going to go? By car **or**
{something like that; impl.}

6.3.3.3. ALA - OR (EXCLUDING)

Zein nahiago duzu, hau ALA bestea? Berdin dit.

Which do you prefer {which will you want; lit.}, this **or** the other (one)?
(Whichever it's the same to me.)

Ez dakit zer egin, etxean geratu ALA mendira joan zurekin.

I don't know what to do, (if I should) remain at home **or** go to the mountain
with you.

Hil ALA biziko kontua da guretzat

For us it is a question of life **or** death {it is a count of death or life; lit.}.

Nahi duzu kafe apur bat ALA gurago duzu kopa bat?

Do you want a little coffee, **or** do you prefer a (whole) cup?

Sometimes the second ending is omitted. Here are some examples:

Ez zara etorriko, ALA?

: Are you not going to come, **or** (what)?

Hemen geratuko zara, ALA?

: Are you going to stay here, **or** (what)?

Ez zaizu gustatzen, ALA?

: Don't you like it, **or** (what)?

6.3.4. DISTRIBUTIVE - *Distributiboak*

6.3.4.1. BAI...BAI... - AS WELL AS... , BOTH ... AND

BAI nik, BAI zuek oso ondo dakigu zer egin behar den.

You know as well as I do what must be done {As I, as you, we know...; lit.}

BAI dendetan, BAI botiketan saltzen dute hori.

That is sold in the shops as well as in the pharmacies. {That they sell...; lit.}

BAI eskolan, BAI kanpoan euskaraz hitz egin behar da.

Euskara must be spoken both in school and outside (of school).

6.3.4.2. EZ...EZ... - NEITHER... NOR...

EZ Jonek, EZ nik ez dugu ezer esan.

Neither Jon, nor I have said anything.

Nik ez dut EZ telefonoz deitu, EZ anonimorik bidali.

I have neither called on the telephone, nor sent any (thing) anonymously.

Ez daukat EZ dirurik, EZ astirik, EZ gogorik.

I've got neither money, nor free time, nor enthusiasm {want; lit.}

6.3.4.3. HALA...NOLA... - BOTH... AS WELL AS...

HALA zureak NOLA nireak horko kutxa horretan daude.

Both yours as well as mine are in that box from (over) there.

HALA bigarren mailakoak NOLA euren gurasoak bihar etorriko dira.

Both (those) from the second level as well as their parents will come tomorrow.

HALA jantokia NOLA sukaldea garbi daude.

Both the dining room as well as the kitchen are clean.

6.3.4.4. BATA...BESTEA... - THE ONE... THE OTHER

Bi anaia dira: BATA oso altua da; BESTEA, ordea txiki-txikia.

They are two brothers: (the) one is very tall; the other, (on) the other hand, extremely small.

BATAK ez dakielako, eta BESTEAK nahi ez duelako; egin gabe dago.

One because she/he doesn't know, and the other because she/he doesn't want to; it [still] hasn't been done {it is without done; lit.}

Alde BATEAN irakasleak zeuden, eta BESTEAN gainerako guztiak.

On one side were the teachers, and on the other all of the others.

6.3.4.5. (ALDE) BATETIK...BESTETIK... - ON ONE SIDE... FROM THE OTHER...

This is one of the many variations of the construction we have just studied. Usually we would say in English *on the one hand* but in these examples it has been translated more literally as *from the one side*. Here are some examples:

ALDE BATETIK ezin dut, eta BESTETIK ez dut nahi.

From one side I can't, and **from the other** I don't want to

ALDE BATETIK ez dut joan nahi, baina BESTETIK pena ematen dit.

From one side I don't want to go, but **from the other** it makes me sad. {gives me pain; lit.}

(ALDE) BATETIK gustatzen zait, baina BESTETIK beldur naiz.

From one (side) it pleases me, but **from the other** I am afraid,

There is a frequently used variation to these examples, that is **BESTALDE**, which comes from **BESTE ALDE BATETIK**. Here is an example:

ALDE BATETIK gustura nago, baina BESTALDE nekatuta nago.

From one side I am happy, but **from the other** I am tired.

6.3.5. ELATIVE - *Ilatiboak*

The elative consists of terms whose purpose is to intensify an expression.

6.3.5.1. BERAZ (HORTAZ) - SO

This form is approximately equal to the expression *so, therefore* in English. It is placed between clauses, preceded by a semicolon and followed by a comma. Here are some examples:

Zu ez zinen hartan egon; BERAZ, isilik egon.

You weren't right there; **so**, be quiet.

Itxita dago; HORTAZ, itxaron egin beharko duzu.

It is shut; **so** you will have to wait.

Ez daukagu dirurik; BERAZ, ezin dugu erosi.

We don't have any money; **so** we can't buy it.

6.3.5.2. ORDUAN - SO

This is equivalent to the expression *so* in English, and is always written with a comma after it. Here are some examples:

Ez nekien zer egin; ORDUAN, hona etortzea bururatu zitzaidan.

I didn't know what to do; **so**, it occurred to me to come [to] here.

ORDUAN, zertarako nahi dugu dirua?

So, what do we want the money for?

Zerrikume bat zela esan zion; ORDUAN, pistola atera eta...

She/he told him/her that she/he was a piglet; so, she/he took out the gun, and...

6.3.5.3. HORREGATIK - THAT IS WHY, FOR THAT

This is the same as the expression *that is why* or *for that* or *that's the reason* in English. It is placed between two clauses, and is preceded by a semicolon. Here are some examples:

Ez nekien zer egin; HORREGATIK deitu dizut.

I didn't know what to do; **that is why** I called you.

Oso berandu egin zitzaidan; HORREGATIK ez nintzen etorri.

It was very late for me; **that is why** I didn't come.

Bazenekiela uste nuen; HORREGATIK ez dizut ezer esan.

I thought that you (already) knew; **that is why** I didn't say anything to you.

Eskerrik asko. Ez HORREGATIK.

Thank you. No trouble at all {not for that; lit.}

TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK

1. When **ORDUAN** is used in the place of **BERAZ**. For example:

It isn't yours, so, you cannot sell it.

***Ez da zurea; orduan, ezin duzu saldu.**

Ez da zurea; BERAZ, ezin duzu saldu.

You don't know anything, so shut up.

***Zuk ez dakizu ezer; orduan, isilik egon.**

Zuk ez dakizu ezer; BERAZ, isilik egon.

6.4. SUBORDINATION - *Menperakuntza*

As we saw in the last section, there are two types of compound clauses: COORDINATE and SUBORDINATE. The latter type is divided into:

1. *Completive*
2. *Indirect interrogative*
3. *Final*
4. *Causal*
5. *Conditional*
6. *Relative*
7. *Temporal*
8. *Concessive*
9. *Modal*
10. *Comparative*

Commonly subordinate clauses take one of the markers **ba-**, **bait-**, **-(e)la** and **-(e)n**, which is either prefixed or suffixed to the conjugated verb (auxiliary or synthetic) of the subordinate clause.

You will find detailed discussion on the use of these markers in the appropriate sections. The markers **-(e)n** and **-(e)la** can have further case suffixes attached to them to create more variety of meaning. These are:

- | | | |
|------------------|---|--|
| -(e)lako | - | to express <i>because</i> |
| -(e)larik | - | to express the circumstance meaning of <i>while</i> and <i>when</i> |
| -(e)nean | - | to express <i>when</i> |
| -(e)nez | - | to express <i>as</i> |
| -(e)nik | - | as a replacement for -(e)la in the subordinate clauses when the main clause is negative |

6.4.1. COMPLETIVE CLAUSE- *Konpletiboko Perpausak*

In this section we are going to study the functions of completive clauses and their relation to the principal clause. Completive clauses, like the rest of the subordinates, are inserted into the principal clause.

6.4.1.1. **-LA / -NIK - THAT**

Completive clauses can be in two forms, depending on whether the principal clause is affirmative or negative. The two clause markers are:

- | | | |
|--------------------|---|-------------|
| <i>Affirmative</i> | : | -LA |
| <i>Negative</i> | : | -NIK |

Here are some examples:

Etxean dagoeLA uste dut	: I think that she/he is at home.
Ez dut uste etxean dagoeNIK	: I don't think that she/he is at home.
Etorriko deLA esan du	: She/he has said that she/he will come.
Ez du esan etorriko deNIK	: She/he hasn't said that she/he will come
Pentsatu du bihar igandea deLA	: She/he thinks that tomorrow is Sunday.
Ez pentsa hain erraza deNIK	: Don't think that it is so easy.
Ezagutzen duduLA uste dut	: I think that I know him/her/it.
Ez dut uste ezagutzen duduNIK	: I don't think that I know him/her.

It is common to use the negative form incorrectly. To avoid mistakes it pays to memorize the following clauses, as they are the most commonly used clauses:

EZ DUT USTE	...-NIK	(I don't think that...)
EZ DUT ESAN	...-NIK	(I haven't said that...)
EZ PENTSA	...-NIK	(Don't think that...)
EZ DIRUDI	...-NIK	(It doesn't seem that...)

You should also be careful not to confuse the principal and subordinate clauses, as it is the principal which indicates whether to use **-LA** or **-NIK**. Whether the subordinate is negative or positive has no affect at all on the correct marker to select. For example:

Uste dut EZ dagoeLA etxean	: I think that she/he is not at home.
Ez deLA joango esan du	: She/he has said that she/he will not go.

In these two examples the subordinate clause is negative, but the principal is affirmative; this is why we used **-LA**. When in doubt you know it is a subordinate clause if the clause can be substituted with **ZERBAIT**: *something*. For example:

EZ DELA JOANGO esan du	: She/he has said that she/he will not go.
ZERBAIT esan du	: She/he has said something .

As shown in the above examples, you sometimes use **-LA** / **-NIK** and other times **-eLA** / **eNIK**, depending on the verb. Here is a table of the different forms as they relate to auxiliary verb endings:

	-GU	: duguLA, daukaguLA, dakiguLA...
	-ZU	: duzuLA, daukazuLA, dakizuLA...
-LA	-E	: duzueLA, zaudeLA, dituzteLA...
	-A	: daukaLA, daramaLA, doaLA...
	-O	: zaiolaLA, dizkiolaLA...

	-U	: duELA, dituELA, gaituELA...
	-I	: dakiELA, dirudiELA...
-ELA	-GO	: dagoELA, nagoELA...
	-KE	: daitekeELA, dezakeELA, lukeELA...
	-cons.	: naizELA, datorrELA, dabilELA...
-DALA	-T	: duDALA, zaiDALA, dakiDALA...

In the past tense the assignment is simple. The only option is to substitute the final **-N** with **-LA**. For example:

nintzeN	-	nintzeLA
nueN	-	nueLA
zidaN	-	zidaLA
zegoenN	-	zegoelaLA
zeturteN	-	zeturteLA

The use of **-LA** in negative clauses is possible, but it changes the meaning. Study this example:

Ez du esan etxean dagoELA	: She/he didn't say that she/he is at home. (She/he is at home, but she/he didn't say so)
Ez du esan etxean dagoENIK	: She/he didn't say that she/he is at home. (She/he didn't say whether or not she was at home.)

It should be noted that this is not a common construction, as the form **-NIK** is usually used with all negative principal clauses.

6.4.1.2. -NA

The use of **-LA/-NIK** is valid for all completive clauses, but with certain expressions **-NA** is used in the place of **-LA**. Here are some of the more well used forms:

BADAKIT

BADAKIT txarto dagoENA	: I (already) know that it is bad.
BADAKIT zurea dENA	: I (already) know that it is yours.
BADAKIZU ezin duDANA	: You (already) know that I can't.

HORIXE

HORIXE joango naizENA!	: Of course I'll go!
HORIXE etorriko dENA!	: Naturally she/he will come!
HORIXE nirea dENA!	: It is mine, naturally!

ZIUR

ZIUR datorrena!	: Sure she/he is coming! {sarcasm; expl.}
ZIUR etxean dagoENA!	: Sure she/he is at home!
ZIUR ezer ez dakiENA!	: Sure she/he doesn't know anything!

ARGI DAGO / BISTAN DA

ARGI DAGO txarto dagoENA	: It is evident that she/he/it is bad.
ARGI DAGO ezin duENA	: It is clear that she/he can't.
BISTAN DA txikia dENA	: It is evident that she/he/it is small.
BISTAN DA bertokoa ez dENA	: It's obvious that she/he is not from here.

6.4.1.3. -T(Z)EKO

What we have seen up until now is used in simple affirmative or negative sentences. However other constructions are used for other sentence types. Here is an example of an illustrative conversation:

A: Jon	: Bihar mendira joango naiz. (Tomorrow I will go to the mountain.)
B: Mother	: Joan ohera. (Go to bed.)

If someone were to ask us what Jon and his mother said, we would answer in the following way:

A:

ZER esan du Jonek?

What has Jon said?

Jon ek bihar mendira joango deLA esan du.Jon has said **that** he will go to the mountain tomorrow.

B:

ZER esan du amak?

What has mother said?

Amak ohera joaTEKO esan du.

Mother has said to go to bed.

In example B we used the form: **-T(Z)EKO**. The reason for this is that it is an imperative sentence, as *mother* doesn't affirm or negate anything, but rather gives an order. Here are some more examples:

Josuk atea ixTEKO esan du	: Josu has said {to you; impl.} to shut the door.
Amak joaTEKO esan du	: Mother has said {to you; impl.} to go.
Atea zabalTZEKO esan dit	: She/he has told me to open the door.
Ez joaTEKO esan dit	: She/he has told me not to go.
Jon ek ogi erosTEKO esan du	: Jon said {for you; impl.} to buy bread.
Ez hurbilTZEKO esan digute	: They have told us not to come closer.
Denak sarTZEKO esan dute	: They have told everyone to go in.

As shown by these examples, the verb form is the same for all persons. It is the context which clarifies who it is about. For example:

Amak joaTEKO esan du	: Mother has said that (for me to) go.
	: Mother has said that (for you to) go.
	: Mother has said that (for us to) go.
	: Mother has said that (for you {pl.} to) go.
	: Mother has said that (for her/him to) go.
	: Mother has said that (for them to) go.

6.4.1.4. BAIETZ / EZETZ

In Euskara to say *so*, *not*, *yes*, *no* the forms **BAIETZ / EZETZ** can be used to add a little emphasis. Here are some examples:

BAIETZ uste dut	: I think so .
EZETZ uste dut	: I think not .
Jonek BAIETZ esan du	: Jon has said so .
EZETZ esan dute	: They have said no .
Zer diozu, BAIETZ ala EZETZ?	: What are you saying to him/her, yes or no ?
Nik BAIETZ ulertu diot	: I understand him/her to (say/mean) yes .

SUMMARY - LABURPENA

Here are some examples with the completive structures studied in this section:

1. Affirmative

-LA Ondo dagoeLA esan du : She/he has said **that** she/he is good.

2. Negative

-NIK Ez dut uste egia deNIK : I don't think **that** it is the truth.

3. Imperative

-T(Z)EKO EtorTZEKO esan didate : They have told me **to** come.

4. Other cases

BAIETZ	BAIETZ uste dut	: I think so .
EZETZ	EZETZ esan dute	: They have said no .
-NA	BADAKIT zaila deNA	: I (already) know that it is difficult.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. An easy mistake to make is to use negatives as if they were positives. Here are some examples of this incorrect usage:

I don't think that she/he will come	*Ez dut uste etorriko deLA. Ez dut uste etorriko deNIK.
Don't think that I am stupid	*Ez pentsa tontoa naizeLA. Ez pentsa tontoa naizeNIK.
I didn't say that it is bad	*Ez dut esan txarto dagoeLA. Ez dut esan txarto dagoeNIK.

2. Another easily made mistake is to use the form **-LA** in the place of **-ELA**. Here are some examples:

She/he has said that she/he is bad	*Txarto dagoLA esan du. Txarto dagoELA esan du.
I think that she/he doesn't know anything	*Uste dut ez dakiLA ezer. Uste dut ez dakiELA ezer.
She/he said that you can go in	*Sar zaitezkeLA esan du. Sar zaitezkeELA esan du.

6.4.2. INDIRECT INTERROGATIVE CLAUSE - *Zehar Galderako Per-pausa*

The indirect interrogative clauses are those in which an interrogative is implied. Here is an example:

a) Amaia	:	Ama etxean dago?	(Is mother at home?)
b) Jon	:	Bai, etxean dago.	(Yes, she is at home.)

Let's suppose that we are asked what was just said by Amaia and Jon. In this case we would respond:

- a)
Amaiak ama etxean dagoEN galdetu du.
Amaia has asked (if) mother is at home.
- b)
Jonek ama etxean dagoELA erantzun dio.
Jon answered **that** mother is at home.

As shown, in example b) we repeated what was said by Jon, and added **-LA**, which is the same construction presented in the previous section. But in example a), instead of **-LA** we used **-N**. This is because the repeated clause is a question, not an affirmation or negation.

There are two types of questions:

1. *Partial*: Those in which determined information is asked for. These questions are characterized by an interrogative pronoun (**NORENA da hau?**).
2. *General*: Those whose response is a YES or a NO (**Hau zurea da?**)

In English, according to the type of question, the indirect interrogatives are formed in a different way. Let's suppose that we are asked a question to which we do not know the answer:

Where is Jon?	-	I don't know where he is .
Will he come tomorrow?	-	I don't know IF he will come tomorrow .

As shown in these examples, we repeated the questions in the answers, with the only difference being that we changed the emphasis, so because of this we no longer need the question mark. Apart from this, in the second example we introduced *if* as the question is a general interrogative.

In Euskara the procedure is very similar, the difference being that both cases are constructed in the same way: an **-N** is added to the verb:

Nor dago Jon?	-	Ez dakit non dagoen.
Bihar etorriko da?	-	Ez dakit bihar etorriko deN.

Here are some more examples:

Nor da hori?		Ez dakit nor deN.
Who is this?		I don't know who it is.
Nora joan dira?		Ez dakigu nora joan direN.
[To] where have they gone?		We don't know [to] where they have gone.
Non dago?		Ez dut gogoratzen non dagoen.
Where is she/he/it?		I don't remember where she/he/it is.
Zergatik haserretu da?		Ez dakit zergatik haserretu deN.
Why did she/he get angry?		I don't know why she/he got angry.
Noiz etorriko zara?		Auskalo noiz etorriko naizen.
When will you come?		No-one knows when I will come.
Egingo duzue?		Ez dakigu egingo duguN (ALA EZ).
Will you do it?		We don't know (if) we will do it (or not).
Etxean daukazu?		Ez dakit daukadaN (ALA EZ).
Do you have it at home?		I don't know (if) I have it (or not).

As shown in these examples, sometimes an **-N** is added, and sometimes an **-EN** is added. To know when you should use which form, you can take a look at the table provided for

completive forms (6.4.1.1.), as the usage is exactly the same. In the cases that **-LA** is used, **-N** is substituted and when **-ELA** is used, **-EN** is substituted. The past tense remains unchanged. Here are some examples:

Ez du esan nor etorriko deN	: She/he hasn't said (as to) who will come.
Batek daki non dagoen	: Anyone knows (as to) where she/he/it is.
Batek daki bizirik dagoen	: Anyone knows (if) she/he/it is alive.
Batek daki nor zeN	: Anyone knows (as to) who it was.
Galdetu (EA) zer ordu deN	: Ask (as to) what time it is.
Galdetu (EA) zenbat deN	: Ask (as to) how many it is.
Ez du esan etorriko deN (ALA EZ)	: She/he hasn't said if she/he will come (or not).

From these examples, there are two distinct ways to create indirect interrogatives, one for the partial interrogatives, and another for general interrogatives.

1. (EA)... -N : **Galdetu (EA) nor deN.**
Ask (see) who it is.
2. -N (ALA EZ) : **Ez dakit dagoen (ALA EZ).**
I don't know if she/he is (there) (or not).

Sometimes, there is confusion between completive and indirect interrogatives, but they have different meanings. For example:

- a) **Etorriko deLA esateko deitu du** : She/he called to say **that** she/he will come.
- b) **Etorriko deN esateko deitu du** : She/he called to say **if** she/he would come.

In example a) we know what the person said, but in example b) we only know that the person called - not what they said. In b) we can also say **Etorriko deN ALA EZ esateko deitu du**: *She/he has called to say whether or not she/he will come*, which is not possible in example a). But the most important thing is to notice that an affirmation underlies a) (**etorriko dela.**), but a question underlies b) (**etorriko den?**).

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. To make indirect interrogatives without adding the **-N**. Here are some examples:

I don't know who it is	*Ez dakit nor DA. Ez dakit nor DEN.
She/he doesn't know who I am	*Ez daki nor NAIZ ni. Ez daki nor NAIZEN ni.
I don't know where she/he is	*Ez dakit non DAGO. Ez dakit non DAGOEN.

2. Another mistake is to use **-BA** for “if”. Here are some examples:

I don't know if she/he will come	*Ez dakit etorriko BADA. Ez dakit etorriko DEN.
She/he doesn't know if I will go	*Ez daki joango BANAIZ. Ez daki joango NAIZEN.
Ask him/her if she/he will go	*Galdetu EA joango BADA. Galdetu EA joango DEN.

6.4.3. DESTINATIVE CLAUSES - *Helburuzko Perpausak*

Final clauses are those that indicate intention or completion. In English these clauses do not carry a special marker but are usually created using the infinitive form of the verb with *to*. To master this construction you need to develop an understanding of when you are expressing the intention or outcome of an action, as distinct from the cause of an action or the circumstances preceding the action which is expressed by **ZERGATIK**. In this section we explore the more common final clauses.

1. ZERTARA?	:-T(Z)ERA
2. ZERTARAKO?	:-T(Z)EKO
3. :-ARREN	
4. :-T(Z)EKOTAN	

6.4.3.1. **ZERTARA? -T(Z)ERA - FOR WHAT INTENTION, TO GO TO DO SOMETHING**

This type of final clause is made by adding **-T(Z)ERA** to the root of the verb. It is a response to the question **ZERTARA?** which is commonly used with verbs of motion, for example **joan, etorri**:

ZERTARA zoz? What are you going (to do)?	Kafe bat HARTZERA noa. I am going to drink a coffee. { to take ; lit.}
--	--

Here are some examples:

Buelta bat emaTERA noa	: I am going to (give) a turn around {a walk; expl.}
Pote bat harTZERA joan da	: She/he has gone to take a pot.
Zoaz ogia erosTERA	: [You] go [to] buy bread.
Etxera joan da ikasTERA	: She/he has gone [to] home to study.
Telefonoz deiTZERA joan da	: She/he has gone to call by telephone.
Erosketak egiTERA joan dira	: They have gone to do the shopping.
Igeri egiTERA goaz	: We are going to swim.

6.4.3.2. ZERTARAKO?:-T(Z)EKO - FOR WHAT PURPOSE/OUTCOME

This type of clause is made by adding -T(Z)EKO to the root of the verb, and answers the question ZERTARAKO?:

ZERTARAKO da hori?
For what is that?

Autoa GARBITZEKO da.
It is for cleaning the car.

This construction can be translated as *for*, *so as to*, *in order to* and *so that*. Here are some examples:

JaTEKO erosi ditut	: I have bought them to eat.
Boligrafoak ez du idazTEKO balio	: The pen has no value for writing. {The pen isn't able to write; lit. }
Hori ez da jolasTEKO	: That isn't for playing (with).
Opari bat egiTEKO da	: It is for a present. {to make a present; lit. }
Gauzak erabilTZEKO dira	: The things are for using.
Horrek ez du ikasTEKO balio	: That isn't worth studying. {That doesn't have value for studying; lit. }
Zurekin egoTEKO etorri naiz	: I have come in order to be with you.
Erakatsiko dizkizut dakitzeko	: I will show them to you so that (you will) know.

-T(Z)ERA is not the same as **-T(Z)EKO**

These two constructions are very similar as far as meaning goes, and therefore have similarities. But they are different, and cannot normally be substituted for each other. **Zertara** carries some implication of performing an action, particularly of motion, whereas **Zertarako** indicates things that are future outcomes.

Here is a conversation that shows how they are different from each other. If we invert the order of the conversation then it makes no sense.

<i>Josu</i>	:	Nora zoaz?	- Where are you going?
<i>Bego</i>	:	Denda horretara noa.	- I am going to that shop.
<i>Josu</i>	:	ZERTARA?	- What for?
<i>Bego</i>	:	Zinta bat erosTERA.	- To buy a tape.
<i>Josu</i>	:	ZERTARAKO, grabaTZEKO?	- What for, to record?
<i>Bego</i>	:	Ez, opari bat egiTEKO.	- No, for a present.

There are occasions when both constructions are valid but they carry subtly different meanings. Here is an example:

a) Zurekin egoTERA nator	: I am coming to be with you. {with the intention of being with you; expl. }
b) Zurekin egoTEKO etorri naiz	: I have come to be with you. {because I want to be with you; expl. }

Example a) captures the notion of the future outcome of the action of motion, **nator** - *I am coming*. Whereas in example b) the motion has been completed and is unimportant as being with the person is the important focus.

6.4.3.3. -T(Z)EARREN - SO AS TO

This term is used as a suffix to the verb in the auxiliary clause. It has the special role of being able to be used to answer questions posed by both ZERTARAKO and ZERGATIK, hence its true meaning has to be inferred from the context. Here are some examples of out-come use:

Gu etxera garaiz joateARREN gurasoak pozik daude.

Because you went home (at that) time (your) parents are happy.

Haurrak eraman ditu oheratzeARREN.

He/she brought the children so as to put (them) to bed. {to bed them: lit}

6.4.3.4. -T(Z)EKOTAN, -T(Z)EKO ASMOTAN - THINKING ABOUT DOING SOMETHING

This construction is applied to the nominalised form of a verb to represent in being in the act of considering taking that action. The restriction on the use of the action is that it has to be semantically consistent with the use of the four principal verbs of actions, that is **EGON, ETORRI, IBILI, JOAN** as they are the only verbs you can use with this construction. Here are some examples

Hondartzera joaTEKOTAN geunden, zu heldu zarenean.

We were thinking about going to the beach, when you arrived.

Beste bat erosTEKOTAN gabiltza, hau oso zahar dagoela.

We were thinking about buying the other one, as this (one) is very old.

Etortzeko asmotan egon nintzen, baina ez nintzen ausartu.

I was thinking about coming but I didn't dare.

EsaTEKOTAN egon naiz zerbait lehen, baina gero egon ahaztu zait.

Before I was thinking about saying something, but later I forgot it.

TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK

1. With the verbs **JOAN** and **ETORRI** there is often confusion which causes incorrect usage, by using -T(Z)EKO instead of -T(Z)ERA. Here are some examples:

I am going home for dinner

*Etxera noa afaltZEKO.

Etxera noa afaltZERA.

They have gone for a walk

*PaseaTZEKO joan dira.

PaseaTZERA joan dira.

She/he has gone to buy bread

*Ogia erosTEKO joan da.

Ogia erosTERA joan da.

6.4.4. CAUSAL SENTENCES - *Kausazko Perpausak*

Causal clauses express a cause of a behaviour, hence they are used to capture the fact that something has happened which results in a subsequent behaviour. This is different to **ZERTARAKO** which is directed to a future outcome. Here are the most common forms:

1. **ZERGATIK?: -LAKO**
2. **ETA**
3. **BAIT-**
4. **-NEZ GERO**
5. **-LA ETA**
6. **-ARREN**

6.4.4.1. ZERGATIK?: -LAKO - FROM WHAT, WHY; BECAUSE

This is the most direct of all of the causals. It answers the question **ZERGATIK?**.

ZERGATIK joan da?
Why has she/he gone?

Berandu deLAKO joan da.
She/he has gone **because it is late.**

It can be difficult for the English speaker to separate out the usage of **ZERTARA/KO** and **ZERGATIK**. It is useful to give attention to the final suffixes to assist in the distinction, where **-RA** is equivalent to *TO* and hence indicates a future outcome or intention. On the other hand **-TIK** is equivalent to *FROM* and so indicates a completed action. So **ZERTARA** can be thought of as *To what* and **ZERGATIK** as *From what*.

Whenever **ZERGATIK** is asked the construction **-LAKO** is used in a response, hence when we use **-LAKO** it is usually attached to the inquired element of the clause, and so, it is put in front of the verb of the principal clause and no other word can be placed between them. The only way to achieve this is to transfer the verb of the subordinate clause to the beginning of the principal clause. This creates an unusual order in negative clauses. However on some occasions the inquired element can be another element of the clause.

One of the common mistakes that is made in the majority of subordinate clause constructions is to put the elements of the clause in the wrong order, which, paradoxically, is the same in both affirmative and negative clauses. Here are some examples:

Merkea deLAKO erosi dut	: I bought it because it is cheap.
Garestia ez deLAKO erosi dut	: I bought it because it isn't expensive.
Nahi dudaLAKO egiten dut	: I do it because I want (to).
Nahi ez dudaLAKO ez dut egiten	: I don't do it because I don't want (to).
Joan deLAKO haserretu da	: She/he has (gotten) angry because she/he has gone.
Joan ez deLAKO haserretu da	: She/he has (gotten) angry because she/he has not gone.

This same word order phenomenon occurs in the majority of the subordinate clauses. Here are some examples:

ZERGATIK haserretu da?	-(GALDEGAIA) haserretu da.
Etorri naiz	-Etorri naizeLAKO haserretu da.
Ez naiz etorri	-Etorri EZ naizeLAKO haserretu da.

<i>verb</i>	+		<i>auxiliary</i>	+	-LAKO
<i>verb</i>	+	EZ	<i>auxiliary</i>	+	-LAKO

The form **-LAKO** is derived from **-LA**, adding **-KO**:

DA	-dELA+KO-dELAKO
DUT	-duDALA+KO-duDALAKO
NAIZ	-naizELA+KO-naizELAKO
NINTZEN	-nintzeLA+KO-nintzeLAKO

-AGATIK

The suffix we used for the declension case can be attached to verbal nouns. Here are some examples:

Hau egiten du nagusia izateAGATIK	: She/he does this because she/he is the boss.
Eskerrik asko laguntzAGATIK	: Thanks for the help[ing].

HARGATIK

There is an exception to what we have been saying. When we respond *because I did* or *because I didn't* the form **-LAKO** is not used. The suffix **-GATIK** can be considered as meaning *because of* so in this circumstance you should use **HARGATIK**. Here are some examples:

ZERGATIK egin duzu?	HARGATIK.
Why did you do it?	Because I did. {Because of that; lit.}
ZERGATIK ez duzu egin?	HARGATIK.
Why didn't you do it?	Because I didn't. {Because of that; lit.}

6.4.4.2. ETA

This form is used quite often in spoken Euskara, and is different from the previous form in that the cause it expresses is in general weaker. Normally clauses of this type are not a direct response to a question, and they are not the most important part of the clause. This is precisely why **ETA**, opposite to **-LAKO**, goes after the principal verb.

Here are some examples:

Etxean geratu zen, buruko mina zeukan ETA.

She/he stayed at home, **because** she/he had a headache.

Ez naiz joango, ez daukat gogorik ETA.

I will not go, **because** I don't want (to).

Gaur asteartea da, atzo astelehena izan zen ETA.

Today is Tuesday, **because** yesterday was Monday.

Ohera noa, nekatuta nago ETA.

I am going to bed, **because** I am tired.

Ezin dut erosi, ez daukat dirurik ETA.

I cannot buy it, **because** I don't have any money.

Goazen zerbait hartzera, azken eguna da ETA.

Let's go out for a drink {to take something; lit.}, **because** it is the last day.

Ez dakit zertarako ekarri duten, ez du ezertarako balio ETA.

I don't know why {to what end; expl.} they brought it/her/him, **because** she/he/it isn't worth anything.

As shown in these examples, the cause expressed by **ETA** is sometimes very faint. Sometimes it has more to do with an explanation rather than a cause. So, it is more a consecutive clause than a causal clause. Here is an example:

Goazen etxera, berandu da ETA : Let's go home, it's late.

In the example, it is not possible to change **ETA** for **-LAKO** (***Goazen etxera berandu deLAKO**), as it doesn't have to do with a properly-said causal, but rather it's a consecutive clause.

6.4.4.3. **BAIT-**

This is the same as **ETA** in that it expresses a weaker causal relation than **-LAKO**. Here is a template and some examples:

verb + **BAIT-** + *auxiliary*

verb + **EZ BAIT-** + *auxiliary*

Ezin dut erosi, ez BAITaukat dirurik.

I cannot buy it, **because** I don't have money.

Ezin diot esan, ez BAITakit non dagoen.

I cannot tell him/her **because** I do not know where she/he is.

Ez dabil oso ondo, oso zaharra BAITa.

It doesn't go very well **because** it is very old.

Nik ezin dut ezer esan, ez BAIInaiz hemengoa.

I cannot say anything **because** I am not from here.

As shown in the examples, when you apply this particle to the auxiliary a series of phonetic changes occur. Here is a table of the transformations:

T + D	-	T	:	BAITa, BAITago, BAITitut...
T + G	-	K	:	BAIKara, BAIKenuen, BAIKoaz...
T + Z	-	TZ	:	BAITZara, BAITZen, BAITZait...
T + N	-	N	:	BAInaiz, BAInago, BAInintzen...

BAI BAITakit

When this construction is used with expressions such as **Badago, Badakit...**, the form **BAIT-** is placed between the particle **BA** and the verb. As a consequence of this, the affirmative particle **BA** takes its original form, which is **BAI**. Here are some examples:

- Ez esan ezer, BAI BAITakit zer esango duzun. (Badakit)**
Don't say anything, **because** I **already** know what you will say.
- Ez eman dirurik, BAI BAITauka. (Badauka)**
Don't give [him/her] any money, **because** she/he **already** has (some).

6.4.4.4. -NEZ GERO - SINCE, AS FOR WHAT, CONCERNING WHAT

This is the same as saying *since, as* in English. It is made by adding **-NEZ GERO** to the auxiliary. This construction is used at the end of a first clause before a second clause and the use of **GERO** can be optional. Here is a template and some examples:

<i>verb</i>	+			<i>auxiliary</i>	+	-NEZ (GERO)...	
<i>verb</i>		+	EZ	+	<i>auxiliary</i>	+	-NEZ (GERO)...
Lanera joan			deNEZ (GERO)...				As she/he has gone to work...
Lanera joan		EZ	deNEZ (GERO)...				As she/he has not gone to work...

Apurtuta zegoeNEZ GERO, zaramara bota dut.

As it was broken, I threw it in the rubbish.

Ikusi EZ dudaNEZ GERO, ezin dut ezer esan.

As I didn't see it/him/her, I cannot say anything.

Jakina, zureak EZ direNEZ GERO...!

Sure, as they aren't yours...!

Hemen zaudeNEZ, galdera bat egingo dizut.

Since you are here, I will ask you a question.

Hemen zaudeNEZ, zergatik ez zara gelditzen.

Since you are here, why don't you stay.

Zuzendariak esan dueNEZ, datorren astean oporrak ditugu.

As for what the director said, we have holidays next week.

Make sure you don't confuse this with the structure of **-Z GERO**. (6.4.5.2.)

Two very common expressions are found in conversation and writing that are worth remembering. They are **DAGOKIENEZ** and **DIRUDIENEZ**.

Azterketari DAGOKIENEZ, ordu betekoa izango da.

Concerning the examination, it will be a full hour.

DIRUDIENEZ, bihar eguraldi txarra egongo do.

Seemingly, tomorrow the weather will be bad.

DIRUDIENEZ, haurrak igeri egitera joan dira.

It seems the children have gone [to do] swimming.

6.4.4.5. -LA ETA - BECAUSE OF

This responds to the question **ZER DELA ETA?**: *Because of what?*, and in general expresses a weaker causality than **-LAKO**. Here are some examples:

ZER DELA ETA hemendik? Bisitatxo bat egitera etorri gara.

Why are you here? We have come to pay (you) a little visit.

Neska bat DELA ETA haserretu ziren.

They became angry because of {over; expl.} a girl.

ZER DELA ETA hainbesteko zarata? Zer gertatzen da, ba?

What's the cause of so much noise? What's happening then?

Elurra DELA ETA, ezin izan ginen joan.

Because of the snow we cannot go.

When the object is plural the form **DIRELA ETA** is used as shown in the following examples:

Oso kezkatuta gaude seme-alabak DIRELA ETA.

We are very busy because of the children {sons - daughters; lit}.

Argazki horiek DIRELA ETA bere dimisioa aurkeztu du.

Because of those photos she/he has presented his/her resignation.

6.4.4.6. -T(Z)EARREN -AS, BECAUSE

This term is attached to the nominalised form of the verb in the subordinate clause. It can also be used to express outcome clauses and so can be found as a response to the question **ZERTARAKO**. The correct meaning has to be inferred from the context. Here are some examples of causal use:

Erdi lotan etorTZEAREN istripua izan nuen.

Because I was half asleep I had an accident.

Mendira igoTZEAREN hanka apurtu zait.

Because (I) went up [to] a mountain I broke my leg {the broke to me;lit}

Asko erreTZEAREN birikiak belztuta ditu.

As (she/he) smokes a lot he/she has black lungs.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. Sometimes **ZERGATIK** is used to respond to a question when it really is only correct when used as a question. Here are some examples:

ZERGATIK egin duzu?

***ZERGATIK** bai.
HARGATIK.

Because it is.

ZERGATIK ez zatoz gurekin?

***ZERGATIK** berandu da.
Berandu deLAKO.

Because it is late.

ZERGATIK ez duzu egiten?

***ZERGATIK** ez dut nahi.
Nahi ez duduLAKO.

Because I don't want to.

6.4.5. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES - *Baldintzazko Perpausak*

These are clauses which express a condition. In this section we will only study those that are used most frequently.

1. **BA- / BALDIN BA-**
2. **-Z GERO, BEHIN ...-Z GERO**
3. **EZIK, IZAN EZIK**

6.4.5.1. *BA-*

In Euskara, conditional clauses are made by adding the prefix particle **BA-** to the auxiliary or synthetic verb. Here are some examples:

Jausten BAzara, min hartuko duzu.

If you fall you will hurt yourself. {take pain; lit.}

Kontuz ez BAzabiltza, jausi egingo zara.

If you don't be careful, you will fall.

Ohea egiten ez BAduzu, ez zara etxetik irtengo.

If you don't make (your) bed you will not go out [from the house].

Gehiago nahi BAduzu, hartu beldur barik.

If you want more, don't be afraid to take it.

Berak ondo egin BAzuen, nik askoz ere hobeto.

If he did it well, I did it much better.

Ikusten BAduzu, esaiozu berarekin hitz egin behar dudala.

If you see him, tell him that I must speak with him.

As shown in these examples, in the negative clauses the usual order is not used, but, similar to the use of **-LAKO**, the principal verb is placed in front of the negation **EZ** so that **BA-** can go at the front of the auxiliary. This is something that happens with the majority of subordinate clauses, so it is worthwhile learning this construction well. Here is a template and some examples:

<i>verb</i>	+		BA-	+	<i>auxiliary</i>
<i>verb</i>	+	EZ	BA-	+	<i>auxiliary</i>

Egiten		BAduzu, ondo	: If you do it, good.
Egiten	EZ	BAduzu, hobeto	: If you don't do it, better.

You shouldn't confuse the conditional **BA-** with the affirmative **BA-**. Here are some examples:

BAdago eginda	: It is done / It is already done.
Eginda BAdago, ekarri hona	: If it is done, bring it [to] here
Josuk BAdaki	: Josu [already] knows it / Josu knows.
Josuk BAdaki, berari galdetu	: If Josu knows, question him.

BALDIN BA-

When you want the meaning of conditional clauses to be accentuated, you can use the particle **BALDIN**. Here are some examples:

Lortzen BALDIN BAdut, esango dizut	: If I get it I will tell you.
Ikusten BALDIN BAdut, hil egingo dut	: If I see him/her I will kill him/her.

When dealing with synthetic verbs and the inquired element is a proper condition, you should also use the particle **BALDIN**. Here are some examples:

BALDIN BAdator, esaidazu	: If she/he comes, [you] tell me.
BALDIN BAdaki, zergatik ez du esan?	: If she/he knows, why didn't she/he say (so)?
BALDIN BAzoaz, abisatu	: If you go, tell (me).

6.4.5.2. **-Z GERO - IN CASE, IN THE CASE THAT, BY**

This clause is used to construct affirmative conditional clauses. In English their meanings are similar to *in the case that*. They are constructed with the verbal participle followed by the form **-(e)Z GERO**. Here are some examples:

Ahal izanEZ GERO, etorriko naiz	: In the case that (I) can, I will come.
Behar izanEZ GERO, hemen daukazu	: In case (you) need it, you have it here.

Hau kenduZ GERO, besteak onak dira : By removing this, the others are good.
Dirua edukiZ GERO, erosiko nuke : In the case that I had money, I would buy it.

Do not confuse this structure with **-NEZ GERO**, as it expresses cause. (see 6.4.4.)

BEHIN ...-Z GERO - IF YOU'RE GOING TO, IF IT IS TO BE

This is used also in the expression **BEHIN ...-Z GERO**, and is the same as *if you're going to, if it is to be* in English. Here are some examples:

BEHIN eginEZ GERO, ondo egin; bestela, ez egin.
If (you're) going to do it, do it well; otherwise, don't do (it).
BEHIN erosiZ GERO, handia erosi. Merezi du.
If you're going to buy one, buy a big one. It is worth it.

6.4.5.3. EZIK, IZAN EZIK - EXCEPT FOR, APART FROM

This expression enable identification of items that are to be considered exceptions to a group. Here are some examples:

Dena dakigu aditzak IZAN EZIK.
We know everything {all. lit} **except** the verbs.
Karmeale IZAN EZIK, denok joango gara Bilbora.
Apart from Karmeale we will all go to Bilbao.
Kotxeak debekatu auzokak EZIK.
Cars are prohibited **except for** residents.

6.4.5.4. ...EZEZIK...ERE - ...NOT ONLY ...BUT ... (ALSO)...

This is the opposite of the concept of **EZIK** and it expresses the inclusion of an item in a group. Here are some examples:

Deklinabidea EZEZIK aditzak ERE ikasi ditugu
We have learnt **not only** the declension **but** the verbs.
Umeak EZEZIK gurasoak ERE mozorrotuko dira.
Not only the children **but** the parents **also** have dressed up. {in costumes; expl}
NI EZEZIK zeu ERE joango zara
Not only me **but** you will go.

Note that the verb is put into agreement with the second subject in the expression. Hence in the first example the plural object is conjugated **DITUGU** and in the third example the intransitive verb agrees with the second subject.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. Putting the verb after the auxiliary in negative clauses. For example:

If she/he doesn't want...	*Ez BAdu NAHI... NAHI ez BAdu...
If you don't do it...	*Ez BAduzu EGITEN... EGITEN ez BAduzu...
If you don't study...	*Ez BAduzu IKASTEN... IKASTEN ez BAduzu...

6.4.6. RELATIVE CLAUSES - *Erlatibozko Perpausak*

In this section we analyse the most frequently used relative clauses:

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Zuk esan duzuN guztia | : All that you have said. |
| 2. Zuk esanDAKO guztia | : All that was said (by) you. |

6.4.6.1. -N - *THAT/WHO*

This construction is extremely important in the grammar of Euskara and you need to develop a high level of competency in its use. Relative clauses are a modification of a noun phrase so as to provide more explicitness about the noun. This clause is usually marked by *who*, *whom* or *whose* for human subjects and *which* for things. For clauses of place, time and cause the relative pronouns are *where*, *when* and *why* respectively, and occasionally *how* is used. With all these pronouns prepositions *on*, *at*, ... might be used. In some restricted types of relative clauses *that* can be substituted for any of the above pronouns or it may be omitted all together. Here is a simple example:

Etorri deN mutila
The boy *who* has come.

You can see here that relative clauses in Euskara go before the element they describe while in English they are placed after. The synthetic or auxiliary verb of the relative clause takes the relative marker **-(e)n** and is placed at the end of the clause. Here is another example:

(Goizean ikusi duguN) MUTILA Gasteizkoa da.
The boy (who we saw this morning) is from Gasteiz.

So in Euskara, a relative clause describes, in some way, the element which goes to its right. It is quite similar to what happens in the case of **NONGO**. Here is an example:

BilboKO MUTILA	: The boy from Bilbao.
Bilbon bizi deN MUTILA	: The boy who lives in Bilbao.

From this form one can determine which boy is being referred to. Also, this element can be declined. For example:

Ikusi duguN mutilA izan da	: It is the boy whom we have seen.
Ikusi duguN mutilAK egin du	: The boy whom we have seen did it.
Ikusi duguN mutilARI eman dio	: She/he has given it to the boy whom we have seen.
Ikusi duguN mutilAREKIN joan da	: She/he has gone with the boy whom we have seen.

An alternative structure, that is used very frequently, occurs when the subject of the clause is implied. If this is the case, then the declension suffixes which the subject should take are attached directly to the -N. For example:

Ikusi duguN (mutil)A	-	Ikusi duguNA
Ikusi duguNA		: The one we have seen
Ikusi duguNARI		: To the one we have seen
Ikusi dituguNAK		: The ones we have seen
Ikusi dituguNEKIN		: With the ones we have seen

The relative clause is one of the few places in Euskara where word order is important in determining syntax. Take the example below:

Hori adierazten duen errefrau dago : It is a proverb which explains that.

However to create an intensification or emphasis on the main verb we would bring the main clause to the front of the sentence and add the intensifier BA.

Ba dago errefrau bat hori adierazten duena: IT IS A PROVERB which explains that.

Note the -A added to the auxiliary verb after the relative clause marker -N so as to create the subject of the relative clause. A relative clause cannot exist without an explicit subject or an elliptical reference by a declension suffix attached to the -N marker on the auxiliary verb.

SUBJUNCTIVE - SUBJUNTIBOA

The relative clause in Euskara can have a present or subjunctive meaning, depending on the case. Here are some examples:

Ahal dudaN guztia egiten dut	: I have done all that I can.
Ahal dudaN guztia egingo dut	: I will do all that I can.

Negative clauses

The negative relative clauses are constructed by placing **EZ** in front of the auxiliary. Here are some examples:

etorri		deN	mutila	<i>the boy who has come.</i>
etorri	EZ	deN	mutila	<i>the boy who has NOT come.</i>

Atzo ikusi genuen mutilak istripu bat eduki du.

The boy **who** we saw yesterday has had an accident.

Esan duzu guztia egia da.

All **that** you have said is true.

Ekarri duzu NAREKIN nahikoa daukagu.

With **the (one)** you have brought we have enough.

Ikusten dudu NAGATIK, ez du merezi.

From **(what)** {the one; lit.} I see, it isn't worth it.

Hori esan duenAK ez du piperrik ere ulertu.

The **(person)** who said that hasn't understood a thing. {a pepper/capsicum; lit.}

Etxean daukadanA askoz ere politagoa da.

The **(one)** that I have at home is much more beautiful.

Ulertzen EZ duzueNA galdetu beldurrik gabe.

Don't be frightened to ask (about) **(what)** you don't understand. {(The thing) you don't understand ask it without fear; lit.}

Gaur egiten EZ duzuna bihar egin beharko duzu.

(The thing) you don't do today you will have to do tomorrow.

As shown in these examples, sometimes **-N** is used, and other times **-EN**. The convention follows the same rules as **-LA**. (see 6.4.1.1.)

6.4.6.2. **-TAKO (-RIKO)**

As well as the form we have just looked at, there is another type of relative clause. It is constructed by adding **-TAKO** to the verbal participle which gives it a perfective aspect and then put immediately before the word it describes. In this case the described word also can be implied, in which case the suffixes are attached directly onto **-TAKO**. For example:

etorri TAKO mutila	-	etorri TAKOA
etorri TAKO ume AK	-	etorri TAKOAK
esan DAKO gauz EKIN	-	esan DAKOEKIN

A variant of this form are verbs whose participle ends in **-N** or **-L** which take **-DAKO**:

esan	-	esan DAKO	hil	-	hil DAKO
------	---	------------------	-----	---	-----------------

From this form one can determine which boy is being referred to. Also, this element can be declined. For example:

Ikusi duguN mutilA izan da	: It is the boy whom we have seen.
Ikusi duguN mutilAK egin du	: The boy whom we have seen did it.
Ikusi duguN mutilARI eman dio	: She/he has given it to the boy whom we have seen.
Ikusi duguN mutilAREKIN joan da	: She/he has gone with the boy whom we have seen.

An alternative structure, that is used very frequently, occurs when the subject of the clause is implied. If this is the case, then the declension suffixes which the subject should take are attached directly to the -N. For example:

Ikusi duguN (mutil)A	-	Ikusi duguNA
Ikusi duguNA		: The one we have seen
Ikusi duguNARI		: To the one we have seen
Ikusi dituguNAK		: The ones we have seen
Ikusi dituguNEKIN		: With the ones we have seen

The relative clause is one of the few places in Euskara where word order is important in determining syntax. Take the example below:

Hori adierazten duen errefrau dago : It is a proverb which explains that.

However to create an intensification or emphasis on the main verb we would bring the main clause to the front of the sentence and add the intensifier BA.

Ba dago errefrau bat hori adierazten duena: IT IS A PROVERB which explains that.

Note the -A added to the auxiliary verb after the relative clause marker -N so as to create the subject of the relative clause. A relative clause cannot exist without an explicit subject or an elliptical reference by a declension suffix attached to the -N marker on the auxiliary verb.

SUBJUNCTIVE - SUBJUNTIBOA

The relative clause in Euskara can have a present or subjunctive meaning, depending on the case. Here are some examples:

Ahal dudaN guztia egiten dut	: I have done all that I can.
Ahal dudaN guztia egingo dut	: I will do all that I can.

Negative clauses

The negative relative clauses are constructed by placing **EZ** in front of the auxiliary. Here are some examples:

etorri		deN	mutila	<i>the boy who has come.</i>
etorri	EZ	deN	mutila	<i>the boy who has NOT come.</i>

Atzo ikusi genuen mutilak istripu bat eduki du.

The boy **who** we saw yesterday has had an accident.

Esan duzu guztia egia da.

All **that** you have said is true.

Ekarri duzu NAREKIN nahikoa daukagu.

With the (one) you have brought we have enough.

Ikusten dudu NAGATIK, ez du merezi.

From (what) {the one; lit.} I see, it isn't worth it.

Hori esan duenAK ez du piperrik ere ulertu.

The (person) **who** said that hasn't understood a thing. {a pepper/capsicum; lit.}

Etxean daukadanA askoz ere politagoa da.

The (one) **that** I have at home is much more beautiful.

Ulertzen EZ duzueNA galdetu beldurrik gabe.

Don't be frightened to ask (about) (what) you don't understand. {(The thing) you don't understand ask it without fear; lit.}

Gaur egiten EZ duzuna bihar egin beharko duzu.

(The thing) you don't do today you will have to do tomorrow.

As shown in these examples, sometimes **-N** is used, and other times **-EN**. The convention follows the same rules as **-LA**. (see 6.4.1.1.)

6.4.6.2. -TAKO (-RIKO)

As well as the form we have just looked at, there is another type of relative clause. It is constructed by adding **-TAKO** to the verbal participle which gives it a perfective aspect and then put immediately before the word it describes. In this case the described word also can be implied, in which case the suffixes are attached directly onto **-TAKO**. For example:

etorri TAKO mutila	-	etorri TAKOA
etorri TAKO ume AK	-	etorri TAKOAK
esan DAKO gauz EKIN	-	esan DAKOEKIN

A variant of this form are verbs whose participle ends in **-N** or **-L** which take **-DAKO**:

esan	-	esan DAKO	hil	-	hil DAKO
------	---	------------------	-----	---	-----------------

Here are some examples:

Goizen etorriTAKO mutilak.

The boys **who** came this morning.

Zuk esanDAKO guztia gezurra da.

All **that** you have said is a lie.

Orain arte ikusiTAKO guztia sano txarra da.

All **that** {I; impl.} have seen up to {until; lit.} now is very bad.

Batzarrean esanDAKOa grabatuta daukat.

I have taped **what** was said at the meeting.

{(The thing) said at the meeting I have it taped; lit.}

Etxean eginDAKOak dira.

They are (the things) made at home.

-TAKO can also be translated as a passive construction:

Hainbat jende eta polizia zauritu ziren atzo bere jarraitzaileek eginDAKO manifestaziioi batean.

Many people and police were injured yesterday in a demonstration made **by** his supporters.

As well as the form **-TAKO** there is another less used form: **-RI(KA)KO**. Here are examples:

ikusiTAKO	=	ikusiRIKO	=	ikusiRIKAKO
esanDAKO	=	esanIKO	=	esanIKAKO

TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK

1. A mistake which is commonly made with the relative clause is to confuse it with completive clauses. Here are some examples of this incorrect usage:

The boy **who** has come

***Mutila etorri deLA.**

Etorri deN mutila.

The books **that** you brought

***Liburuak ekarri dituzuLA.**

Ekarri dituzuN liburuak.

The car **that** you have bought

***Autoa erosi duzuLA.**

Erosi duzuN autoa.

2. Another mistake is to place the relative clause after the determined word. Example:

The boy **who** has come

***Mutila etorri deN.**

Etorri deN mutila.

The film **that** we saw

***Pelikula ikusi duguN.**

Ikusi duguN pelikula.

6.4.7. TEMPORAL CLAUSES - *Denborazko Perpausak*

Temporal clauses are those which are used to place an activity at a certain time. This subordinate clause tells us at which moment the action happens, and the principal clause tells us what is happening.

All temporal clauses signal a point of reference in time, and situate the action as to whether it happens at the specific time or before or after. In this section we will study the most frequently used temporal constructions:

1. **BAINO LEHEN(AGO) (AURRETIK) (AITZIN)**
2. **ORDUKO**
3. **-T(Z)ERAKOAN**
4. **-T(Z)EAN, -NEAN, -N BITARTEAN, BITARTEAN**
5. **BEZAIN LASTER, -TAKOAN**
6. **ETA GERO, ONDOREN**
7. **-N BAKOITZEAN / -N GUZTIETAN / -N GEHIENETAN**
8. **-N ARTE**

6.4.7.1. BAINO LEHEN(AGO), AURRETIK, AITZIN - BUT FIRST, BEFORE

These two forms are very similar, and place the action before the reference point. They are put immediately after the verb which is always the infinitive participle.

Afaldu BAINO LEHEN(AGO) joango naiz: I will go before (eating) dinner.



Here are some examples:

Egin BAINO LEHEN(AGO), ondo pentsatu.

Before doing (it), think about (it) well.

Etorri AURRETIK, telefonoz deitu.

Before coming, call (on) [by] the telephone.

Etxetik irten BAINO LEHEN(AGO), ohea egin behar duzue.

Before going out [from home], you {pl.} have to make the bed.

Hori, egin AURRETIK pentsatu behar da, ez ondoren.

That, {you; impl.} must think about before doing it, not after.

Salto egin AITZIN, begiratu.

Before jumping, look.

6.4.7.2. ORDUKO - BEFORE, AS SOON AS, FOR WHEN

This form is used by adding **ORDUKO** to the verb participle. It can have three different meanings according to the context where it is used.

1. Before

Egin ORDUKO, ondo aztertu behar dugu. (aztertu BAINO LEHEN)

Before doing it, we must analyse it well.

Etorri ORDUKO, telefonoz deitu, badaezpada ere. (etorri BAINO LEHEN)

Before coming, call on the telephone, just in case.

2. As soon as

Bilera amaitu ORDUKO, alde egin zuen. (amaitu BEZAIN LASTER)

As soon as the meeting finished, she/he left.

Heldu ORDUKO, zutaz galdetu du. (heldu BEZAIN LASTER)

As soon as (she/he) arrived, she/he asked about you.

3. For when

Bera heldu ORDUKO, ez zen inor geratzen. (heldu zeNERAKO)

(For) when she/he arrived, no-one was (there). {no-one was remaining; lit.}

Konturatu ORDUKO, umea kalean zegoen. (konturatu zeNERAKO)

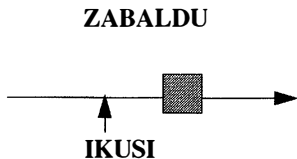
(For) when she/he realised, the child was on the street.

Apparently, the third form is the original meaning of this term, however it has developed the other two meanings over time.

6.4.7.3. -T(Z)ERAKOAN

This term places the action immediately before the reference point so it represents phrases like *just before*, *upon going to*. Here is a diagram:

Atea zabalTZERAKOAN ikusi dut : I saw him/it **just before** opening the door.



Here are some examples:

Argia pizTERAKOAN ikusi dut kablea solte.

Upon going to turn on the light I saw the loose cable.

OrdainTZERAKOAN konturatu da poltsa lapurtu diotela.

On going to pay she/he noticed that they had stolen (her/his) bag.

6.4.7.4. -T(Z)EAN, -NEAN, -N BITARTEAN, BITARTEAN

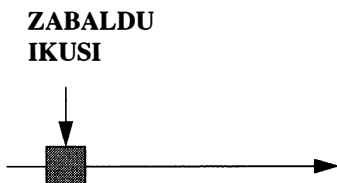
These two forms have distinct meanings, and are created by adding -AN or, in some cases, -RAKOAN to the nominalised verb. For example:

EGIN	-	egiTE	-	egiTEAN / egiTERAKOAN
HAR(TU)	-	harTZE	-	harTZEAN / harTZERAKOAN

1. -T(Z)EAN

This term places the action right at the point of reference or just as the action is completing, so, both actions appear to be simultaneous:

Atea zabalTZEAN ikusi dut : On opening the door I saw him/her.



Here are some examples:

Argia pizTEAN jaso dut deskarga.

Upon turning the light on I received a shock.

Liburua zabalTZEAN, paper hau jausi zait.

Upon opening the book, this paper fell out (on/from) me.

Euskaraz hitz egitEAN, hutz asko egiten ditu.

When speaking in Euskara, she makes lots of mistakes.

2. -NEAN - WHEN (AT THE INSTANT OF)

This term places the action right at the reference point, that is, it describes simultaneous action. Here is an example:

Sartu deNEAN esan diot : I have told her/him it when she/he came in.

This form comes from a relative clause:

Sartu deN (momentu)AN - **Sartu deNEAN**

Here is a list of the different possible uses:

etorri deNEAN	: when she/he had come
etorTZEN deNEAN	: when she/he comes {each time; expl.}
	: when she/he will come
etorri zeNEAN	: when she/he came
etorTZEN zeNEAN	: when she/he came {used to come regularly; expl.}

Note that the form **etorTZEN deNEAN** can have two different meanings (*when she/he comes / when she/he will come*), depending on the context.

Here are some examples:

Nahi duzuNEAN etorri.

Come **when** you want (to).

Josu heltzen deNEAN, dena da problema.

When Josu arrives, it is all (his) problem.

Josu heltzen deNEAN, abisatu.

When Josu arrives, tell (me).

Ikusten duzuNEAN, esaiozu berarekin hitz egin behar dudala.

When you see him, you tell him that I must talk with him.

Bakarrik nagoENEAN, hobeto ateratzen zait.

When I am alone, it turns out better for me.

Noiz esango diozu? Bakarrik dagoENEAN.

When will you tell her/him? **When** she/he is alone.

Noiz etorriko zara? Ahal duzaneAN.

When will you come? **When** I can.

In negative constructions the verb is placed in front of the negation **EZ** so that **-NEAN** stays at the end. Here is a template and some examples:

<i>verb</i>	+		<i>auxiliary</i>	+	-NEAN	
<i>verb</i>	+	EZ	+	<i>auxiliary</i>	+	-NEAN

a) **Ikusten duzuNEAN** : When you see him.

b) **Ikusten EZ duzuNEAN** : When you don't see him.

Here are some more examples:

Nahi duzuNEAN, ezin duzu, eta nahi EZ duzuNEAN...

When you want to, you can't, and **when** you don't want to...

Ama ikusten EZ dueNEAN, negarrez hasten da.

When she/he can't see (her/his) mother, she/he starts to cry.

Aprobatzen duzuNEAN, ondo; baina aprobatzen EZ duzunNEAN...

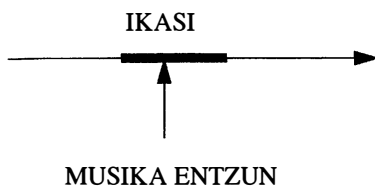
When you approve it, good; but **when** you don't approve it...

This same concept may also be expressed with **-(E)LARIK** or **-(E)LA**.

3. **-N BITARTEAN, BITARTEAN - WHILE, DURING**

This term places two actions as occurring during the same period of time. Here is an example:

Ikasten dudaN BITARTEAN, musika entzuten dut.
While I study, I listen to music.



This is different from **-NEAN** because it expresses an action which lasts for some time, whereas **-NEAN** refers to one point in time:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. Ikusi dudaNEAN | : When I see him/her - expresses one point in time. |
| 2. Ikusi dudaN BITARTEAN | : While I see him - expresses a space of time which lasts for a while, during which the action happens. |

This form is really a relative clause:

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Ikusi dudaN MOMENTUAN | : At the moment I see him/her. |
| Ikusi dudaN BITARTEAN | : While I see her/him. |

Here are some examples:

Zuk gosaria prestatzen duzuN BITARTEAN, ni dutxatu egingo naiz.

While you prepare breakfast, I will have a shower.

Nik, ikasten dudaN BITARTEAN, ezin dut musika entzun.

I, **while** I study, can't listen to music.

Prestatzen zareN BITARTEAN, kafetxo bat hartuko dut.

While you (get) ready I will have {take; lit.} a small coffee.

Ohea egiten ez duzuN BITARTEAN, ezin zara etxetik irten.

While you don't make (your) [the] bed, you cannot go out from the house.

Hori egiten duteN BITARTEAN, nik mahaia ipiniko dut.

While they do that, I will set the table.

Hori egiten EZ duteN BITARTEAN, lasai nago.

While they don't do that, I am calm. {alright/relaxed; lit.}

Ezer apurtzen ez duteN BITARTEAN, utzi jolasten.

While they don't break anything, let (them) play. {leave (them) to play; lit.}

As with relative clauses the verb is placed in front of the negative particle **EZ** in negative constructions, so that **-N BITARTEAN** can go at the end. Here is a template:

<i>verb</i>	+		<i>auxiliary</i>	+	-N BITARTEAN
<i>verb</i>	+	EZ	<i>auxiliary</i>	+	-N BITARTEAN

In some places **-N ARTEAN** is used instead. (see 6.4.7.9.)

BITARTEAN can be placed immediately after the infinitive form of the verb in which case there is no auxiliary and the agents of any actions have to be inferred from the context. Here are some examples:

Hori egiten BITARTEAN, nik maiha ipiniko dut.

While that is (getting) done, I will set the table.

Gosaira prestatzen BITARTEAN, ni dutxatu egingo naiz.

While breakfast is (being) prepared, I will have a shower.

6.4.7.5. **BEZAIN LASTER, -TAKOAN- AS SOON AS, JUST AFTER**

This form is used by adding **BEZAIN LASTER** to the verbal participle, and is similar to the English meaning *as soon as* and expresses an action that is done after another action is finished. Here are some examples:

Jakin BEZAIN LASTER esan dizut.

I told you it **as soon as** (I) knew (it).

Ikusi BEZAIN LASTER ezagutu nuen.

I knew her **as soon as** (I) saw (her).

There are other expressions which are similar to this one: **BEZAIN PRONTO**, **BEZAIN AZKAR**, **BEZAIN AGUDO** and **BEZAIN ARIN**, **ETA BEREHALA** and **ETA ATOAN**. Here are some examples:

Heldu BEZAIN PRONTO joan zen	: She/he went as fast as (she/he) arrived.
Amaitu BEZAIN AZKAR joan da	: She/he has left as quick as (she) finished.
Heldu ETA BEREHALA joan da	: She/he has left immediately (on) arriving.

-TAKOAN expresses a point in time "just after" an event and uses the infinite form of the verb whereas **-T(Z)EAN** and **-T(Z)ERAKOAN** use the nominalised verb.

Lana amaitutakoan hitzegingo dugu.

As soon as the work is finished we will talk.

Atea itxiTAKOAN konturatu nintzen giltzak ez dauzkadela.

Just after the door closed I realised I didn't have the keys.

EseriTAKOAN norbaitek telefonoz deitu nau

Just after sitting down someone called me (on) {by} the phone.

6.4.7.6. **ETA GERO, ONDOREN - AFTER**

These two constructions are equivalent, and place the action after the reference time point. This form is obtained by adding **ETA GERO** or **ONDOREN** after the verbal participle.

Afaldu ETA GERO joango naiz : I will go **after** (eating) dinner.



Here are some examples:

Partidua ikusi ETA GERO egingo ditut.

I will do them **after** seeing the game/match.

Lana amaitu ETA GERO joango gara.

We will go **after** finishing the work.

Afaldu ONDOREN, Alde Zaharrera joan ginen.

After (eating) dinner, we went to the Old Part.

Dutxatu ONDOREN gosalduko dut.

I will (eat) breakfast **after** showering.

In some localities, instead of using **ONDOREN** people use the form **OSTEAN**. Here are a couple of examples:

Afaldu OSTEAN joango gara : We will go **after** (eating) dinner.

Zer egingo duzu bazkaldu OSTEAN? : What will you do **after** (eating) lunch?

6.4.7.7. **-N BAKOITZEAN / -N GUZTIETAN / -N GEHIENETAN - EACH TIME / WHENEVER / MOST OF THE TIME**

In this section we are going to study three temporal constructions that are used to express the frequency of an action. Here are the terms:

-N BAKOITZEAN : *each time that*
-N GUZTIETAN : *all of the times that/ everytime that/ whenever*
-N GEHIENETAN : *most of the times that*

As shown, this construction requires **-N** to be added to the auxiliary. Here are some examples:

Saiatzen naizeN BAKOITZEAN, txarto ateratzen zait.

Each time that I try (it), (it) turns out bad for me.

Hitz egiten duzuN BAKOITZEAN, hanka sartzen duzu.

Each time you talk, you put (your) foot in it.

Zurekin hitz egiten dudaN GUZTIETAN, gauza bera esaten didazu.

Whenever I talk with you, you tell me the same thing.

Musika hau entzuten dudaN GUZTIETAN, zutaz gogoratzen naiz.

Whenever I hear this music, I remember (about) you.

Joan naizeN GEHIENETAN, damutu egiten naiz.

Most of the times that I have gone, I have regretted it.

Berarekin geratu naizeN GEHIENETAN, berandu heldu da.

Most of the times that I have arranged to meet [with] him, he has arrived late.

6.4.7.8. **-N ARTE - UNTIL WHEN**

This term responds to the question **NOIZ ARTE? until when?**, and is made by adding **-N** to the auxiliary verb, followed by **ARTE**. Here are some examples:

Medikua etorri deN ARTE, ezin izan dugu ezer egin.

Until the doctor comes, we can't do anything.

Partidua amaitu duteN ARTE ez naiz lasai geratu.

Until they finished the game (match) I didn't stay calm.

Ikustea lortu dudaN ARTE ezin nuen sinestu.

Until I manage to see him/her/it I can't believe it/her/him.

Don't confuse this structure with **-N ARTEAN**, which is the same as **-N BITARTEAN**. Here is an example:

Hau egiten dudaN ARTE geldi egon.

Until I do this, be still.

Hau egiten dudaN BITARTEAN geldi egon.

While I do this be still.

These clauses can also be made by adding the particle **ARTE** to the verbal participle. This is the more frequently used form in spoken Euskara. Here are some examples:

Ikusi ARTE!

: **Until** next time! See you later!

Jo eta ke, amaitu ARTE!

: (I'm going to) hit (you) **until** you finish!

Lehertu ARTE jan dugu

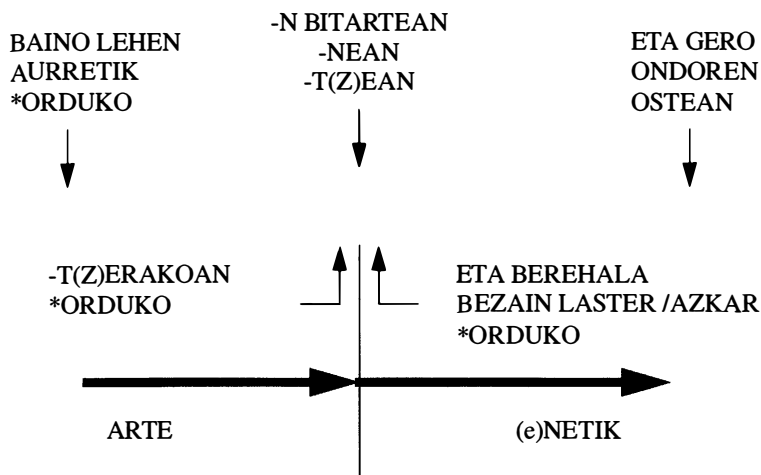
: We ate **until** (we were) exhausted.

Bera etorri ARTE itxarongo dut

: I will wait **until** she comes.

SUMMARY

Here is a diagram which compares all the forms we have studied in this section:

**TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK**

1. A common mistake is to conjugate the verb in the future tense using **-KO**, instead of the form **-T(Z)EN**. For example:

When she/he comes, tell me

***HELDUKO** denean, abisatu.

HELTZEN denean, abisatu.

I will tell her/him when I see her

***IKUSIKO** dudanean esango diot.

IKUSTEN dudanean esango diot.

You will see, when I finish!

***Ikusiko** duzu, **AMAITUKO** dudanean!

Ikusiko duzu, **AMAITZEN** dudanean!

2. Another mistake is to put the negative constructions made using **-NEAN** in the wrong order. Here are some examples:

Come when she/he isn't [at] home

***Etorri ez dagoenean ETXEAN.**

Etorri ETXEAN ez dagoenean.

When you don't understand, ask

***Ez duzunean ULERTZEN, galdetu.**

ULERTZEN ez duzunean, galdetu.

Come when there aren't any people

***Etorri ez dagoenean JENDERIK.**

Etorri JENDERIK ez dagoenean.

6.4.8. CONCESSIVE - *Kontzesiboa*

Concessive clauses in English can have different forms: *even if, even though, in spite of, although*. In this section we are only going to study those which are used most often:

1. **ARREN, AGATIK**
2. **NAHIZ ETA**
3. **BA...ERE**
4. **TA/DA ERE**

6.4.8.1. ARREN, AGATIK - ALTHOUGH, EVEN THOUGH, EVEN IF, IN SPITE OF

This form is placed after the participle, except in negative constructions when the negation **EZ** is placed between the participle and **ARREN**. The rest of the words are placed in front of the participle, in such a way that **ARREN** is at the end. Here are some examples:

(.....)	+	<i>participle</i>	'	+	ARREN/AGATIK
(.....)	+	<i>participle</i>		+	EZ ARREN/AGATIK

- a) **Jon etorri ARREN** : **Even if** Jon comes.
 b) **Jon etorri EZ ARREN** : **Even if** Jon doesn't come.

Here are some examples:

Ordaindu ARREN, ez dut egingo.

Even if (I am) paid, I will not do it.

Ordaindu EZ ARREN, egingo dut.

Even if (I am) not paid, I will do it.

Azken ariketa egin EZ ARREN, saiatu dut.

Even though (I have) not done the last exercise, I have tried.

Berandu izan AGATIK, joango naiz.

Even though it is late, I will go.

As shown in these examples, this form can have different meanings, according to the context. For example:

Txarto egin ARREN, ordainduko didate.

Even though (it is) done badly, they are will pay me.

Even if (I) do (it) badly, they will pay me.

Euria egin AGATIK, mendira joango naiz.

In spite of it raining, I will go to the mountain.

Even if it rains, I will go to the mountain.

6.4.8.2. NAHIZ ETA - ALTHOUGH, EVEN THOUGH, EVEN IF

This form is different from the previous form, as it is placed at the beginning of the clause, however the meaning is exactly the same. Here is the template for its usage and some examples:

NAHIZ ETA + (.....) + *participle*
 NAHIZ ETA + (.....) + *participle* + **EZ**

- a) NAHIZ ETA garaiz heldu : **Even though** she/he arrives on time.
 b) NAHIZ ETA garaiz heldu **EZ** : **Even though** she/he doesn't arrive on time.

NAHIZ ETA dirurik eduki **EZ**, ondo bizi naiz.

Even though (I) don't have any money, I live well.

NAHIZ ETA gogorik eduki **EZ**, joan behar dut.

Even though (I) don't feel (like) it, I have to go.

NAHIZ ETA oporretan egon, ez nago gustura.

Although (I) am on holidays, I am not happy.

NAHIZ ETA euria egin, mendira joango gara.

Even if (it) rains, we will go to the mountain.

NAHIZ ETA esan **EZ**, pentsatzen ari da.

Although (she/he) doesn't say it {although not said; lit.}; she/he is thinking it.

As with **ARREN**, this form can have different meanings, depending on the context. For example:

NAHIZ ETA txarto egin, ordainduko didate.

Even though (I) did it badly, they will pay me.

Even if (I) do it badly, they will pay me.

NAHIZ ETA euria egin, mendira joango naiz.

Even though it is raining, I will go to the mountain.

Even if it rains, I will go to the mountain.

Another form of this construction requires the relative clause marker **-N** but in this case the full auxiliary verb or synthetic verb is inserted. Here are some examples:

Berandu den **ARREN**, ez naiz etxeratu.

Although it is late, I am not going home.

NAHIZ ETA gutxi dakidan, zerbait kontatuko dizuet

Although I know (very) little, I will tell you {pl.} something.

NAHIZ ETA adina jaten duzun, ez duzu gizentzen.

Although you have eaten so much, you haven't gained weight {fattened; lit.}.

NAHIZ ETA maite nauzun, nik ez maite zaitut.

Although you love me, I don't love you.

Udaberria den ARREN, hotza egin du.

Even though it is spring, it is cold. {he has made it cold; lit}

Atzo elurra egin zuen ARREN, klasera etorri ginin.

Even though it was snowing yesterday, we came to class.

6.4.8.3. BA...ERE - ALTHOUGH, EVEN THOUGH, EVEN IF

This construction is used to make concessive clauses such as *even though, even if*. It is made with the conditional particle **BA-** and **ERE**. The conditional can be real as well as hypothetical. Here are some examples for its usage:

<i>(participle)</i>	+	BA...		<i>(auxiliary or synthetic)</i>	ERE
<i>(participle)</i>	+	EZ	BA...	<i>(auxiliary or synthetic)</i>	ERE

Egiten		BA du	ERE	:	Even if she/he does it
Egiten	EZ	BA du	ERE	:	Even if she/he doesn't do it.

Gaisorik BAdago ERE, etorri behar du.

Even though she/he is ill, she/he must come.

Gogorik ez BAdaukazu ERE, egin egin behar duzu.

Even if you don't feel (like) it, you (definitely) must do it.

Sinesten ez BAduzu ERE, egia da.

Although you don't believe it, it is true.

Nahi EZ BAdu ERE, joan egin behar du.

Even though she/he doesn't want to, she/he definitely has to go.

Note that **egin** when used with other verbs creates emphasis. For example:

Egin egin behar duzu : *You definitely must do it.*

6.4.8.4. TA/DA ERE - ALTHOUGH, EVEN THOUGH, EVEN IF

This construction places the concessive element at the end of the verb participle. Here are some examples:

Jon janaria ez gustatzenDA ERE, asko jaten du.

Although Jon doesn't like food, he eats a lot.

Egunero lantegira joatenDA ERE, gutxi erretzendu.

Although he goes to work everyday, he smokes (very) little.

a)

Jon zuk esan duzuN BEZALA dago.

Jon is how you said he is. {as in sick; expl.}

b)

Jon zuk esan duzuN BEZALAKOA da.

Jon is like you said he is. {as in the way that Jon is - happy, pessimistic; expl.}

The two forms respond to two different questions (see 4.1.):

a) **NOLA dago Jon?**

: Jon zuk esan duzuN BEZALA dago (nekatuta).

Jon is how you said he was (tired).

b) **NOLAKOA da Jon?**

: Jon zuk esan duzuN BEZALAKOA da (ona).

Jon is like you said he is (sympathetic).

If you are unsure of which to use, all clauses made with **-N BEZALA** can be substituted with an adverb (**ondo, txarto...**), and the clauses made with the form **-N BEZALAKO** can be substituted with an adjective (**ona, txarra...**). Here are some examples:

Egin nahi duzuN BEZALA.

Do it **how** you want.

Ekarri duteN BEZALA eraman dute.

They have taken it **how** they brought it {eg. by car; expl.}

Ekarri duteNA BEZALAKOA eraman dute.

They have taken **one like the one** they brought {eg. a big one; expl.}

Ahal izan duguN BEZALA egin dugu.

We did it **how** we could.

Zuk esan duzuN BEZALA gertatu da.

It happened **how** you said it (would).

Esan zenidaN BEZALA erosi dut; epeka.

I have bought it **how** you told me to; (by) hire purchase.

Esan zenidaNA BEZALAKOA erosi dut; handia eta merkea.

I bought **one like the one** you told me (about); big and cheap.

Nire zapatak hor daudeNAK BEZALAKOAK dira.

My shoes are **like the ones** that are over there.

As shown in these examples, the form **-N BEZALAKO** has two possibilities:

a) **Jon zuk esan duzuN BEZALAKOA da** : Jon is **like** you said he is.

b) **Jon zuk esan duzuNA BEZALAKOA da** : Jon is **like the one** (person) that you said (he is like).

In example b) Jon is compared to the relative clause enclosed in braces:

Jon {zuk esan duzuN (mutil)A} BEZALAKOA da.

zu BEZALA / zu BEZALAKO(A)

These modal constructions can have a reduced form, omitting the verb which is implied through the context. Here are some examples:

Zuk (egin duzuN) BEZALA egin dut	-	Zuk BEZALA egin dut.
I did like you (did it).		I did it like you.
Zu (zareN) BEZALAKOA da	-	Zu BEZALAKOA da.
You are like her (she is).		You are like her.

Eta Amaia berandu, beti BEZALA.

And Amaia late, as always.

Zuk BEZALA egingo dut.

I will do it like you.

Zure alaba zu BEZALAKOA da.

Your daughter is like you.

Hau zurea BEZALAKOA da.

This is like yours.

Ni ere zuek BEZALA nago.

I also am the same as you {pl.}.

Zureak BEZALAKO batzuk erosi ditut.

I have bought some like yours.

Etxean BEZALA, inon ere ez.

As at home, nowhere.

EZ BEZALA / EZ BEZALAKOA

In Euskara, to express *unlike, different from/different than/different to* **EZ BEZALA / EZ BEZALAKO** are the structures to use. Here are some examples:

Nik zuk EZ BEZALA egin dut.

I have done it **differently to** {not like; lit.} you.

Nik, zuk EZ BEZALA, lan egiten dut.

I, **unlike** you, do work.

Ni zu EZ BEZALAKOa naiz.

I am **different to** you.

Nik, zuk EZ BEZALA, ondo egin dut.

I, **unlike** you, have done it well.

Hau, zurea EZ BEZALA, oso merkea da.

This (one) **unlike** yours, is very cheap.

Nirea zurea EZ BEZALAKOA da.

Mine is **different to** yours.

Hauek beste horiek EZ BEZALAKOAK dira.

These are **not like** those other ones.

6.4.9.2. -N MODUAN / -N MODUKO(A) - AS, IN THE WAY, HOW

These two forms are very similar to the ones we have just looked at. Here are some examples:

Utzi dagoeN MODUAN.

Leave it/him as it/he is.

Nahi duzuN MODUAN egin.

Do it **how** you want.

Zuk esan duzuN MODUAN zegoen: guztiz apurtuta.

It was **how** you said: completely broken.

Zuk esan duzuN MODUKOA da: baxua, lodia eta itsusia.

She/he is as you said: short, fat and ugly.

Zuk esan duzuNA MODUKOA da.

She/he is **like** (the person) you said.

zuRE MODUAN / zuRE MODUKO(A) - your way, like you

This construction also has contracted forms. The ending used as a reference takes the case of **NOREN**. Here are some examples:

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---|---|
| a) JosuREN MODUAN egin dut | = | Josuk BEZALA egin dut.
I did it like Josu. |
| b) JosuREN MODUKOA da | = | Josu BEZALAKOA da.
He is like Josu. |

Semeak aitaREN MODUKOAK dira.

The sons are **like** the father.

NIRE MODUAN egingo dut.

I will do it **my way**.

Anaia ere aitaREN MODUKOA da.

The brother also is **like** the father.

Nork BERE MODUAN egiten ditu gauzak.

Each one {who; lit.} does things **in their own way**.

When this construction uses spatial or temporal expressions, these are declined in the case of **NONGO**. For example:

Zu betiKO MODUAN, adarra jotzen.

You, as **always**, are pulling (my) leg. {pulling (my) hom; lit.}

Gauzak hemen betiKO MODUAN daude.

Here things are as always.

IazKO MODUAN egin ditugu.

We have done it like last year.

6.4.9.3. -T(Z)EKO MODUAN / -T(Z)EKO MODUKO(A) - ABOUT TO, ABOUT ENOUGH

This structure is made by taking the nominalised verb as a base (5.10.4.). Here are some examples:

JaTEKO MODUAN dago.

She/he is about to eat it.

Ez nago barre egiTEKO MODUAN.

I am not about to [do] laugh.

Oraindik ez dago jaikiTZEKO MODUAN.

Still she/he is not about to get up.

Edonor beldurTZEKO MODUKOA da.

It is about enough to frighten anyone.

Dozena bat erosTEKO MODUKOAK dira.

They are about enough to buy a dozen.

Hori birritan pentsaTZEKO MODUKOA da.

That is enough to think about it twice.

6.4.9.4. -NEZ - ACCORDING TO (WHAT), APPARENTLY, AS, LIKE, FROM WHAT

This construction is used to make modal clauses of the form *as...like, apparently, as, like, according to (what)...* in English. It is made by adding the suffix **-NEZ** to the auxiliary verb. Here are some examples:

DirudieNEZ, ez dakite ezer.

It seems like they don't know anything.

Ikus daitekeeneNEZ, oso erraza da.

As can be seen, it is very easy.

Ikus dezakezuNEZ, zuzen nengoen.

As you can see, I was in the right.

Esan diguteNEZ, hemen bizi da.

According to what they tell us, she/he lives here.

Entzun dudaNEZ, ez dago zer eginik.

According to what I've heard, (there) is nothing {not what; lit.} to do (here).

DioteneNEZ, amazteak hil zuen.

According to what they are saying, the wife killed him/her/it.

Bistan deNEZ, oker dago.

As it is obvious, she/he/it is bad.

Nik dakidaNEZ, hori ez da egia.

From what I know, that isn't true.

Niri dagokidaNEZ, ez dago arazorik.

On my part, it is not (a) [any] problem.

Nik dakidaNEZ / Nik dakidaLA

You should not confuse these two expressions, even though they are very similar to each other. Here is an example:

a) **Nik dakidaNEZ, ez da etorri** : From what I know, she/he hasn't come.

b) **Nik dakidaLA, ez da etorri** : What I know, she/he hasn't come.

Example a) means that according to the data that we have, everything indicates that she/he hasn't come. Example b), on the other hand, means that we don't have any data that indicates that she/he has come. Here are some more examples:

Guk dakiguNEZ, ondo dago : From what we know, she/he is good.

Guk dakiguLA, ondo dago : What we know, she/he is good.

6.4.9.5. -N LEGEZ - LIKE, AS

This form is used more in the Biscayan dialect, and is similar to **-N BEZALA** in meaning and use. It is formed by adding **-N LEGEZ** to the auxiliary verb, and is usually pronounced [lez]. Here are some examples:

Nahi duzuN LEGEZ egin dezakezu.

You can do it as you want.

Berak idazten dueN LEGEZ idaztea ez da batere erraza.

To write like she/he writes is not at all easy.

Irakasleak esan zueN LEGEZ egin behar ditugu.

We must do them like the teacher said.

BetiKO LEGEZ egin dut; hau da, zuk nahi duzuN LEGEZ.

I have done it as always; this is, as you want.

6.4.9.6. OTHER FORMS

There are other forms which are used to make modal clauses and as they are similar to the forms we have already studied you should have no problem understanding how they work.

Nik ere aitaREN MODURA egin ditut.

I also have done them like father.

ZuRE ERARA egin ditut.

I have done them your way.

Esan duzuN ERAN (ERARA) egin ditut.

I have done them as you said.

Ondorio GISA esan dezakegu...

As a way of concluding we can say...

Laburpen GISA esango dut...

As a way of summarizing I will say...

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. It is easy to confuse the different forms, in the same way as with **NOLA** and **NOLAKO**. Here are some examples:

Jon is the **same** as you

***Jon zu BEZALA da.**

Jon zu BEZALAKOA da.

It is **as** you said

***Zuk esan duzuN BEZALA da.**

Zuk esan duzuN BEZALAKOA da.

They aren't **like** I thought (they were)

***Ez dira uste nueN BEZALA.**

Ez dira uste nueN BEZALAKOAK.

It is **like** the one you saw

***Ikusi duzuNAREN MODUAN da.**

Ikusi duzuNAREN MODUKOA da.

2. To confuse **ZURE modukoa** (*like you*) with **ZUREAREN modukoa** (*like yours*). Here are some examples:

Hau ZURE modukoa da is not
This (person) is like you.

Hau ZUREAREN modukoa da.
This one is like yours.

JosuREN modukoa da is not
She/he is like Josu

JosuRENAREN modukoa da.
It is like Josu's (one).

6.4.10. COMPARATIVE CLAUSES - *Konparaziozko Perpausak*

Comparative clauses are those that establish a comparison between two or more items. Here is a brief summary of the more frequently used comparatives:

A. *When only one item appears in the statement*

1. Comparing the difference between items ($A \neq B$)

a) -AGO	: Hau handiAGOa da	: This is bigger.
b) -EGI	: Hau handiEGIa da	: This is too big.
c) -EN	: Hau handiENa da	: This is the biggest.

2. When both items are the same (A = B)

Quality: Ez da HAIN txikia : It isn't so small.

Quantity: Ez dago HAINBESTE diru : There isn't so much money.

B. When both items appear in the statement

1. Comparing the difference between items (A ≠ B)

Quality: Ni zu BAINO altuAGOa naiz.
I am taller than you.

Quantity: Nik zuk BAINO diru GEHIAGO/GUTXIAGO daukat.
I have more/less money than you.

2. When both items are the same (A = B)

Quality: Ni zu BEZAIN altua naiz.
I am as tall as you.

Quantity: Nik zuk BESTE diru daukat.
I have as much money as you.

6.4.10.1. -AGO / -EGI / -EN - MORE, TOO MUCH, MOST

These suffixes are used in comparisons where there is only one item. They can be used with adjectives, adverbs and participles.

1. -AGO - MORE

Hori handiAGOa da : That (one) is bigger.
Hauek txikiAGOak dira : These are smaller.
Horiek txartoAGO daude : Those are worse.
Gaur nekatuAGO nago : Today I am more tired.

As shown, the declensions are placed after **-AGO**. And in the case of the participles, it uses the adjectival participle, in other words, without the suffixes **-TA** and **-RIK** (see 4.1.)

ASKOZ ERE ...-AGO - MUCH, A LOT

On the other hand, when you want to accentuate the difference, you would use the form **ASKOZ ERE ...-AGO**. Here are some examples:

Ni ASKOZ ERE zaharrAGOa naiz : I am much older.
Besteak ASKOZ ERE luzeAGOak dira: The others are much longer.

...-XEAGO - A LITTLE BIT

The morpheme **-XE-** can be used to express the concept of *a little bit more*. Here are some examples:

Hau haundiXEagoa da	: This (one) is a little bit bigger.
Ni zu baino gazteXEagoa da	: I am a little bit younger than you.

2. -EGI - TOO MUCH

This form is used in exactly the same way as the previous one, but with a different meaning. Note that this form can be used with adjectives and the infinitive form of some verbs. Here are some examples:

Hori handiEGIa da	: This is too big.
Hauek laburrEGIak dira	: These are too short.
BeroEGI dago	: She/he/it is too hot.
AstiroEGI goaz	: We are going too slowly.
Gaur nekatuEGI nago	: Today I am too tired.

3. -(R)IK ...-EN - MOST

Sometimes the noun phrase qualified by the superlative takes the partitive **-(r)ik**. Here are some examples:

Hau da (arbelIK) handiENA	: This is the largest (blackboard).
Hauek dira (zintaRIK) onENak	: These are the best (tapes).
Hauxe dago ondoEN	: This is best .
Horixe dago apurtuEN	: That is most broken.
Munduko neskaRIK politENA zara	: You are the most beautiful girl (in) {of; lit.} the world.
Jon klaseko mutliIK alferrENA da	: Jon is the laziest boy (in) {of; lit.} class.
UneRIK txarrENA aukeratu du	: She/he has chosen the worst moment.
Hori tontoENak ere badaki	: (Even) the most stupid (person) knows that.
Ni itsusiENarekin geratu nintzen	: I was stuck with the ugliest .

4. Irregular cases

The forms we have seen up till now work for all cases, except for some words that have irregular forms. Here is a table of these:

	on	ondo	txar	txarto	asko
-AGO	hobe	hobeto	txarrago	txartoago	gehiago
-EGI	onegi	ondoegi	txarregi	txartoegi	gehiegi
-EN	onen	ondoan	txarren	txartoen	gehien

The forms **TXAR** and **TXARTO** do not present any irregularities; they have been included to complete the table. The forms **ON**, **ONDO** and **ASKO**, on the other hand, do have irregularities: **more good - better*; **more bad - worse*, etc. In some places, instead of using **ONEN**, **HOBEREN** is used. Here are some examples of the forms in the table:

Nireak HOBEak dira	: Mine are better .
Hauk dira ONENak (HOBERENak)	: These are the best .
Nireak HOBETO daude	: Mine are better .
Gorria GEHIAGO gustatzen zait	: I like the red (one) more .
Hau gustatzen zait GEHIEN	: This (one) I like the most .
Hau GEHIEGI da!	: This is too much!

6.4.10.2. HAIN, HAINBESTE - SO / THAT, SO MUCH / THAT MANY

These forms are used to express qualitative and quantitative comparisons respectively, when one of the items in the comparison is implied. These forms come from the demonstratives and originally were used according to the grammatical person they referenced to.

ni, gu	-	honen	honenbeste
zu, zuek	-	horren	horrenbeste
hura, haiek	-	hain	hainbeste

In these examples ‘so’ could be substituted with ‘this’ or ‘that’ and still be grammatically correct. Here are the examples:

Egia esan, ez da HAIN txarra	: To tell (you) the truth, isn’t so bad. {it isn’t that bad; expl.}
Ez dago HAIN zikin	: It isn’t so dirty.
Ez da HAIN merkea	: It isn’t so cheap.
Ez gara HONEN inozoak	: We aren’t so innocent.
Ez zarete HORREN txarrak	: You {pl.} aren’t so bad.
Ez daukate HAINBESTE diru_	: They don’t have so much money.
Ez da HAINBESTE jende_ etorri	: Not that many people have come.
Zer egingo dut HONENBESTE diruZ?	: What will I do (with) so much money?
Ez duzu HORRENBESTE lan egiten	: You don’t work that much .

Note that the word which is qualified by **honenbeste**, **horrenbeste** or **hainbeste** is declined in the indeterminate (**mugagabe**) case.

6.4.10.3. BAINO ...-AGO

This form is used to establish a comparison between two or more items which are present in the clause. It can be quantitative as well as qualitative, and establishes an un-equal comparison between the terms ($A \neq B$).

1. Quality

This type of comparison is made according to the following template. The first element (A) can vary its position:

A + B + BAINO -AGO

Here are some examples:

Ni zu BAINO altuAGOA naiz.

I am taller **than** you.

Gaur atzo BAINO lasaiAGO nago.

I am calmer today **than** yesterday.

Hori ez da hau BAINO handiAGOA.

That is not bigger **than** this.

Nire gurasoak zureak BAINO zaharrAGOAK dira.

My parents are **older than** yours.

Hau hori BAINO apurtuAGO dago

This one is **more** broken than that.

When the difference between both terms needs to be emphasized, the form **ASKOZ ERE ...-AGO** is used. For example:

Zu ni BAINO ASKOZ ERE indartxuAGOA zara.

You are **much** stronger **than** I.

Hori besteak BAINO ASKOZ ERE politAGOA da.

That (one) is **much** prettier **than** the others.

Gaur atzo BAINO ASKOZ ERE nekatuAGO nago.

Today I am a **lot more** tired **than** yesterday.

As shown in the previous examples, there is one form in Euskara (**BAINO ...-AGO**), whereas in English there are two: *more than / less than*. So, to express *I am less tall than you* in Euskara, you would use the form **Zu ni BAINO altuAGOA zara**: *You are taller than me*, or, **Ni ez naiz zu BEZAIN altua**: *I am not as tall as you*.

2. Quantity

In the situation of comparing quantities, there are two possibilities depending on whether the major term is first or second. The first element (A) can vary in position. Here are some examples:

(A > B) : A + B + **BAINO** (.....) **GEHIAGO**
 (A < B) : A + B + **BAINO** (.....) **GUTXIAGO**

Nik zuk BAINO diru GEHIAGO daukat.

I have **more** money **than** you.

Gaur atzo BAINO jende GUTXIAGO etorri da.

Today **less** people came **than** yesterday.

Gaur inoiz BAINO GEHIAGO edan dut.

Today I have drunk **more than** ever before {anytime; lit.}.

Horrek BAINO GEHIAGO dakit NIK.

I know **more than** that (person).

Zuek ez duzue guk BAINO GEHIAGO irabazten.

You {pl.} have not won **more than** us.

Pisu honek besteak BAINO hiru gela GUTXIAGO dauzka.

This floor has three rooms **less than** the other (one).

Here are the features of this construction that are the cause of many mistakes:

- Both items have the same case ending (**niK zuK, honEK besteAK...**)
- The word which is placed in front of **GEHIAGO / GUTXIAGO** is put in the indeterminate form (**diru, jende, gela...**)

As in the previous case, when you want to re-enforce the difference you use **ASKOZ ERE**. For example:

Horrek nik BAINO ASKOZ ERE diru GEHIAGO irabazten du.

That (person) earns **much more** money **than** I (do).

Atzo igandean BAINO ASKOZ ERE jende GUTXIAGO etorri zen.

Yesterday **a lot fewer** people came **than** on Sunday.

6.4.10.4. BEZAIN / BESTE(ADINA) - AS...AS

In equal comparatives there are also two types, according to whether they are qualitative or quantitative.

1. Qualitative

To express a qualitative comparison between two equal items, the form **BEZAIN** is used. The first element (A) can vary in position. Here are some examples:

A + B + **BEZAIN** + (.....)

Here are examples:

Ni ez naiz zu BEZAIN altua.

I am not as tall as you.

Gaurko partidua ez da lehengo egunekoa BEZAIN ona izan.

Today's game was not as good as the (one the) previous day.

Nirea ez da zurea BEZAIN ona.

Mine is not as good as yours.

Hau bestea BEZAIN txarra da.

This is as bad as the other.

2. Quantity

The quantitative comparison between two equal items is expressed by **BESTE (ADINA)**. The first element (A) can vary in position. Here are some examples:

A + B + BESTE (ADINA) + (.....)

Here are some examples:

Etxean hemen BESTE (ADINA) liburu daukat.

At home I have as many books as here.

Nik ez dut zuk BESTE (ADINA) diru irabazten.

I don't earn as much money as you.

Gaur ez da atzo BESTE (ADINA) jende etorri.

Today not as many people have come as yesterday.

Nik Gasteizen hemen BESTE (ADINA) lagun daukat.

I have as many friends in Gasteiz as here.

You should note two characteristics of this construction which lead to many mistakes:

- a) Both items are declined in the same case (**niK zuK, niri zuri...**)
- b) The word which goes after **BESTE** always takes the indeterminate form (**diru, liburu, jende...**)

In some places, instead of using **BESTE** other forms are used such as: **ADINA, HAINA, BEZAINBAT**, and **HAINBAT**. It is enough to substitute **BESTE** for any of them, as they are exactly the same.

6.4.10.5. COMPARATIVE EXPRESSIONS

In this section we are going to study some frequently used comparative constructions.

ZERA BAINO ...-AGO - than I don't know what

ZERA BAINO motelAGO etorri gara; gezurra dirudi!

We have come slower **than I don't know what**; it seems like a lie!

ZERA BAINO alferrAGOa da!

She/he is **more lazy than I don't know what!**

Zer moduz azterketa? ZERA BAINO errazAGOa izan da.

How was the exam? It was **easier than I don't know what.**

ARE ...-AGO - EVEN MORE, EVEN LESS

Hori txarra bada, hau ARE txarrAGOa.

If that one is bad, this is **even worse.**

Nik erosi egingo nuke. Eta ARE gehiAGO zeure kasuan.

I would buy it. And **even more so** in your case.

Amak ez dit utziko, eta aitak ARE gutxiAGO.

Mother isn't going to leave me (alone), and the father **even less so.**

GERO ETA ...-AGO - EACH TIME...MORE, MORE AND MORE

GERO ETA HOBETO egiten duzu.

Each time you do it **better.**

Ni GERO ETA urduriAGO nago.

Each time I am **more nervous.**

Galderak GERO ETA zailAGOak dira.

The questions are **harder and harder.**

LAR handia - TOO

The particle **LAR** has a similar meaning to the suffix **-EGI** which was studied in this section. Here is an example of its use:

Hori LAR handia da : That (one) is **too big.**

Beste hauek LAR txikiAK dira : Those other (ones) are **too small.**

Ez naiz LAR ondo sentitzen : I don't feel **too well.**

AHALIK ETA ...-EN(A) - AS...AS POSSIBLE

AHALIK ETA lasterrEN joango naiz : I will go **as soon as possible.**

Guk AHALIK ETA ondoEN egin dugu : We did it **as well as (it is) possible.** {lit.}

AHALIK ETA onENak aukeratu ditut : I chose the best ones **possible.**

AHALBAIT ...-EN(A) - AS...AS POSSIBLE

AHALBAIT lasterrEN joango naiz	: I will go as soon as possible.
AHALBAIT ondoEN egin dugu	: We have done it as good as possible. {lit.}
AHALBAIT arinEN etorri gara	: We came as quickly as possible.

TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK

1. It is common to confuse **HOBE** and **HOBETO** using one instead of the other. Note that **HOBE** is an adjective (and responds to the question **NOLAKO**), while **HOBETO** is an adverb (and responds to the question **NOLA**):

ON	+	-AGO	-	HOBE
ONDO	+	-AGO	-	HOBETO

Here are some examples of this incorrect use:

It is better like this	*HOBETO da horrela. HOBE da horrela.
It is better not to go	*HOBETO da ez joatea. HOBE da ez joatea.
This is better	*Hau HOBETO da. Hau HOBEa da.

If the reference uses **ON** then you will use **HOBE**; and if it uses **ONDO** then you will use **HOBETO**. You can also follow these rules:

EGON	-	HOBETO	(HOBETO dago.)
IZAN	-	HOBE	(HOBE da.)

2. It is also common to use ***HOBEAGO(A)** instead of **HOBE(A)**. Here are some examples:

That one is better	*Hori HOBEAGOA da. Hori HOBEA da.
Those others are better	*Beste hauek HOBEAGOAK dira. Beste hauek HOBEAK dira.

3. Another incorrect use of comparatives is to apply the suffix **-AGO** to the adverbial participles made with **-TA**. For example:

I am more tired than you	*Ni zu baino NEKATUTAGO nago. Ni zu baino NEKATUAGO nago.
These are more broken {lit.}	*Hauek HONDATUTAGO daude. Hauek HONDATUAGO daude.

4. Another mistake is to treat qualitative comparatives as though they were quantitative. For example:

That one is bigger

***Hura handi GEHIAGO da.**

Hura handiAGOa da.

These are taller

***Hauek altu GEHIAGO dira.**

Hauek altuAGOak dira.

5. Another mistake is to decline in the determinate form the word which indicates what is being compared, when it must be in the indeterminate form. For example:

Where have you seen so much money?

***Non ikusi duzu hainbeste DIRUA?**

Non ikusi duzu hainbeste DIRU?

I have more money than you

***Zuk baino DIRUA gehiago daukat.**

Zuk baino DIRU gehiago daukat.

Today there are as many people as
yesterday.

***Gaur atzo beste JENDEA dago.**

Gaur atzo beste JENDE dago.

I have as many books as you

***Nik zuk beste LIBURUAK dauzkat.**

Nik zuk beste LIBURU daukat.

6. It is also common, though incorrect, to decline the endings of the comparison terms in different declensions. For example:

I know more than you

***NIK ZU baino gehiago dakit.**

NIK ZUK baino gehiago dakit.

I have as much money as that (person)

***NIK HORI beste diru daukat.**

NIK HORREK beste diru daukat.

Jon has more than me

***JonEK NI baino gehiago dauka.**

JonEK NIK baino gehiago dauka.

VII

NOTIONS & ELEMENTS

- Nozioak eta Osagaiak

7.1. THE NOTION OF TIME - Denbora-Nozioa

The general notion of time can be conceived of in a number of basic different ways.

- (i) A point in time is expressed by **ordu** or **tenore**; **Zer ordu/tenore da?** *What time is it?*
- (ii) A specific period of time is expressed by **denbora** or **garai**; **garai honetan:** *in these times.*
- (iii) A general duration of time is expressed by **aldi**; **denbora aldi** : *period of time*; **euluraldi** : *period of snowing.*
- (iv) Repeated occasions are expressed by **aldiz** or **bider**; **hiru aldiz** : *three times.*
- (v) Instances of repeated occasions are expressed by using the ordinal numbers; **laugarren aldiz** : *fourth time.*

Expressions of time in Euskara use the same declension cases as those for space (**NON**, **NONDIK**, **NORA**, **NONGO**, **NORAKO**), however the interrogatives are different as shown here:

NOIZ?	When?	(NON)
NOIZTIK?	Since when?	(NONDIK)
NOIZKO?	Of when?	(NONGO)
	For when?	(NORAKO)
NOIZ ARTE?	Until when?	(NORAINO)

The following sections give detailed discussions of these concepts and their application.

7.1.1. NOIZ - WHEN

The question **NOIZ?** can be answered with a time adverb or with a noun declined in the case of **NON**:

<i>Nouns</i>	-	-AN	: astelehenEAN, urteAN...
<i>Adverbs</i>	-	- ø	: atzo, gaur, beti, iaz...

In this template we used the singular, as it is the most common form, but it is possible to decline phrases in the other cases. For example:

Sing.	IgandeAN joango da	: She/he will go on Sunday.
Plur.	IgandeETAN joaten da	: She/he usually goes on Sundays.
Indef:	Hiru igandeTAN joan da	: She/he has gone on three Sundays.

Here are some more examples:

NOIZ hasiko da ikastaroa? BIHAR hasiko da.

When will the course start? It will start **tomorrow**.

NOIZ etorriko zara, larunbatEAN? Ez, igandeAN etorriko naiz.

When will you come, **on Saturday?** No, I will come **on Sunday**.

Datorren asteAN azterketa bat daukat.

I have an exam [**in**] next week.

Gernikako azoka astelehenETAN izaten da.

The Gernika market is (usually) **on Mondays**.

Lehengo egunEAN istripu bat ikusi nuen.

[**On**] the other day I saw an accident.

7.1.2. NOIZTIK (NOIZDANIK) - SINCE WHEN

Both of these forms are equivalent, and in both cases the response is made in the declension of **NONDIK**. Here are some examples:

NOIZTIK (NOIZDANIK) zaude hemen? AtzoTIK (atzoDANIK).

Since **when** have you been here? **Since** yesterday.

NOIZTIK (NOIZDANIK) ez duzu erretzen, ba? Joan den asteTIK.

Since **when** don't you smoke, then? **Since** last week.

AstelehenETIK ez dut ikusi.

I haven't seen him/her **since** Monday.

Nik betiDANIK jakin dut hori.

I have known that for ever. {**since** always; lit.}

AtzoTIK ez dut ikusi.

I haven't seen her/him **since** yesterday.

Lehenengo egunETATIK nago hemen.

I have been here **since** the first days.

As shown in these examples, in some cases you use **-TIK**, and in others **-DANIK**. As a general rule, you can follow this norm: (Note that there are a lot of exceptions.)

<i>Nouns</i>	-	-TIK	: igandeTIK, asteTIK...
<i>Adverbs</i>	-	-DANIK	: betiDANIK, biharDANIK...

Even though we only used singular forms in the examples, note that these words can use any of the cases. For example:

<i>Sing.</i>	:	igandeTIK	: since Sunday.
<i>Plur.</i>	:	igandeETATIK	: since the Sundays.
<i>Indef.</i>	:	hiru igandeTATIK	: since three Sundays.

7.1.3. NOIZKO - FROM WHEN, FOR WHEN

This form has two different meanings, according to the case:

- | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. NOIZKOA da? | : From when is it? | (NONGO) |
| 2. NOIZKO da? | : For when is it? | (NORAKO) |

7.1.3.1. NOIZKO? (FROM WHEN?)

You respond to this question in the case of **NONGO**, when the question refers to nouns or adverbs. Here are some examples:

NOIZKO ogia da hau? Hau atzoKO ogia da.

From when is this bread? This is yesterday's bread.

Ogi hau NOIZKOA da? Ogi hori gaurKOA da.

This bread from when is it? That bread is from today.

Gaur gauEKO pelikula oso ona dela esan didate.

They have told me that tonight's movie is very good.

Badaukazue igandeKO egunkaria?

Do you {pl.} have Sunday's paper?

Ikusten duzu larunbatETAKO pelikula?

Do you (usually) see the Saturday[']s film?

Hori betiKO kontua da.

That is always the subject. {This is the subject of always; lit.}

As shown in these examples, there are two different ways in which to ask a question, and in which to answer correspondingly:

a) **Hau NOIZKO ogia da?**

Hori GAURKO ogia da.

b) **Ogi hau NOIZKOA da?**

Ogi hori GAURKOA da.

7.1.3.2. NOIZKO? (FOR WHEN?)

This response to **NOIZKO** can have two different forms, depending on whether it is a noun or an adverb, as shown here:

Nouns - **-RAKO** : **igandeRAKO, urteRAKO...**

Adverbs - **-KO** : **noizKO, geroKO, atzoKO...**

These are not any absolute rules, as there are alternative constructions, but they are the most common forms. Here are some examples:

NOIZKO amaituko duzu lana? GaurKO edo biharKO, ziur.

When will you finish the work [for]? [For] today or tomorrow, for sure.

NOIZKO egongo da hemen? Datorren asteRAKO edo hurrengoRAKO.

[For] when will she/he be here? [For] next week or the following.

Gauzak ez dira betiKO.

Things aren't for ever.

NOIZKO geratu gara, ostiralERAKO ala larunbatERAKO?

When do we stay [for], for Friday or Saturday?

Honekin badaukagu hiru orduTARAKO.

With this we have (enough) for three hours.

EtziKO amaitu behar dugu.

We must finish for the day after tomorrow.

7.1.4. NOIZ ARTE - UNTIL WHEN

You can respond to the question **NOIZ ARTE?**: *Until when?* in two different ways:

a) -RA ARTE : **igandeRA ARTE, hurrengoRA ARTE...**

b) - ø ARTE : **gero ARTE, hurrengo ARTE...**

The most common convention for usage of these two forms is:

Nouns - -RA ARTE : **igandeRA ARTE...**

Adverbs - - ø ARTE : **bihar ARTE...**

However it goes without saying that there are a lot of exceptions to these constructions, and there are many nouns that take **ARTE** without the declension of **NORA** (**zazpiak ARTE, gabonak ARTE, hurrengo ARTE, igande ARTE...**).

Here are some examples:

NOIZ ARTE egongo zara hemen?

Until when will you be here?

AstelehenERA ARTE ez dute zabaltzen.

They are not open until Monday.

Agur, bihar ARTE, edo hurrengoRA ARTE.

Goodbye, until tomorrow, or [until] the next day.

Datorren asteRA ARTE ez naiz etorriko.

I won't come until the next week.

Orain ARTE (orainDAINO) ez dut inor ikusi.

Until now I haven't seen anybody.

Gaur ARTE (gaurDAINO) ez dut ezer jakin.

Until today I haven't known anything.

Other uses of **ARTE** are presented in sections 6.4.7.9. and 4.5.6.

NOIZ ARTE is not NORAINO

As shown in the last two examples, **NORAINO** can also be used to express time in some expressions, for example:

ORAINDAINO (ORAINO)	: until now
GAURDAINO	: until today
EGUNDAINO (EGUNDO)	: until today, never
AZKENERAINO	: until the end
AMAIERARAINO	: until the end
BUKAERARAINO	: until the end

However to ask questions you don't use **NORAINO**, but rather **NOIZ ARTE**, and, apart from a few exceptions, it is preferable to use **ARTE** to express time, leaving **NORAINO** to express notions of space. For example:

IgandeRA ARTE egongo naiz hemen	: I will be here until [to] Sunday.
Jonen etxeRAINO joan naiz	: I went up to {until/as far as} Jon's house.

7.1.5. MAIZTASUNA - FREQUENCY**7.1.5.1. NOIZETIK, NOIZERA - FROM WHEN, TO WHEN**

These constructions can be used for two different meanings:

- a)
Ikastaroa astelehenETIK ostiralERA izango da.
The course will be from Monday to Friday.
- b)
Sendagaia lau orduTATIK lau orduTARA hartu behar duzu
You must take the medicine every four hours. {from 4 hours to 4 hours; lit.}

Here are some examples:

- NOIZETIK NOIZERA iragaten da autobusa?**
How often does the bus pass by? {From when to when...;lit.}
- NOIZETIK NOIZERA hartu behar dut jarabea?**
How often do I have to take the cough mixture? {From when to when...;lit.}
- BostETIK zortziRA kanpoan egongo naiz.**
From (day) five to (day) eight I will be out [side].
- BostETATIK zortziETARA kanpoan izango naiz.**
From five to eight (o'clock) I will be out [side]. {I will be outside from 5 to 8 (o'clock); lit.}

Autobusa ordu erdiTIK ordu erdiRA iragaten da.

The bus passes by every half hour. {from half hour to half hour; lit.}

Trenak hamar minutuTIK hamar minutuRA irtetzen dira.

The trains leave every ten minutes. {from 10 minutes to 10 minutes; lit.}

7.1.5.2. NOIZERO - HOW OFTEN

As well as the form we have just studied, **NOIZERO** is used to express *how often*. This question is answered with the suffix **-ERO/ -ORO**. Here is an example:

NOIZERO ureztatu behar dira landareak? AstERO.

Every how often must the plants be watered? Every week.

Here are some other well used forms:

egunERO	: every day	astelehenERO	: every Monday
astERO	: every week	asteartERO	: every Tuesday
hilabetERO	: every month	asteazkenERO	: every Wednesday
urtERO	: every year	ostegunERO	: every Thursday
goizERO	: every morning	ostiralERO	: every Friday
gauERO	: every night	larunbatERO	: every Saturday
uneORO	: every moment	igandERO	: every Sunday
segundORO	: every second	arratsaldERO	: every afternoon
minutuORO	: every minute	asteburuORO	: every weekend
orduORO	: every hour		

Here are some examples:

NOIZERO aldatu behar da olio?

How often must the oil be changed?

Ni oinez etortzen naiz EGUNERO.

I walk here every day. {I come by foot every day; lit.}

URTERO joaten naiz San Ferminetara.

Every year I go to San Fermin {a festival in Irunca; expl.}.

Gu ostiralERO biltzen gara.

We meet every Friday.

AsteburuORO joaten naiz mendira.

Every weekend I go to the mountains.

Ordu erdiORO daukazu autobusa.

Every half hour you have a bus.

AsteRO aldatu behar duzu.

You must change it every week.

Hogei minutuORO aldatu behar da ura.

The water must be changed every twenty minutes.

7.1.5.3. ZENBATETAN? ASKOTAN - HOW MANY TIMES? MANY TIMES

To express the frequency with which something happens the suffix **-TAN** is used, which is the indefinite form of the declension **NON**. It is used to respond to the question **ZENBATETAN?**: *How many times?*. Here are some of the most usual forms:

zenbateTAN?	: How many times?	biTAN	: two times
gutxiTAN	: few times	birriTAN	: two times
askoTAN	: many times	hiruTAN	: three times
batzueTAN	: some times	lauTAN	: four times
gehiagoTAN	: more times	bostETAN	: five times
gutxiagoTAN	: less times	hogeiTAN	: twenty times
zenbaiteTAN	: some times	sarriTAN	: frequently
hainbatETAN	: quantity of times {note: this sometimes refers to 'a lot of times'}		
inoiz gutxiTAN	: almost never		
gehieneTAN	: the majority of the times {most of the time}		

This form can be used with any number except for **BAT**, which takes the form **BEHIN - once**. Note also that to say *two times* there are two possible ways: **BITAN** and **BIRRI-TAN**. Here are some examples:

ZenbateTAN joan zara hara? AskoTAN.

How many times have you gone [to] there? Many times.

ZenbateTAN ikusi duzu? BEHIN ere ez.

How many times have you seen her/him/it. Not once.

Hori BEHIN baino gehiagoTAN gertatzen da.

That (usually) happens more times than once.

BATZUETAN egiten dugu, BESTETAN ez.

Sometimes we do it, other times (we don't) {not other times; lit.}.

7.1.5.4. ZENBAT ALDIZ? (ZENBAT BIDER?) - HOW MANY TIMES

Another way to express frequency is to use the words **ALDIZ** (times) and **BIDER** (times). Here are some examples:

Zenbat ALDIZ (BIDER) esan behar dizut gauza bera?

How many times must I tell you the (same) thing?

Hiru BIDER (ALDIZ) egin dut eta hirurETAN okertu naiz.

I have done it three times, and (all) three times I (did it) wrong. {I am wrong; lit.}

Lau ALDIZ (BIDER) errepikatu behar izan dut.

I must repeat it four times.

As there is only one way to say *once*: **BEHIN**, the following are always incorrect: ***aldiz bat**, ***bider bat**.

On the other hand, the expressions *one thousand times*, *one million times* in English (a thousand, a million - equivalent to a lot of times in meaning) is made with **HAMAIIKA** (*eleven*). This expression goes back to times when the number *eleven* was evidently very large. In English we often use the term “dozens of times” to refer to performing many repetitions of an act. Here are some examples:

HAMAIIKA aldiz (bider) esan diot; baina alferrik.

I have told her/him a million times; but in vain.

Hori buruz dakit, HAMAIIKA bider (aldiz) egin dut eta.

I know that off by heart {head; lit.}, because I have done it a thousand times.

asteAN BEHIN - ONCE IN A WEEK

In Euskara you use the expressions **asteAN BEHIN**, **urteAN biTAN...** to express *once a week*, *twice a year*.. These expressions are made by declining the word referencing time in the singular form of the case **NON** (**asteAN**, **urteAN...**) {*once in a week*, *once in a year*; lit.}, followed by the forms studied in this section. Here are some examples:

UrteAN BEHIN ospatzen dugu.

We celebrate it once a year.

AsteAN BEHIN edo BITAN joaten gara zinetokira.

We (usually) go to the cinema once or twice a week.

HilabeteAN hiruTAN (hiru aldiz) etortzen dira.

They (usually) come three times a month.

7.1.5.5. ORAINGOAN / GAURKOAN - THIS TIME

In Euskara you don't use the form ***aldi honetan** to express *this time*, *on this occasion*. You use **ORAINGOAN** or **GAURKOAN**. For example:

ORAINGOAN ondo atera zait

This time {now; impl.} it has come out well for me.

GAURKOAN ez dut huts egingo

This time {today; impl.} I will not fail. {I will not make (a) mistake; lit.}

7.1.5.6. OTHER FORMS

As well as the forms we have studied so far, there are a lot of expressions used to describe frequency (**maiztasuna**). Here is a table of the most usual expressions, ordered according to the grade of frequency that they express:

FREQUENCY

EGUNDO	: never
SEKULA EZ	: never ever
INOIZ EZ	: never
BEHIN ERE EZ	: not even once
INOIZ GUTXITAN	: almost never
GUTXITAN	: few times
NOIZEAN BEHIN	: every now and again
NOIZIK BEHIN	: every now and again
LANTZEAN BEHIN	: every now and again
NOIZ BEHINKA	: every now and then
NORMALEAN	: normally
ESKUARKI	: normally
MAIZ	: with frequency {lit.}
SARRI(TAN)	: frequently, often
ASKOTAN	: many times
GEHIENETAN	: the majority of the time(s)
IA BETI	: almost always
BETI (ERE)	: always

SUMMARY - LABURPENA

Here is a table of the forms we have studied in this section. It presents some exceptions, so if you are in doubt about a construction then you can refer to this table, and know all of the forms are correct.

	Adverbs	Nouns
NOIZ	bihar	igandeAN
NOIZTIK	bharTIK	igandeTIK
NOIZKO (of)	biharKO	igandeKO
(for)	biharKO	igandeRAKO
NOIZ ARTE	bihar_ARTE	igandeRA ARTE

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. To decline days of the week in the case of **NOR** instead of **NON**. For example:

Sunday is a good day
The party is on Sunday

IgandeA egun ona da.(NOR)
Jaia igandeAN da.(NON)

Here are some examples of this:

I will go **on** Monday

***AstelehenA joango naiz.**
AstelehenEAN joango naiz.

The term ends **on** Tuesday

***Epea astearteA amaitzen da.**
Epea astearteAN amaitzen da.

On Friday I have dinner

***Ostirala afaria daukat.**
Ostiralan afaria daukat.

2. Another mistake is to transliterate expressions such as *one time, this time, a million times*, etc. Here are some examples:

I have only seen her **once**

***Bakarrik ikusi dut ALDIZ BAT.**
BEHIN bakarrik ikusi dut.

This time I myself will go

***ALDI HONETAN neu joango naiz.**
ORAINGOAN neu joango naiz.

I have told her/him **a thousand times**

***MILA ALDIZ esan diot.**
HAMAIIKA ALDIZ esan diot.

3. It is also common to transliterate expressions such as *all of the days, all of the years* instead of using the suffix **-ERO**. Here are some examples:

I go **every day**

***Ni egun GUZTIETAN joaten naiz.**
Ni EGUNERO joaten naiz.

We (usually) go **every year**

***Urte GUZTIETAN joaten gara.**
URTERO joaten gara.

7.2. THE TIME - *Ordua, Tenore*

In the same way as **NOIZ** is used, the time of day can be also declined in different cases. It is expressed by **ORDU** or **TENORE**. Here are the alternatives:

- | | | | |
|----|-----------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. | Zer ordua DA? | : What time is it? | |
| 2. | Zer ordua TAN? | : At what time? | (NOIZ) |
| 3. | Zer ordua TATIK? | : From what time? | (NOIZTIK) |
| 4. | Zer ordua TARA? | : To what time? | (NOIZERA) |
| 5. | Zer ordua TAKOA? | : From what time? | (NOIZKO) |
| 6. | Zer ordua TARAKO? | : For what time? | (NOIZKO) |
| 7. | Zer ordua TARA ARTE? | : Until what time? | (NOIZ ARTE) |

7.2.1. ZER ORDUA DA? - WHAT IS THE TIME {HOUR; lit.}

ZER ORDU DA?
What time is it?

ZAZPI T'ERDIAK dira.
It is seven thirty.

This form uses the nominative declension (**NOR**). Here is a chart:

1.00	ordu bata	1.05	Ordu bat	eta bost	
2.00	ordu biak	2.10	Ordu biak	eta hamar	
3.00	hirurak	3.15	Hiru_	eta laurdenAK	
4.00	laurak	4.20	Laurak	eta hogei	
5.00	bostak	5.25	Bostak	eta hogeita bost	
6.00	seiak	6.30	Sei_	t'erdiAK	
7.00	zazpiak	6.35	Zazpiak	hogeita bost	gutxi(ago)
8.00	zortziak	7.40	Zortziak	hogei	gutxi(ago)
9.00	bederatzia	8.45	Bederatzia	aurden	gutxi(ago)
10.00	hamarrak	9.50	Hamarrak	hama	gutxi(ago)
11.00	hamaikak	10.55	Hamaikak	bost	gutxi(ago)
12.00	hamabiak				

It is important to know this form well, as the rest of the forms are derived from it.

The time consists of two parts: the HOUR and the MINUTES.

- | | |
|------------|---|
| a) HOUR | Indicates the hour, and is followed by the plural article -AK . |
| b) MINUTES | Specifies how many minutes are past the hour (ETA) or how many are left until the next hour (GUTXI / GUTXIAGO). |

When using fractions of an hour, such as *and a quarter*, and, *and a half*, the article goes at the end of the expression, as all of the terms are hours, not minutes. So, the number that indicates the hour generally goes without an article. For example:

Ordu bi_	ETA LAURDENAK	2:15	Ordu bi_	T'ERDIAK	2:30
Hamaika_	ETA LAURDENAK	11:15	Hamaika_	T'ERDIAK	11:30
Zazpi_	ETA LAURDENAK	7:15	Zazpi_	T'ERDIAK	7:30

Here are some examples:

Aizu, mesedez, ZER ORDU da? HAMABI T'ERDIAK DIRA.

Hey, please, **what time** is it? **It is twelve thirty.**

Une honetan arratsaldeko ZAZPIAK ETA HOGEI dira.

At this moment it is **seven twenty** in the afternoon.

Goizaldeko ORDU BI T'ERDIAK dira.

It is **two thirty** in the morning.

HAMARRAK ETA HAMAR dira.

It is **ten past ten.**

VARIANTS

Depending on the region, there are slight differences to these forms. The variant forms explained below are also applicable to the forms covered in the remainder of this section. Here are the most important ones:

- In some places **seiRak**, **zazpiRak**, **zortziRak** are used, as with **hiruRak** and **lauRak**. However, they should always be written without the **R**.
- To say *and a quarter ...-AK eta laurdenAK* and *...-AK eta laurden_* are used more than the originals shown above.
- There are two ways to say *the one*: the original **ordu bata**, which is the recommended form, and **ordu batAK** which follows the example of the rest of the forms, which end in **-AK**.
- In the eastern dialects, instead of using **ordu**, they use the form **oren**. For example: **oren bata**, **oren batEAN**, **bi orenAK**, **hiru orenAK**, **hiru oren-ETAN...**
- In eastern dialects hours are declined in the plural: **seiak eta bostEAN**, **seiak eta bostETAN**, **bostak eta hogeIAN** - **bostak eta hogeiETAN...**

7.2.2. ZER ORDUTAN? - AT WHAT TIME

ZER ORDUTAN etorriko zara?
At what time will you come?

Zazpi t'erdietan.
At seven thirty.

This form is obtained by adding the declension of **NON** to the basic forms we studied in the last section. Here are some examples:

1.00	ordu batean	1.05	Ordu bata	eta bostEAN
2.00	ordu bietan	2.10	Ordu biak	eta hamarrEAN
3.00	hiruretan	3.15	Hiru_	eta laurdenETAN
4.00	lauretan	4.20	Laurak	eta hogeian
5.00	bostetan	5.25	Bostak	eta hogeita bostEAN
6.00	seietan	6.30	Sei_	t'erdietan
7.00	zazpitan	6.35	Zazpiak	hogeita bostgutxi(ago)TAN
8.00	zortzietan	7.40	Zortziak	hogeia gutxi(ago)TAN
9.00	bederatzieta	8.45	Bederatziak	laurden gutxi(ago)TAN
10.00	hamarretan	9.50	Hamarrak	hamar gutxi(ago)TAN
11.00	hamaiketan	10.55	Hamaikak	bost gutxi(ago)TAN
12.00	hamabietan			

As shown, the hour and parts of an hour form an indivisible unity, so the suffixes are added at the end of the phrase. Here are some examples:

ZER ORDUTAN zabaltzen dute? Goizeko BEDERATZI T'ERDIETAN.

What time do they open? At nine thirty in the morning.

ZER ORDUTAN dago autobusa? HAMARRAK ETA BOSTEAN dago bat.

At what time is (there) a bus? At five past ten (there) is one.

Aizu, ZER ORDUTAN joango zara? SEIAK BOST GUTXI(AGO)TAN.

Hey, at what time are you going? At five to six.

7.2.3. ZER ORDUTATIK? - FROM/SINCE WHAT TIME?

ZER ORDUTATIK zaude hemen?
From what time (have) you (been) here?

Zazpi t'erdietatik.
From seven thirty.

This form is obtained by adding the declension of **NONDIK** to the basic forms. Here are some examples:

1.00	ordu batetik	1.05	Ordu bata	eta bostETIK
2.00	ordu bietatik	2.10	Ordu biak	eta hamarrETIK
3.00	hiruretatik	3.15	Hiru_	eta laurdenETATIK
4.00	lauretatik	4.20	Laurak	eta hogeITIK
5.00	bostetatik	5.25	Bostak	eta hogeita bostETIK

6.00	seietatik	6.30	Sei_	t'erdietatik	
7.00	zazpjetatik	6.35	Zazpiak	hogeita bost	gutxi(ago)TATIK
8.00	zortzietatik	7.40	Zortziak	hogeia	gutxi(ago)TATIK
9.00	bederatzietatik	8.45	Bederatzia	laurden	gutxi(ago)TATIK
10.00	hamarretatik	9.50	Hamarrak	hamar	gutxi(ago)TATIK
11.00	hamaiketatik	10.55	Hamaikak	bost	gutxi(ago)TATIK
12.00	hamabietatik				

Here are some examples:

ZER ORDUTATIK zaude itxaroten? ZORTZI ETA LAURDENETATIK.

Since when have you been waiting? Since quarter past eight.

ZER ORDUTATIK egongo zara etxean? ORDU BIETATIK aurrera.

From when will you be at home? From two (o'clock) onwards.

ZAZPIAK ETA HOGEITIK nago hemen, itxaroten.

I have been here waiting since seven twenty.

7.2.4. ZER ORDUTARA? -TO/UNTIL WHAT TIME?

This form is obtained by adding the declension of NORA to the basic form. Here are some examples:

1.00	ordu batera	1.05	Ordu bata	eta bostERA
2.00	ordu bietara	2.10	Ordu biak	eta hamarrERA
3.00	hiruretara	3.15	Hiru_	eta laurdenETARA
4.00	lauretara	4.20	Laurak	eta hogeira
5.00	bostetara	5.25	Bostak	eta hogeita bostERA
6.00	seietara	6.30	Sei_	t'erdietARA
7.00	zazpjetara	6.35	Zazpiak	hogeita bost gutxi(ago)TARA
8.00	zortzietara	7.40	Zortziak	hogeia gutxi(ago)TARA
9.00	bederatzietara	8.45	Bederatzia	laurden gutxi(ago)TARA
10.00	hamarretara	9.50	Hamarrak	hamar gutxi(ago)TARA
11.00	hamaiketara	10.55	Hamaikak	bost gutxi(ago)TARA
12.00	hamabietara			

Here are some examples:

Sei t'erdietatik ZAZPI T'ERDIETARA etxean egongo naiz.

From six thirty until seven thirty I will be at home.

Ordu bietatik ZORTZIAK ETA BOSTERA zabalik dago.

From two until five (past) eight it is open.

Zazpjetatik ZORTZIAK ETA HOGEIRA hemen egongo naiz.

From seven until eight twenty I will be here.

7.2.5. ZER ORDUTAKO? - AT/OF WHAT TIME?

ZER ORDUTAKO trena hartu du?	Zazpiak eta hamarrEKO trena.
Which train has she/he taken?	The ten past seven train.
{The train at which time...; lit.}	

This form is obtained by adding the declension of **NONGO** to the basic form. Here are some examples:

1.00	ordu bateko	1.05	Ordu bata	eta bostEKO
2.00	ordu bietako	2.10	Ordu biak	eta hamarrEKO
3.00	hiruretako	3.15	Hiru_	eta laurdenETAKO
4.00	lauretako	4.20	Laurak	eta hogeiKO
5.00	bostetako	5.25	Bostak	eta hogeita bostEKO
6.00	seietako	6.30	Sei_	t'erdietAKO
7.00	zazpietako	6.35	Zazpiak	hogeita bost gutxi(ago)TAKO
8.00	zortzietako	7.40	Zortziak	hogei gutxi(ago)TAKO
9.00	bederatzietako	8.45	Bederatzia	laurden gutxi(ago)TAKO
10.00	hamarretako	9.50	Hamarrak	hamar gutxi(ago)TAKO
11.00	hamaiketako	10.55	Hamaikak	bost gutxi(ago)TAKO
12.00	hamabietako			

Here are some examples for the use of these forms:

ORDU BIAK ETA HOGEIKO autobusa hartu behar dugu.

We must take the two-twenty bus.

HIRURAK ETA HAMARREKO trena ez da heldu oraindik.

The ten past three train has not arrived yet.

7.2.6. ZER ORDUTARAKO? - FOR WHAT TIME?

ZER ORDUTARAKO amaituko duzu?	Lau t'erdietARAKO.
At [for] what time will you finish?	At [for] four thirty.

This form is obtained by adding the declension of **NORAKO** to the basic form. Here are some examples:

1.00	ordu baterako	1.05	Ordu bata	eta bostERAKO
2.00	ordu bietarako	2.10	Ordu biak	eta hamarrERAKO
3.00	hiruretarako	3.15	Hiru_	eta laurdenETARAKO
4.00	lauretarako	4.20	Laurak	eta hogeiRAKO
5.00	bostetarako	5.25	Bostak	eta hogeita bostERAKO
6.00	seietarako	6.30	Sei_	t'erdietARAKO
7.00	zazpietarako	6.35	Zazpiak	hogeita bost gutxi(ago)tarako

8.00	zortzietarako	7.40	Zortziak	hogei	gutxi(ago)tarako
9.00	bederatzietarako	8.45	Bederatziak	laurden	gutxi(ago)tarako
10.00	hamarretarako	9.50	Hamarrak	hamar	gutxi(ago)tarako
11.00	hamaiketarako	10.55	Hamaikak	bost	gutxi(ago)tarako
12.00	hamabietarako				

Here are some examples for the use of these forms:

ZER ORDUTARAKO egongo zara etxean? BOST T'ERDIETARAKO.

At [for] what time will you be home? At [for] five thirty.

ZER ORDUTARAKO egin behar duzu? HIRU ETA LAURDENETARAKO.

For what time do you have to do it? For quarter past three.

7.2.7. ZER ORDUTARA ARTE? - UNTIL WHAT TIME?

This form presents us with two possibilities: **ARTE** can be used by itself or added to the basic construction **ZER ORDUTARA**. Here are some examples:

Ordu biak ARTE (Ordu biETARA ARTE) itxaron dut.

I have waited until two (o'clock).

Ordu bi t'erdiak ARTE (Ordu bi t'erdiETARA ARTE) ez dute ixten.

They don't shut until two thirty.

Hamaikak ARTE (HamaikETARA ARTE) hemen egongo naiz.

I will be here until eleven.

Seiak bost gutxiago ARTE (Seiak bost gutxiagoTARA ARTE) egon da.

She/he has been (here) until five to six.

7.2.8. EXPRESSIONS - *Esapideak*

Here we present some expressions that are often used to describe the concept of points of time.

7.2.8.1. HIRU-HIRURAK - EXACTLY, ON-THE-DOT, PRECISELY

To indicate a precise moment on an hour (i.e. three o'clock exactly), a repetition is used. For example:

Une honetan HIRU-HIRURAK dira.

At this moment it is three o'clock (precisely).

ZAZPI-ZAZPIETAN egon behar dugu han.

We must be there at seven (on the dot).

7.2.8.2. HIRURAK JOTA

To indicate a time instant that has passed, the expression **JOTA** is used, which is the participle of the verb **JO**, which means among other things *give the time*. For example:

ZER ORDU DA? Hirurak JOTA.

What time is it? Just after three.

ZER ORDU DA? Zortzi t'erdiak JOTA.

What time is it? Just passed half past eight.

7.2.8.3. HIRURAK JOTZEKO - GOING TO BE

When you want to indicate that it is about to be an instant in time, you use the form **JOTZEKO**. For example:

Hirurak JOTZEKO daude.

It is going to be three o'clock.

Une honetan, bederatzit t'erdiak JOTZEKO daude.

At this {the next; expl.} moment it is going to be nine-thirty.

7.2.8.4. ZAZPIAK INGURU - ABOUT/AROUND

In Euskara you use **INGURU** to express *around about*. For example:

ZER ORDU DA? Zazpi t'erdiak INGURU dira.

What time is it? It's about seven thirty.

ZER ORDU DA? Ez daukat erlojurik, baina seiak INGURU izango dira.

What time is it? I don't have a watch, but it will be about six.

This form can be declined with the appropriate declension appended onto **INGURU**. Here are some examples:

ZER ORDUTAN etorriko zara? Zazpi t'erdiak INGURUAN.

At what time will you come? At around seven thirty.

ZER ORDUTAN irteten zara? Zortziak INGURUAN.

What time are you going out? At about eight.

ZER ORDUTARAKO amaituko duzu? Bostak INGURURAKO.

What time will you finish? For about five.

Zein tren hartu du? Hirurak INGURUKO trena hartu du.

What train did she/he catch? She/he caught the train around about three.

7.2.8.5. ZAZPIAK ALDERA - AT ABOUT, AROUND ABOUT

This form is another way of giving an approximate moment, which is like the expression *towards, near, around* in English. Here are some examples:

Laurak ALDERA pasako gara; beraz prest egon.

We will call by **at about** four; so be ready.

Hamaikak ALDERA hasiko da jaialdia.

The festival will start **at about** eleven.

Hiru t'erdia ALDERA helduko gara.

We will arrive **around about** three thirty.

SUMMARY - LABURPENA

Here is a table of the declension suffixes that are used to express the various restrictions on time. The different forms are obtained by adding the listed suffixes to the basic forms without articles, in other words, without **-AK**..

.00	-ETAN	-ETATIK	-ETARA	-ETAKO	-ETARAKO
.05	-ean	-etik	-era	-eko	-erako
.10	-ean	-etik	-era	-eko	-erako
.15	-ETAN	-ETATIK	-ETARA	-ETAKO	-ETARAKO
.20	-an	-tik	-ra	-ko	-rako
.25	-ean	-etik	-era	-eko	-erako
.30	-ETAN	-ETATIK	-ETARA	-ETAKO	-ETARAKO
.35	-TAN	-TATIK	-TARA	-TAKO	-TARAKO
.40	-TAN	-TATIK	-TARA	-TAKO	-TARAKO
.45	-TAN	-TATIK	-TARA	-TAKO	-TARAKO
.50	-TAN	-TATIK	-TARA	-TAKO	-TARAKO
.55	-TAN	-TATIK	-TARA	-TAKO	-TARAKO

Note that when a construction uses the forms **...eta hoge**i (...and twenty), there is no **E** between the number **hoge**i and the suffixes. For example: **...eta hoge**iAN, **...eta hoge**iTIK, **...eta hoge**iKO, etc.

TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK

- Adding the article to the hour when saying *and a half*. For example:

It is two thirty (and a half/half past)

*Ordu biAK t'erdia dira.

Ordu bi_ t'erdia dira.

At seven thirty

*ZazpiAK t'erdietan.

Zazpi_ t'erdietan.

The eleven thirty train

*HamaikAK t'erdietako tren.

Hamaika_ t'erdietako tren.

2. Incorrectly declining the basic forms. For example:

She/he arrived **at** five twenty.

***Bostak eta hogeiTAN heldu da.**

Bostak eta hogeIAN heldu da.

At ten past ten.

***Hamarrak eta hamarrETAN.**

Hamarrak eta hamarrEAN

She/he has been here **since/from** two twenty.

***Ordu biak eta hogeiTATIK dago.**

Ordu biak eta hogeITIK dago.

The three twenty train

***Hirurak eta hogeITAKO trena.**

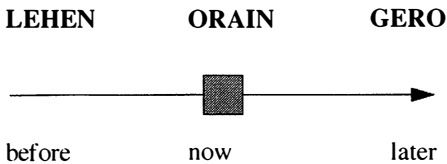
Hirurak eta hogeIKO trena.

7.3. TEMPORAL EXPRESSIONS - *Denborazko Esapideak*

In this section we are going to study different forms of expressing time, all of which are used frequently.

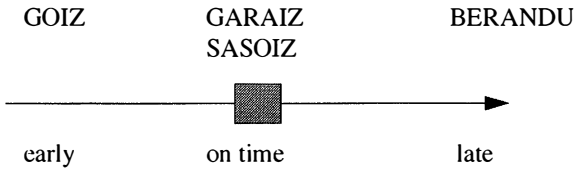
7.3.1. THE MOST USUAL ADVERBS

Here are the most common adverbs:



These can be declined. For example:

orainDIK : still
orainGO : by now
orain ARTE : until now...



Here are some examples:

GERO joango naiz : I will go later.
ORAIN ezin dut : I can't now.
GOIZ da ORAINDIK : It is still early.
Oso BERANDU da : It is very late.
SASOIZ (GARAIZ) heldu gara : We have arrived on time.

7.3.4. THE WEEK - *ASTE*A

You can also indicate the days of the week:

astelehen	: Monday	ostiral	: Friday
astearte	: Tuesday	larunbat	: Saturday
asteazken	: Wednesday	igande	: Sunday
ostegun	: Thursday		

Note that none of the days of the week have an organic **-A**, so you should keep this in mind when declining them. Here are some examples:

astelehenEan	: on Monday
astelehenEtik	: from Monday
astelehenEko	: Monday's
astelehenErako	: for Monday
astelehenEra arte	: until Monday

*igande*_GOIZEAN

When you want to specify a moment in a day of the week you put the day of the week in the indeterminate form, followed by the moment in the day. For example:

ASTELEHEN_GOIZEAN joango naiz.

I will go on **Monday morning**.

ASTEARTE_ARRATSALDETIK nago hemen.

I am here **from Tuesday afternoon**.

OSTIRAL_GAUEAN afori bat daukat.

On Friday night I have [a] dinner.

LARUNBAT_EGUERDIAN gurasoen etxean bazkalduko dut.

Saturday at noon I will have lunch at (my) parents house.

Other ways of talking about the week are:

asteburu	: weekend
aste osoan zehar	: during the whole week
jaiegun	: holiday
lanegun	: working day
aste honetan	: in this week/from now
gaur zortzi	: a week/a week ago
bihar zortzi	: a week from tomorrow
atzo zortzi	: a week from yesterday

7.3.5. THE MONTHS - *HILABETEAK*

In Euskara the months are said in the following way:

urtarril	: January	maiatz	: May	irail	: September
otsail	: February	ekain	: June	urri	: October
martxo	: March	uztail	: July	azaro	: November
apiril	: April	abuztu	: August	abendu	: December

One thing to keep in mind when declining the month names is that there is no organic **-A**: **apirilEan, apirilEtik, apirilEko, apirilErako...**

Other ways of talking about the months are:

bigarren hamabostaldian	: in the second fortnight.
hil honen hasieran	: at the beginning of this month.
hilaren lehenengotan	: at the first of the month.
hilaren amaieran	: at the end of the month.
hil honen azkenengotan	: at the end {last;lit.} of this month.

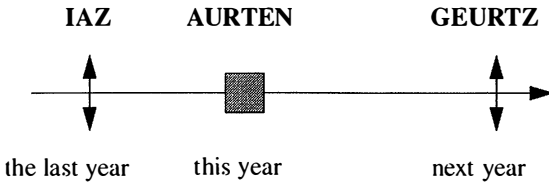
7.3.6. THE SEASONS - *URTAROAK*

The seasons are said in the following way in Euskara:

udaberri	: spring
uda	: summer
udazken	: autumn
negu	: winter

7.3.7. THE YEARS - *URTEAK*

You can also place an action in time by using the year as a reference. Here is a diagram showing the alternatives:

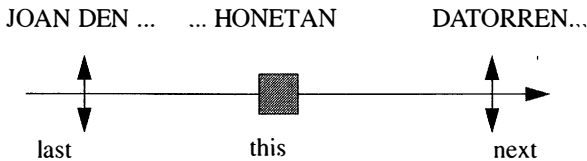


The form **GEURTZ** at the end of the diagram is rarely used. Instead, **DATORREN URTEAN** is used. (see. 7.3.8.)

7.3.8. *DATORREN is not HURRENGO*

It is common to confuse these two forms, even though in reality they have very different meanings.

Normally to place something in time, you take a particular moment as a point of reference. When the referent is a current week (month or year) then the following forms are used:



Here are some examples:

JOAN DEN astean Iparraldera joan ginen.

[In] last week we went to Iparralde {Northern Euskal Herria; expl.}

Hilabete HONETAN oso lanpetuta nago.

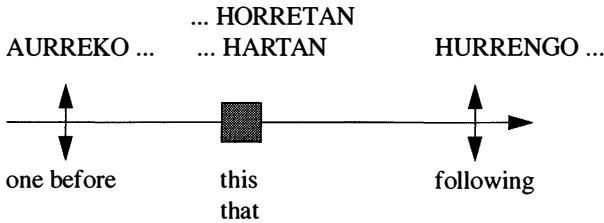
[In] this month I am very busy.

DATORREN urtean Indiara joango gara.

[In] next year we will go to India.

When the time reference is in days, you use **atzo**, **gaur**, **bihar**. With years you would normally use **iaz**, **aurten**, **datorren urtean**, but you can also use the form **joan den urtean** instead of **iaz**.

When you take a *past* or *present* moment as a point of reference then the following forms would be employed:



Here are some examples:

Urte HARTAN Afrikara joan ginen, eta AURREKO urtean Japoniara.

In that year we went to Africa, and in the year before (that) to Japan.

Aste HARTAN eta HURRENGOAN ez zen joan, baina AURREKOAN bai.

In that week and in the following she/he didn't go, but in the previous (one) (she/he did) yes.

Egun HARTAN etorri zen, baina HURRENGO egunean ez.

On that day she/he came, but on the following day she/he didn't.

Hilabete HORRETAN eta HURRENGOAN ezin dut.

[In] that month and [in] the following one I can't.

To say *on the following day* there are two forms possible: **BIHARAMONEAN** and **HURRENGO egunean**.

7.3.9. DAGOENeko; HONEZKERO - ALREADY; BY NOW

It is common to confuse these two forms, but they have different meanings. The form **dagoeneko** is used when talking about an action that we know has happened. The form **honezkero** is used for an action which we believe to have happened, but we don't know for sure. Here are some examples:

Lana DAGOENeko amaituta dago	: The work is already finished.
Lana HONEZKERO amaituta egongo da	: The work will be finished by now.
Jon DAGOENeko etxean dago	: Jon is already home.
Jon HONEZKERO etxean egongo da	: Jon will be at home by now.

The form **honezkero** is used also when referring to an action which happens in the future. For example:

Egitea ahaztu zait, eta HONEZKERO ez dut egingo.

I have forgotten to do it, and I will not do it for now.

Ez dira etorri, eta HONEZKERO ez dut uste etorriko direnik.

They haven't come, and for now I don't think that they will (come).

On the other hand, to refer to the past we would use the following forms:

Present		Past	
dagoeneko	: already/definitely	zegoeneko	: by then
honezkero	: by now, for now, after this	horrezkero	: now, after that
		harrezkero	: now, after that

In some places, instead of using **dagoeneko**, people use **jadanik**. On the other hand, the expressions **honezkero**, **horrezkero** and **harrezkero** are used also with the meaning of *after this, after that, after that*.

7.3.10. EXPRESSIONS - *ESAPIDEAK*

In this section we offer a list with some of the temporal expressions that are most frequently used:

ORAIN (DELA) hiru urte	: it has been three years, three years ago
(DELA) lau ordu	: it has been four hours, four hours ago
ORAIN DELA GUTXI	: it has been little, a little while ago
DUELA GUTXI	: it has been little
Bost egunEN BURUAN	: at the end of five days
AstebeteREN BURUAN	: at the end of a week
Bost egun BARRU	: within five days
Hilabete BARRU	: within a month
HEMENDIK LASTERRERA	: in a little while
HEMENDIK AURRERA	: from now on
AURRERANTZEAN	: later on
LASTER	: soon
BEREHALA	: immediately
DENBORA LUZEA	: a long time
LUZAROAN	: during a long time
ASPALDIAN	: since a long time
AZKENEAN / AZKENIK	: finally, at the end
AZKEN BATEAN	: at the end/finish
ARESTIAN	: recently/a short time ago
AZKENALDI HONETAN	: in this last season / time
AZKEN BOLADA HONETAN	: in this last season / time
ASPALDI HONETAN	: fastly
HALAKO BATEAN	: eventually
BAT-BATEAN	: suddenly
GARAI (SASOI) HARTAN	: in that time

GARAIZ (SASOIZ)	: on time
ORDUAN	: so / on the hour
ORAINGOAN	: this time
ORAINGOZ	: for now
GAURKOZ	: for today
AURTENGOZ	: for this year
UNE HONETAN	: at this moment
ORAINTE BERTAN	: right now
GAUR EGUN (ean)	: this day today
AINTZINA (BEHALA)	: a long time ago, in ancient times
BART	: last night

TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK

1. To decline the names of the month and the days of the week as if the article were a part of the word. For example:

I will go on Saturday	*LarunbatAN joango naiz. LarunbatEAN joango naiz.
I have been here (as) from Monday	*AstelehenATIK nago hemen. AstelehenETIK nago hemen.
She/he will come on Friday	*OstiralAN etorriko da. OstiraleAN etorriko da.
In January I have holidays	*UrtarrilAN oporrak dauzkat. UrtarrilEAN oporrak dauzkat.
She/he has been (here) in May and June	*MaiatzAN eta ekainAN egon da. MaiatzEAN eta ekaiEAN egon da.

2. To specify the day of the week and the moment in the day, placing the article on the day. For example:

Saturday night	*LarunbatA gauean. Larunbat_ gauean.
Monday afternoon	*AstelehenA arratsaldean. Astelehen_ arratsaldean.

3. Another mistake is to literally translate the expressions *this afternoon*, *this night*... For example:

Tonight I have dined	*Gau HONETAN afaria daukat. GAUR gauean afaria daukat.
She/he has gone this morning	*Goiz HONETAN joan da. GAUR goizean joan da.
We stayed this afternoon	*Arratsalde HONETAN geratu gara. GAUR arratsaldean geratu gara.

4. To use **NORMALKI** instead of **NORMALEAN** to express time. The suffix **-KI** indicates *way*, not *time*. Here are some examples:

I don't normally smoke

***NormalKI ez dut erretzen.**

NormalEAN ez dut erretzen.

Normally I go walking {by foot; fit.}

***NormalKI oinez joaten naiz.**

NormalEAN oinez joaten naiz.

5. Confusing **LASTER** and **GOIZ**. They have different meanings in Euskara:

LASTER

: soon, in little white.

GOIZ

: early (opposite to **BERANDU**: late).

Here is an example:

a) **Gaur LASTER joango naiz**

: I will go soon [today].

b) **Gaur GOIZ joango naiz**

: I will go early [today]. {at 8 am; expl.}

a) **Gaur LASTER jaiki naiz**

: Today I (will) get up soon (in little white).

b) **Gaur GOIZ jaiki naiz**

: Today I got up early (at dawn).

7.4. THE DATE - *Data*

The date in Euskara can be said and written in different ways. Here we are only going to present the more common forms.

The biggest difference to English is the order. In effect, in Euskara the order is the exact inverse to the order in English. Here are three different constructions:

	YEAR	MONTH	DAY
1.	1987.eko	urriAREN	17a
2.	1987.eko	urriAK	17
3.	1987.10.17		

7.4.1. 1987.eko urriAREN 17a

This is the most common form because it can be declined, unlike the second form. It is constructed according to the following template:

____.EKO _____-AREN _____-A

The full stop which is placed after the year is an abbreviation of the suffix **-GARREN**. Some authors prefer to leave the full stop out, but in such a case the suffix would vary depending on whether the number ends in a vowel or consonant. For example: **1992ko / 1995eko**. This is why we recommend the use of a full stop. Here are some examples:

1987.eko UrriAREN 5a

5th of October 1987.

Mila bederatzehun eta laurogeita zazpiGARRENEKO UrriAREN bostA

Fifth of October of (the year)one thousand nine hundred and eighty-seven(th).

1523.eko irailAREN 22a

22nd of September 1523.

Mila bostehun eta hogeita hiruGARRENEKO irailAREN hogeitabiA.

The twenty-second of September one thousand five hundred and twenty thi(rd).

Gaur abenduAREN 3a da. (abenduAREN hiruA)

Today is the third of December.

Bihar maiatzAREN 1a da. (maiatzAREN lehenA, batA)

Tomorrow is the first of May.

Gaur 21a da; beraz, bihar 22a da. (hogeita batA, hogeita biA)

Today is the twenty-first; so, tomorrow is the twenty-second.

Datorren urteko urtarrilAREN 5a aukeratu dugu. (bostA)

We have chosen the fifth of January [of] next year.

Note that either **BATA** or **LEHENA** can be used for the first day of the month.

This construction for dates can be declined. Here are some examples:

Bilbon, 1994.eko ekainaren 12an.

In Bilbao, on the 12th of June, 1994.

1215.eko urriaren 3an hil zen.

She/he died on the third of October, 1215.

Ekainaren 13tik 15era kanpoan izango naiz.

From the thirteenth to the fifteenth of June I will be away.

Lan hori hilaren 7rako amaitu behar dugu.

We must finish that work by the seventh of the month.

Uztailaren 25era arte daukazu epea.

You have [time] until the twenty-fifth of July.

As shown in these examples, the appropriate suffix is placed immediately after the number which indicates the day. Also, it is important to differentiate the numbers ending in vowels and consonants, as the consonants have a following e:

vowel

2a (biA)
2an (biAN)
2tik (biTIK)
2ra (biRA)

consonant

5a (bostA)
5ean (bostEAN)
5etik (bostETIK)
5era (bostERA)

diphthong -AU

4a (lauA)
4an (lauAN)
4tik (lauTIK)
4ra (lauRA)

LEHENA

1a (batA, lehenA)
1ean (batEAN, lehenEAN)
1etik (batETIK, lehenETIK)
1era (batERA, lehenERA)

All of the days ending in vowels are declined in the same way as **2a** and those ending in consonants in the same way as **5a**. In the case of **1a** there is an exception, and that is why we have included it in this table. On the other hand, the days ending in **-AU** (4, 14, 24...) are treated in the same way as those ending in vowels.

7.4.2. 1988.eko urriAK 17

This form can only be used to indicate the present day and it cannot be declined. It is constructed according to the following template:

_____.EKO ____-AK ____ - ø

Here are some examples:

1988.eko apirilAK 8	: 8 of april 1988.
1542.eko abenduAK 25	: 25 of december 1542.
UrtarrilAK 3	: 3 of january.
MaiatzAK 31	: 31 of may.
HilAK 15	: 15 of the month.

7.4.3. ERA LABURTA - REDUCED FORM

When you wish to write the date in a brief form you write the numbers in the sequence of year, month and day separated by fullstops. A traditional variant of this is to write the month using Roman numerals. For example:

1988.12.24 1456.10.16 1997.IX.23

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. To use the second of the forms when it is necessary to decline the expression. Here are some examples:

The second of january 1987	*1987.eko urtarrilAK 2a.
	1987.eko urtarrilAREN 2a.
From the sixth of march	*MartxoAK 6tik.
	MartxoAREN 6tik.
Until the fifth of october	*UrriAK 5era arte.
	UrriAREN 5era arte.

7.5. THE WEATHER - *Eguraldia*

In this section we are going to study the most common expressions and forms which are used to express the weather.

7.5.1. ORTZI (OSTE) - GOD OF THE FIRMAMENT

In Euskara nature used to be something that was alive, and active, and phenomena didn't just happen. Behind every phenomenon there was a force, or spirit who was its active creator. This way of seeing the world seems to have been common in many cultures.

So, with this concept of the world the rain doesn't fall by itself, someone, or something makes the rain. The storm doesn't come, someone brings it. The snow doesn't fall, someone throws it. From this description you can understand how Euskara doesn't use passives (**NOR**), but actives (**NORK**) when talking about the weather. So in all of these phenomena there is a force, a being, and in the case of the Basque people it is **ORTZI** or **OSTE**, the god of the firmament, the god of the land. This is where we get words such as:

ostadar	: rainbow (the horn of Ortzi)
oskarbi	: clear sky (clean Ortzi)
oskorri	: sunset (red Ortzi)
ostegun	: Thursday (day of Ortzi)
ostiral	: Friday

This feature not only happens with atmospheric phenomenon, but it can also be seen in other cases, for example:

LOAK HARTU nau	: I have gone to sleep (the exact translation is 'sleep has taken me', so the active element is sleep, not the person.)
BEROAK nago	: I am hot (the translation is more or less 'the heat has me'; and, so, the active element is the heat.)
GOSEAK nago	: I am hungry (derived from goseak hartuta nago - 'I am taken by hunger.')

7.5.2. EURIA EGITEN DU - IT IS RAINING

This form is one of the more well used ones. Here is a list of the most usual cases:

euria egin	: to rain	hotz egin	: to be cold
elurra egin	: to snow	fresko egin	: to be fresh
txingorra egin	: to hail	bero egin	: to be hot
zirimiria egin	: to drizzle	sargori egin	: to be muggy
haizea egin	: to be windy	izotz egin	: to freeze
epaldu	: to warm		

Here are some examples:

Eguraldi ona (txarra) EGIN du.	: It has been good (bad) weather.
Egun ona (txarra) EGITEN du.	: It is a good (bad) day.
EURIA EGITEN du.	: It is raining.
Bihar ez du EURIRIK EGINGO.	: Tomorrow it won't rain.
Aurten ez du ELURRIK EGIN.	: This year it hasn't snowed.
Atzo ELURRA EGIN zuen.	: Yesterday it snowed.
Bihar HOTZ EGINGO du.	: Tomorrow it will be cold.
Zelako BEROA EGITEN duen!	: It's hot!

Note the negatives use the partitive **-(r)IK**. For example:

Ez du euriRIK egin.	: It hasn't rained.
Dagoeneko ez du elurRIK egiten.	: It definitely hasn't snowed.
Ez dago haizeRIK.	: It isn't windy.
Ez du hotzIK egiten.	: It's not cold.

As well as these forms, there are others like:

- a) **IZAN** : euria **DA**, elurra **IZAN DA**, bero **IZANGO DA...**
- b) **BOTA** : euria **BOTATZEN DU**, harria (txingorra) **BOTA DU...**
- c) **ARI IZAN** : euria **ARI IZAN DU**, elurra **ARI IZAN DU...**

Note that constructions b) and c) can only be used with the forms that are in the left column of the table. Note also that **ARI IZAN** is always conjugated with the verb **UKAN**. Here are some examples:

Euria DA.	: It has rained.
Euria BOTATZEN DU.	: It rains. {(Someone) throws the rain; lit. }
Elurra ARI DU.	: It is snowing.

7.5.3. EGUZKIA DAGO - IT IS SUNNY

To express some forms the verb **EGON** is used. Here are some examples:

EGUZKIA dago.	: It is sunny.
LAINOA dago.	: It is foggy.
BEHELAINOA dago.	: It is low fog.
HAIZEA zegoen.	: It was windy.
HOTZA dago.	: It is cold.
BEROA egon da	: It has been hot.
SARGORIA zegoen.	: It was muggy.

Be careful not to confuse **beroA dago**: *it is hot* with **bero_ dago**: *it is hot* (not the weather, but a plate of soup for example), and **hotzA dago**: *it is cold* with **hotz_ dago**: *it is cold* (the iceblock). Also be careful not to confuse **bero naiz** (*I am hot*, from the weather/room) and **bero nago** (*I am hot*, sexually aroused).

7.5.4. EURIA DAKAR - IT IS GOING TO RAIN

This form is used to indicate that some atmospheric phenomenon is going to happen in the immediate future. This construct comes from an older tradition where the rain was bought by some spirit of nature, hence **DAKAR** refers to her/him **bringing** the weather. Here are some expressions:

Euria DAKAR.	: It is going to rain. {He/she is bringing the rain; lit.}
Elurra DAKARrela ematen du.	: It looks like it is going to snow. {It's given that...;lit}
Ekaitza DAKAR.	: A storm is coming.
Eguraldi txarra DAKAR.	: There is going to be bad weather.
Behelainoa DAKAR.	: Low cloud is coming.
Elurreuri DAKAR.	: Sleet is coming.

This form is also used as a response to a greeting:

Egun on!	: Good morning
Halan ekarri!	: So be it. {bring this way; lit.}

7.5.5. EURIA HASI DU - THE RAIN HAS STARTED

This is used to indicate the beginning of a specific phenomenon. Here are some examples:

Eluria HASI DU.	: It has started to rain.
Elurra HASI ZUEN.	: It started to snow.
Txingorra HASI DU.	: It has started to hail.

To indicate the end of the same thing you use the form **ATERTU** (*to stop raining*) or **ATERI** (*it has stopped raining*). Here are some examples:

ATERTU DU.	: It has stopped raining.
ATERTZEN ARI DU.	: It is stopping raining.
ATERI DAGO.	: It is stopped raining.

7.5.6. ILARGIA - THE MOON

The importance of the moon in the Basque culture is large, but diminishing. It tells us when to plant, when to reap, when to fell trees, when to make **txakolina** (a sweet wine), **sagardoa** (apple cider), etc. Here are some lunar related terms:

ilgora	: quarter crescent	itsasgora	: high tide
ilbete	: full moon	itsasbehera	: low tide
ilbehera	: waning moon		
ilberri	: new moon		

In Euskara *moon* is said **ilargi** (**hil + argi**), which literally means *the light of the dead* but not in the normal sense of the word dead. From **hil** (*to die, dead*) also come:

hil	: month
hilabete	: whole month
hileroko	: period (menstruation)

7.5.7. OTHER EXPRESSIONS - Zenbait Esapideak

Here are some of the words and expressions which are used to express weather conditions:

Hau hotza.	: What cold
Zelako beroa.	: Some heat
Hau zaparrada.	: What a downpour
Giro (aro) ona dago.	: It is an agreeable temperature.
Hego haizea dago.	: There is a south wind.

Ipar haizea dago.	: There is wind from the north.
Egun eguzkitsua dago.	: It is a sunny day.
Lainotsu dago eguna.	: The day is cloudy.
Haizetsu dago eguna.	: It is a windy day.
Egun euritsua egin zuen.	: It was a rainy day.
trumoi	: thunder
tximist	: lightning
oinaztargi	: flash of lightning
laino (hodei)	: cloud
(behe)laino	: fog / mist
euri uherra dago	: It is drizzling.
zeru	: sky
ihintz (garo)	: dew
lei (izotz) egin	: to freeze

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. It is common to express the atmospheric phenomenon as if they were passive phenomenon. It can hardly be considered a mistake, but it is preferable that you use the correct forms. Here are some examples:

It is going to rain	*Euria DATOR. Euria DAKAR.
It has stopped raining	*Atertu DA. Atertu DU.
Bad weather is coming	*Eguraldi txarra DATOR. Eguraldi txarra DAKAR.
A storm is coming	*Ekaitza DATOR. Ekaitza DAKAR.
It has started to rain	*Euria hasi DA. Euria hasi DU.

7.6. THE SENSATIONS / FEELINGS - *Sentipenak*

In this section we will study how you express feelings and sensations in Euskara.

7.6.1. GOSE NAIZ - I AM HUNGRY

To express sensations in Euskara you usually use the auxiliary **IZAN** (*be*). Here is a list of the most usual forms:

gose izan	: to be hungry
bero izan	: to be hot
beldur izan	: to be scared
egarri izan	: to be thirsty
hotz izan	: to be cold
lotsa izan	: to be embarrassed

Here are some examples:

Gose naiz.	: I am hungry.
Umeak egarri dira.	: The children are thirsty.
Bero zara, ala?	: Are you hot, or what?
Gauean hotz izan gara.	: Tonight we have been cold.
Beldur bazara, ez etorri.	: If you are scared, don't come.
Lotsa da.	: She/he is embarrassed.

To express that you are *scared/afraid* of something, you use the form **ZEREN BELDUR**. For example:

ZEREN beldur zara?	: What are you afraid of?
TxakurrEN beldur da.	: She/he is afraid of dogs.
NOREN beldur zara?	: Who are you afraid of?
MaisuAREN beldur naiz.	: I am afraid of the teacher.

7.6.2. HOTZAK NAGO - I AM COLD

There is another way to express sensations which consists of declining the word expressing the sensation in the case of **NORK** followed by the appropriate conjugation of the verb **EGON** (*to be*). Here are some examples:

HotzAK NAGO.	: I am cold.
BeroAK ZAUDE, ala?	: Are you hot, or what?

GoseAK NAGO.	: I am hungry.
EgarriAK GAUDE.	: We are thirsty.
BeldurrAK NAGO.	: I am scared.

This construction is contrary to the normal use of the *Ergative* but it derives from a form such as *I am dying of cold*:

Hotzak hilda nago.	Hotzak nago.
I am dying {dead; lit.} of cold	I am cold.

BEROAK NAGO is equivalent to **BERO_NAIZ**: “I am hot” {and I need to take off my coat} and similarly **HOTZAK NAGO** is exactly the same as **HOTZ_NAIZ**, meaning “I am cold” {and I need to put a coat on}.

These expressions are different to **beroA naiz** which means “I am a hot (person)” (in a state of sexual arousal), and in contrast **hotza naiz** which means “I am a cold/distant (person)”.

Sexual climax is expressed with **Ba Noa!**; “I am going!” which is an interesting opposition to the equivalent English expression.

7.6.3. GURA - WANTING TO/CURIOUS

You can also express some sensations with the suffix **-GURA**. For example:

kakagura	: wanting to go to the toilet {shit; lit.}
txizagura	: wanting to piss
logura	: tired (wanting to sleep)
hazkura	: itchy (wanting to scratch)
jakingura	: curiosity (desire to know)
ikusgura	: curiosity (wanting to see)

These forms are also used with the auxiliary **IZAN**. Here are some examples:

Logura naiz.	: I am tired.
Kakagura naiz.	: I want to go to the toilet {I want to shit; lit.}.
Txizagura bazara, esan.	: If you want to piss, say it.
Ikusgura naiz.	: I am curious to see (she/he/it).

Euskara does not have the distinctions present in English for various polite and impolite expressions for the need to perform toilet functions. The only alternative to the examples above is **komunera noa** - *I am going to the toilet*.

7.6.4. BURUKO MINA DAUKAT - I HAVE A HEADACHE

This construction is used to express pain and indicates the relevant part of the body declined in the case of **NONGO** followed by **mina**. Here are some examples:

NON daukazu mina?	: Where do you have the pain?
NONGO mina daukazu?	: [Of] where do you have the pain?
BuruKO MINA daukat.	: I have a headache/sore head.
TripaKO MINA daukat.	: I have a stomach ache .
BizkarrEKO MINA daukazu?	: Do you have a sore back?
HaginETAKO MINA neukan.	: I had sore teeth.
Atzo lepoKO MINA izan nuen.	: Yesterday I had a sore neck.
BegiETAKO MINA dauzkat.	: I have sore eyes.

Other forms which are related to pain are:

MIN HARTUKO duzu.	: You will get hurt . {take pain; lit.}
MIN HARTU dut eskuan.	: I have hurt (my) hand. {I have taken pain in the hand; lit.}
Jon, MIN EMATEN didazu!	: Jon, you're hurting me! {You give pain to me; lit.}
Azkenean MIN EMANGO diozu.	: In the end you will hurt her/him. { give pain ; lit.}
Belauna MINDUTA daukat.	: I have a painful knee.
HANDITUTA daukazu begia.	: You have a swollen { enlarged ; lit.} eye.
Hori oso MINGARRIA da.	: That is very painful/sore .

7.6.5. IZAN / EDUKI

As shown above, the sensations and feelings are usually expressed with the verb **IZAN** (*to be*). This also gives rise to a concept of the world and, above all, a way of feeling the actual body and sensations.

The majority of languages have experienced evolution which has changed the way they express and feel reality. So, the majority of 'modern' languages have changed from using the verb *to be* to using the verb *to have*, so *to have* is much more important than *to be*, to such a point that you are what you have.

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. To express sensations in the verb **EDUKI** (*to have*). Here are some examples:

I am hungry

***Gose DAUKAT.**

Gose NAIZ.

We are thirsty

***Egarri DAUKAGU.**

Egarri GARA.

I am afraid of the dog

***Txakurraren beldur DAUKAT.**

Txakurraren beldur NAIZ.

2. To confuse **bero_naiz** with **beroA naiz**:

a) **Bero_ naiz**

: I am hot.

Hotz_ da

: She/he is cold.

b) **BeroA naiz**

: I am hot. {a hot (person); lit.}

HotzA da

: It is cold.

7.7. THE SENSES - *Ahalmenak*

In Euskara senses are expressed by the suffix **-MEN**, which expresses the idea of *capacity, ability, power*:

ikusi	- to see	ikusmen	: sight
entzun	- to hear	entzumen	: hearing
usaindu	- to smell	usaimen	: sense of smell
dastatu	- to taste	dastamen	: taste
ukitu	- to touch	ukimen	: touch

As well as these words, the suffix **-MEN** is used to express other things such as:

oroitu	: to remember	oroimen	: memory
irudi	: to appear/seem	irudimen	: imagination
sortu	: to create	sormen	: creativity
zoroa izan	: to go crazy	zoramen	: madness
ulertu	: to understand	ulermen	: understanding
mintzatu	: to talk	mintzamen	: talk (capacity)
irakuri	: to show	irakurmen	: lecture (capacity)
idatzi	: to write	ikazmen	: writing (capacity)

7.7.1. COLOURS - *Koloreak*

To ask the colour of an object you use the expression:

Zein koloretakoa da?	: <i>What colour is it?</i>
Zein koloretakoa da autoa? Zuria.	: What colour is the car? White.
Zein koloretakoa dira? Urdinak.	: What colour are they? Blue.

To answer this question, you generally just use the colour name:

zuri	: white
beltz	: black
gorri	: red
urdin	: blue
hori	: yellow
berde	: green
arrosa	: pink
laranja	: orange
more/urbel	: purple
marroi	: brown
gris	: grey

The English and Euskara concept of a colour may not be exactly the same. For example, when a Basque refers to the colour of a cow they will call it **gorri** (red) but an English speaker would call it brown. Another example is with wine, when **gorri** is used for a *rose* wine and **beltz** (black) for a *red* wine.

There was no word for green, with **berde** being taken from Latin. Probably because in the original distribution of colours, green was not an independent colour, but part of a larger group. Another colour which is different is blue, whose name seems to come from the word **ur** (*water*). In Euskara the colour **urdina** covers a large range of English colours from sky blue to almost white, including greys. From a symbolic point of view, the colour **urdina** originally symbolized something which was similar to the colour grey, or in other words, impurity, turbulence with negative connotations.

When we wish to blend colours we use adjectives such as **argi** (*light*) and **ilun** (*dark*). For example:

Zein da, urdin ARGIA ala urdin ILUNA?

What is it, **light** blue or **dark** blue?

Oso gorri BIZIA aukeratu dut.

I have chosen a very **bright** {**alive**; lit.} red.

Berde hori oso HILA da.

That green is very **dull**. {**dead**; lit.}

When dealing with colours that aren't definite, or are mixed, then it is common to use reference objects which have a similar colour. Here are some examples:

Lur KOLOREKO gabardina bat. : An earth-coloured raincoat.

Lasto KOLOREKO soinekoa. : A straw coloured dress.

Jertse hori ardo KOLOREKOa da. : That jersey is a wine colour.

To express combinations of colours you write the names of the colours separated by a hyphen. Generally, the colours have a determined order. Here are some examples:

zuri-gorri : red and white

zuri-urdin : white and blue

zuri-beltz : white and black

gorri-beltz : red and black

We can also use the suffix **-SKA** to express colours such as *yellowish*, *reddish*, *greenish*... Here are some examples:

gorriSKA : reddish

horiSKA : yellowish

zuriSKA	: whitish
urdinSKA	: bluish
berdeSKA	: greenish

To refer to something that is lined, mottled/dotted, or checked we use the suffix **-DUN**. Note that the adjectives formed with this suffix are placed before the noun. Here are some examples:

Non dago laukiDUN alkandora?

Where is the **checked** shirt?

Zein nahi duzu, marraDUNa ala motaDUNa?

Which do you want, the **striped** one or the **spotted** one?

Expressions

Colours have a diverse number of colloquial expressions which are used all of the time. Here are some of them:

GORRIAK IKUSI ditugu!	: We had a tough time!
KALE GORRIAN geratu dira.	: They have happened on hard times.
LARRU GORRITAN utzi naute.	: They have left me stark naked.
LOTSA GORRIA pasa nuen.	: I was terribly embarrassed.
MISERIA GORRIAN dago.	: She/he is extremely miserable.
Ez izan hain ZURIA!	: Don't be so false!
Patatak ZURITU behar ditugu.	: We have to peel {whiten; lit.} the potatoes.
Bere burua ZURITZEN ari da.	: She/he is justifying {whitening; lit.} her/himself.
Ez da ILE HORIA, ez BELTZARANA.	: She/he isn't blond hair, nor brunette.
Ile URDINA dauka.	: She/he has grey hair.
Ilea URDINTZEN ari zaizu.	: Your hair is going grey.
Zein ZURBIL zauden!	: How pale you are!
UBELDuta daukazu begia.	: You have a black {purple; lit.} eye.
Zerena da UBELDURA hori?	: What is that bruise from?

7.7.2. TASTES - *Zaporeak*

Tastes are expressed with the following words:

gozo	: sweet
gazi	: salty
geza	: insipid/saltless/flavourless/fresh
garratz	: sour
mingots	: bitter
mikatz	: acid

Geza is used as the opposite to **gazi**. So, for *salty water* you would say **ur gazia** and for *fresh clear water* you would say **ur geza**.

On the other hand, the word **gozo** is used with the meaning of *tasty, delicious*. The **z** is frequently changed into an **x** in order to re-enforce the expression as with many other words in Euskara. Here are some examples:

Zer moduz dago? GOXO-GOXO dago	: What's it like? It's absolutely delicious .
Oso ardo GOXOA atera digute	: They brought out a very delicious wine for us.
Ardo GOZOA edan dugu	: We have drunk a sweet wine.

To express the idea of *stinging, spicy, hot* you use the words **min** and **erre**. Here are some examples:

Piper gorri MINak jan ditugu	: We ate red hot peppers.
PIPERMIN gehiago bota diot	: I put in more hot pepper.
Nola ERRETZEN duten piperrek!	: (My) how the peppers are hot!

7.8. COURTESY EXPRESSIONS - *Kortesiazko Esapideak*

7.8.1. GREETINGS AND FAREWELLS - *Agurrak*

To greet someone in Euskara you can use many expressions. One of the more frequent is to say the moment in the day, followed by the adjective **ON**. Here are some examples:

Egun ON!	: Good day!
Eguerdi ON!	: Good noon!
Arratsalde ON!	: Good afternoon!
GabON!	: Good night!

To respond to these greetings you can use the same form, or also you can use expressions such as **Halan ekarri!**, **Baita zuri ere!** or **Berdin!**. Here are some examples:

Arratsalde ON!	
Good afternoon!	
Egun ON! Halan ekarri!	
Good day! Yes, it is! {(it's) brought like that; lit.}	
Egun ON! Baita zuri ere!	
Good day! The same to you also!	
GabON, ondo lo egin! Berdin!	
Good night, sleep well! The same (to you)!	

As well as these there are other ways to greet people which are more informal. Here are some examples:

Kaixo, zer moduz?	: Hello! How are you?
Zelan zabilta?	: How are you doing?
Ni ondo, eta zu?	: I'm good, and you?
Zer moduz?	: How are you?
Ondo esan beharko!	: (I would) have to say, (I'm) (doing) well.
Eup! Eup!	: Hello! Hello!
Aupa! Aupa!	: Hello! Hello!
Aspaldiko!	: (It's been) so long!
Nola, ba, hemendik?	: How (come) (you're) here?
Zer berri?	: What's new?

To say goodbye to someone, the most common expression is **Agur!**, from which come the verbs **agur egin** and **agurtu** (*to greet*). Here are some examples of other expressions:

Beno, agur! Ni banoa	: Well, goodbye! I am going.
-----------------------------	------------------------------

Agur eta laster arte! Agur, ba!	: Goodbye, and until soon! Goodbye!
Gabon guztioi! Agur!	: Goodnight [to] everyone! Goodbye!
Adio eta ondo izan!	: Goodbye, and be well!

Note that **agur** can be used for a greeting as well as a farewell and is often used when acknowledging someone but you don't intend to stop and talk to them. On the other hand, when greeting a distinguished person you use the expression **agur t'ardi** which is more formal:

Jaun-andreok, agur t'ardi!	: Ladies and gentlemen, Welcome!
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

When you meet someone you don't know, then you use the following greetings:

Pozten naiz!	: Delighted!
Pozten nau zu ezagutzeak!	: Pleased to meet {know; lit.} you!
Baneukan zu ezagutzeko gogoak!	: I've always wanted to meet {know; lit.} you!

When you are leaving and know you will meet the person again, then you can use the following expressions:

Gero arte! Gero arte, bai!	: Until later! Yes, until later!
Gabon eta bihar arte!	: Goodnight, until tomorrow!
Hurrengora arte!	: Until the following (occasion)!
Datorren astera arte!	: Until next week!
Ikusi arte!	: Until (I) see (you)!
Elkar ikusi arte!	: Until (we) see each other!

Sometimes you say goodbye to someone, wishing them good luck. In these cases you should use the following expressions:

Ondo ibili!	: Go well!
Ondo izan! Berdin!	: Be well! Same (to you too)!
Agur eta ondo segi!	: Goodbye, and keep well!
Zortea izan!	: Good luck!

It is also common to say goodbye to someone by asking them to pass on a message to someone they will see. In these cases you should use the following expressions:

Goraintziak zure emazteari!	: (Give my) regards to your wife!
Eman goraintziak nire aldetik!	: Say hi for me! {Give regards from my side; lit.}
Eskuminak eman!	: Say hi! {Give greetings; lit.}

To greet someone while they eat, you can use the following expressions:

On egin! Eskerrik asko!	: Enjoy your meal! Thanks a lot!
On dagizula!	: May it do you good! {sg.}
On dagizuela!	: May it do you good! {pl.}

Other well used expressions are:

Urte Berri ON!	: Happy New Year!
Eguberri ON!	: Happy Christmas!
Zorionak!	: Congratulations!
Ongi etorri!	: Welcome!
Goian bego!	: Rest in peace! =

Introductions

Introductions are somewhat scarce in Basque society and more often based around your place of origin than your name. So you might expect to be asked:

Nongoa zara?	: Where do you come from?
Australakoa naiz.	: I am from Australia

would be a suitable reply. You might also be asked:

Nor da?	: Who is it?
or	
Zer da zure izena?	: What is your name?

However these are considered relatively new expressions brought in by external influences. An interesting construction that can be heard on the radio is:

Nor zaitugu?

which is a contracted form of:

Nor zara guretzat.	: Who are you for us(lit.){Who do we have here?}
---------------------------	--

The answer which would be:

Jon nauzu.	: You have me Jon
-------------------	-------------------

7.8.2. SAYING THANK YOU -*Esekerrak Ematen*

To give thanks in Euskara, you use the following expressions:

Eskerrik asko!	: Thanks a lot!
Eskerrik asko denagatik!	: Thanks a lot for everything!
Mila esker! / Esker mila!	: A thousand thanks!
Eskertzen dizut!	: I am grateful to you!
Bene-benetan eskertzen dizut!	: I really/truly am grateful to you!

To respond to these expressions you use the following forms:

Ez horregatik!	: Don't mention it! {Not for that; lit. }
Ez dago zergatik!	: Not at all!
Ez da ezer ere!	: It's nothing!
Baita zuri ere!	: To you as well!

7.8.3. ASKING FORGIVENESS, SAYING SORRY - *Barkamena Eskatzen*

To say you are sorry you use the following:

Barkatu; ez naiz konturatu!	: Excuse me; I didn't realize!
Barkatu; ez zaitut ikusi!	: Excuse me; I didn't see you!
Sentitzen dut, baina ezin dut!	: I'm sorry, but I can't!
Ez dakizu zenbat sentitzen dudan!	: You don't know (how) [many] sorry I am!

To respond to these apologies you can use many expressions:

Barkatu! Lasai, ez da ezer.	: Excuse me! Don't worry, it's nothing.
Barkatu! Ez dauka garrantzirik.	: Excuse me! It doesn't matter.
Ez kezkatu, ez da ezer izan.	: Don't worry, it isn't anything.
Sentitzen dut! Lasai, berdin dio.	: I'm sorry! Don't worry, it's (all) the same to me.

7.9. NUMBERS - *Zenbakiak*

Here is a chart of the numbers and their morphology:

0	huts, zero	30	hogeita hamar
1	bat	40	berrogei
2	bi	50	berrogeita hamar
3	hiru	60	hirurogei
4	lau	70	hirurogeita hamar
5	bost	80	laurogei
6	sei	90	laurogeita hamar
7	zazpi	100	ehun
8	zortzi	200	berrehun
9	bederatzi	300	hirurehun
10	hamar	400	laurehun
		500	bostehun
11	hamaika	600	seihun
12	hamabi	700	zazpiehun
13	hamahiru	800	zortziehun
14	hamalau	900	bederatziehun
15	hamabost	1.000	mila
16	hamasei	2.000	bi mila
17	hamazazpi	3.000	hiru mila
18	hamazortzi	500.000	bostehun mila
19	hemeretzi	1.000.000	milioi bat
20	hogei	4.500.000	lau milioi t'erdi

1-100

In Euskara the numbers are grouped in twenties. From one to twenty each number has an individual name. However, the numbers between twenty-one and one-hundred use the particle **TA (ETA)** to combine two numbers together. For example:

27	hogei	TA	zazpi	-	hogeiTA zazpi
38	hogei	TA	hamazortzi-		hogeiTA hamazortzi

The numbers from 20 upwards are presented below:

20	HOGEI
21 (20 + 1)	hogeita bat
22 (20 + 2)	hogeita bi
30 (20 + 10)	hogeita hamar
31 (20 + 11)	hogeita hamaika
32 (20 + 12)	hogeita hamabi
40 (20 + 20)	BERROGEI (two times twenty)
47 (40 + 7)	berrogeita zazpi

50 (40 + 10)	berrogeita hamar
58 (40 + 18)	berrogeita hamazortzi
60 (20 x 3)	HIRUROGEI (three times twenty)
70 (60 + 10)	hirurogeita hamar
80 (20 x 4)	LAUROGEI (four times twenty)
90 (80 + 10)	laurogeita hamar
95 (80 + 15)	laurogeita hamabost

100-1.000

The numbers between one-hundred and one-thousand are composed according to the following template:

(*hundreds*) **ETA** (*tens*)

Here are some examples:

101	ehun ETA bat	[ehun DA bat]
127	ehun ETA hogeita zazpi	[ehun DA hogeitzazpi]
240	berrehun ETA berrogei	[berrehun DA berrogei]
731	zazpiehun ETA hogeita hamaika	[zazpiehun DA hogeitamaika]
881	zortziehun ETA laurogeita bat	[zortziehun DA laurogeitabat]

Although you write **ETA** it is pronounced **DA**, because it follows **-N (N + TA = DA)**.

1.000 - 1.000.000

Remember the function of the comma (**koma**) and the decimal point (**puntu**) are swapped in Euskara compared to English, so the number 1,000 is written 1.000.

Apart from the number one-thousand, the template is as follows:

(*thousands*) **MILA** (*hundreds*) **ETA** (*tens*)
 (*thousands*) **MILA ETA** (*hundreds*)

1.123	MILA ehun eta hogeita hiru
5.456	bost MILA lauhun eta berrogeita hamasei
26.671	hogeita sei MILA seihun eta hirurogeita hamaika
521.521	bostehun eta hogeita bat MILA bostehun eta hogeita bat

When there are no tens you put **ETA** after **mila**:

1.200	MILA ETA berrehun
7.500	zazpi MILA ETA bostehun
22.800	hogeita bi MILA ETA zortziehun
100.300	ehun MILA ETA hirurehun

TYPICAL ERRORS - *OHIKO AKATSAK*

1. To omit the **ETA** from numbers which don't have tens. Here are some examples:

1.900 pezeta

***Mila bederatziehun pzta.**

Mila ETA bederatziehun pzta.

3.500 pezeta

***Hiru mila bostehun pzta.**

Hiru mila ETA bostehun pzta.

2.100 years

***Bi mila ehun urte.**

Bi mila ETA ehun urte.

7.10. MEASUREMENTS - *Zenbatasuna*

In this section we will study how to express the following notions:

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| 1. PRICE | 7. OPERATIONS |
| 2. WEIGHT | 8. VELOCITY |
| 3. CAPACITY | 9. PERCENTAGE |
| 4. QUANTITY | 10. CALCULATION |
| 5. DIMENSION | 11. OTHER EXPRESSIONS |
| 6. FRACTIONS | |

7.10.1. PRICES - *Salneurriak*

To ask for the price of something, you use the following forms:

Zenbat BALIO du honek?	: How much is that worth ?
ZENBAT da hau?	: How much is this?
Zenbat da DENA?	: How much is everything ?
ZENBATEAN dago gazta?	: How much is the cheese?
ZENBATEKOA da gazta hau?	: From how much is this cheese?

To respond to these questions you use the following forms:

Hark mila pezeta balio du.	: That is worth 1,000 pesetas.
Honek ehun pezeta balio du.	: This is worth 100 pesetas.
Ehun pezeta (100pzta.) dira.	: They are one-hundred pesetas. {pzta = peseta; abbr.}
Bost ogerleko dira.	: They are five duros. {1 duro=5 pztas; expl.}
Gazta mila pezetaTAN dago.	: The cheese is 1,000 pesetas.
Madariak ehun pezetaTAN daude.	: The pears are 100 pesetas.
Hau bostehun pezeta(TA)KOA da.	: This is (worth) 500 pesetas.
Ehun pezeta(TA)KOAK dira.	: They are 100 pesetas.
Hirurogei pezeta(TA)KO ogi bi.	: Two bread [of] for 60 pesetas.

Here are some other expressions about prices:

Hori oso MERKEA da.	: That (one) is very cheap .
GARESTIEGIA da.	: It is too expensive .
Hauek MERKE-MERKE daude.	: These are super cheap .
GARESTITXOA da.	: It is a little dear .
Bai garestia!	: Yes (it sure is) dear!

DOHAIN eman didate.	: They gave it to me (for) free .
Ez duzue deskonturik egiten?	: Don't you do discounts?
SALGAI dago.	: It is on sale .

7.10.2. WEIGHT - *Pisua*

To express the weight of something you use the construction of, first indicating the weight in kilos or grams, followed by the material being weighed, without an article. Here are some examples:

Kilo ERDI madari_	: Half a kilo of pears.
Kilo T'ERDI sagar_	: One and (a) half kilos of apples.
Kilo bat patata.	: A kilo of potatoes.
Hiru kilo tipula.	: Three kilos of onions.
Ehun gramo txorizo.	: One-hundred grams of txorizo. {a salami-like meat; expl. }
Libra erdi gazta.	: Half a pound of cheese.

You should be careful not to confuse the forms **kilo ERDI** (half a kilo) and **kilo T'ERDI** (a kilo and a half), which comes from **kilo ETA erdi**. To continue, here are some of the other forms used to indicate weight:

ZENBAT nahi duzu?	: How much do you want?
Hau kilo erdiKOA da.	: This is half a kilo.
Hori kilo t'erdiKOA da.	: That is a kilo and a half.
Beste hau lau kilo(TA)KOA da.	: This other one is four kilos.
Hauek bost kilo(TA)KOAK dira.	: These are five kilos.
Lau kilo(TA)KO pakete bat.	: A four kilo packet.

7.10.3. CAPACITY - *Edukiera*

To express the capacity of something the same construction as for weight is used. Here are some examples:

Litro ERDI ur_	: Half a litre of water.
Litro T'ERDI esne_	: (A) litre and a half (of) milk.
Litro bat ardo.	: A litre of wine.
Lau litro gasolina.	: Four litres of gasoline.
Hiru litro t'erdi sagardo.	: Three and a half litres of apple cider.

There are also other forms used to indicate capacity. Here are some examples:

Litro erdiKO kutxa.	: (A) half litre box. {(A) box of half (a) litre; lit.}
Litro t'erdiko botila.	: (A) litre and a half bottle.
Hogei litro(TA)KO bidoia.	: (A) twenty-litre drum.

7.10.4. QUANTITY - *Kantitatea*

The construction used to express quantity is similar to that for weight and capacity. Here are some examples:

Dozena ERDI piper_	: Half a dozen peppers.
Dozena T'ERDI porru_	: A dozen and a half leeks.
Dozena bat arraultze.	: A dozen eggs.
Dozena bi piper berde.	: Two dozen green peppers.
Botila bat ardo.	: A bottle (of) wine.
Lau kilo sagar gorri.	: Four kilos (of) red apples.
Bost zaku patata.	: Five sacks (of) potatoes.

The suffix -KADA - FUL(L)

Another way to express quantity is with the suffix **-KADA**, which means approximately *the contents of, what fits in*. Here are some examples:

Bota bi koilaraKADA azukre_	: Put in two spoonfuls of sugar.
PlaterKADA bat indaba gorri_ jan du.	: She/he has eaten a plate full of red beans.
EskuKADA bat gatz_ bota diot.	: I have put in a handful of salt.
KatiluKADA bat esne_ gosaldut dut.	: (For) breakfast I had a cupful of milk.

BASO BAT UR is not **UR BASO BAT**

It is easy to confuse these two constructions because they are so similar, but they have different meanings. Here is an example:

a)	Kopa bat txanpain	: A cup of champagne.
b)	Txanpain-kopa bat	: A champagne cup.

Here is an illustration of the different usage. Suppose that we are in a restaurant and we are thirsty. So, we ask for **baso bat ur**: *a glass of water*. But if we are at a dinner and there are no glasses with which to drink water, in other words, there are only wine glasses, we would ask for **ur-baso (kopa) bat**: *a glass for water*. Here are some more examples:

Botila bat ur.	: A bottle of water.
Ur-botila bat.	: A water bottle.

Esne-kutxa bat bota dut.

I have thrown out a milk box.

Kutxa bat esne bota dut.

I have thrown out a box of milk.

Zaku bat patata behar dut.

I need a sack of potatoes.

Patata-zaku bat behar dut.

I need a potato sack.

7.10.5. DIMENSIONS - *Dimentsioak*

Dimensions (*length, height*) are expressed in a similar way to weight and capacity, the quantity is followed by the corresponding adjective (**luze, zabal, altu, sakon, lodi...**) in the indeterminate declension (*without an article*). Here are some examples:

Hiru metro LUZE_ dauka.	: It is {has; lit.} three metres long.
Laurehun zentimetro ZABAL_	: Four-hundred centimeters wide.
Hogei metro SAKON.	: Twenty meters deep.
Mila eta bostehun metro ALTU.	: One-thousand five-hundred meters high.

Hiru metroKO LUZERA

There is another way of presenting measurements. You add the suffix **-KO** followed by the corresponding adjective with the suffix **-ERA** (**luzERA, zabalERA...**). For example:

Honek 3 metroKO LUZERA dauka.

This has (a) [to] length of 3 m.

Oholak 5 zentimetroKO LODIERA dauka.

The table has (a) [to] thickness of 5 cm.

Zenbat metroKO zabalERA dauka?

How many metres (in) [to] width is it?

Sei metroKO sakonERA eman diot.

I have made {given; lit.} it 6 metres in [to] depth.

Lau koma bost zentimetroKO altuERA dauka.

It has (a) [to] height of 4.5 centimeters. {It has (a) [to] height of 4,5 centimetres; lit.}

Here are some other ways to express distance:

Zenbat kilometroTARA dago?	: {To} how many kilometres is it? {How many km's to it?; lit.}
Etxetik zenbat metroTARA dago?	: How many metres [to] (is) it from home.
Handik bi kilometroTARA dago.	: It is two kilometers [to it] from there.
Zenbat metro(TA)KOA da?	: How many meters is it?

7.10.6. FRACTIONS - *Zatikiak*

Fractions are made, except for a few exceptions, in the declension of **NOREN**:

1/2	ERDI	2/3	heren bi
1/3	HEREN	3/4	hiru laurden
1/4	LAURDEN	4/5	lau bostEN
1/5	bostEN	5/7	bost zazpiREN
1/7	zazpiREN	6/10	sei hamarREN
1/10	hamarREN	4/100	lau ehunEN
1/20	hogeiren		

As shown, apart from the three first cases, which are irregular, the rest of the forms are made by adding the indeterminate form to the case of **NOREN**. Here are some examples:

Ordu ERDI eman dut itxaroten.	: I have been waiting [gave; lit.] [or half an hour.
Hiru ordu LAURDEN behar ditut.	: I need three quarters of an hour.
Tartaren HEREN bat nirea da.	: A third of the cake is mine.
Segundo HAMARREN bat izan da.	: It has been a tenth of a second.

7.10.7. MATHEMATICAL OPERATIONS - *Eragiketa Matematikoak*

Here is a list of the more common mathematical operations:

gehi	(+)	batu	: to add	batuketa	: sum
ken	(-)	kendu	: to subtract	kenketa	: remainder
bider	(x)	biderkatu	: to multiply	biderketa	: multiplication
zati	(/)	zaitu	: to divide	zatiketa	: division
berdin	(=)	emaitza	: result	ergiketa	: operation

Here are some examples:

3 + 4 = 7	Hiru GEHI lau BERDIN zazpi.
8 - 6 = 2	Zortzi KEN sei BERDIN bi.
4 x 5 = 20	Lau BIDER bost BERDIN hogeii.
8 / 4 = 2	Zortzi ZATI lau BERDIN bi.
3,4 + 2,6 = 6	Hiru koma lau GEHI bi koma sei BERDIN sei.

Zenbat da lau BIDER hogeita bost?	: How much is four times twenty-five?
Zenbat da lau KEN hiruzazpi sei?	: How much is four minus three plus six?
Zein da BATUKETAren emaitza?	: What is the sum's result?

7.10.8. VELOCITY - *Abiadura*

Velocity is expressed with the suffix **-KO**. Here are some examples:

Laurogei kilometro orduKO.	: Eighty kilometres per hour.
Ehun kilometro orduKO.	: One hundred kilometres per hour.
Hogei metro segundoKO.	: Twenty metres per second.
Hamar metro minutuKO.	: Ten metres per minute.

This form is also used to express other notions. Here are some examples:

Zenbat kobratzen dute fotokopiaKO?

How much do they charge for (a) photocopy?

Fotokopia bakoitzEKO bost pezeta.

Five peseta for each copy.

Bost fotokopiaKO hogei pezeta kobratzen dituzte.

For (every) five photocopies they charge twenty pesetas.

Adineko bakoitzEKO ehun pezeta, eta ume bakoitzEKO berrogei.

For each adult one-hundred pesetas, and for each child forty.

Pentsio osoa mila pezeta egunEKO ateratzen da.

Full board comes out (as) one-thousand pesetas per day.

7.10.9. PERCENTAGES - *Ehunekoak*

Percentage is expressed with the suffix **-KO**. In Euskara the% sign is placed before the number. Here are some examples:

%5	ehunEKO bost	%10	ehunEKO hamar
%20	ehunEKO hogei	%25	ehunEKO hogeita bost

Gasolina ehuneko bost (%5) igo da.

Petrol has risen 5%.

Ehuneko hamar (%10) dekontatu didate.

They gave me a 10% discount. {They have discounted it to me by 10%; lit.}

As shown in these examples, the number indicating the percentage does not have an article, that is, it is declined in the indeterminate form. The *such and such by one thousand* are made in the same way; it is enough to substitute **ehun** with **mila**. Here are some examples:

%o5	milaKO bost	%o20	milaKO hogei
%o500	milaKO bostehun	%o1	milaKO bat

These forms can be declined:

Ehuneko hirurogeiK (%60k) ez du erretzen.

Sixty percent do not smoke.

Ehuneko hirurogeita bostEK (%65ek) aprobatu du.

Sixty-five percent have approved it.

EhuneKO hogeirekin (%20rekin) nahikoa da.

It is enough with 20%.

EhuneKO bostEKO (%5eko) deskontua egin dit.

She/he gave {made; lit.} me a discount of 5%.

EhuneKO seiTIK gora (%6tik) aurreratu dut.

I have saved more than the 6%.

7.10.9.1. BATEZ BESTE - ON AVERAGE

To express the idea of an average you use the expression **BATEZ BESTE** (*on average*).

Here are some examples:

BATEZ BESTE, emaitzak onak izan dira.

On average, the results have been good.

BATEZ BESTE, hiru urtetik gora behar dira.

On average, they must have more than three years. {On average, they must have upwards from 3 years; lit.}

When the phrase accompanies a noun it takes the suffix **-KO**, making it **BATEZ BESTEKO**. Here are some examples:

Hauek BATEZ BESTEKO datuak dira.

This is the average data. {note the plural conjugation and declension; expl.}

BATEZ BESTEKO adina hogeiretekoa da.

The average age is twenty years.

7.10.10. CALCULATION/SCORING - *Tanteoa*

To express the score of a game you use the appropriate numbers and place **ETA** between them. Here are some examples:

zazpi

ETA

huts

Nola doaz? Lau ETA huts (4-0) irabazten.: How are they going? (They) won four-nil.

Hiru ETA huts (3-0) irabazi dugu. : We have won 3 to 0.

Hogeita bi ETA hogeirete (22-20) geratu dira.: The score remained 22-20.

Hamar ETA zortzi (10-8) doaz. : The score is {going; lit.} 10-8.

The suffix -NA

To express a draw you use the suffix **-NA**, which means *each/all*. Here are some examples:

ZenbaNA doaz?	: What are they tied at?
HusNA (huts + -NA) geratu gara.	: We tied at zero. {We remained at zero each; lit. }
HainbaNA (parra) geratu dira.	: It was a draw.
BaNA geratu gara.	: We tied at one each.
Nor doa irabazten? SeiNA doaz.	: Who is winning? They are six all.
BosNA amaitu dute.	: They finished (at) five each.
Hogeita zazpiNA doaz.	: They are twenty seven each. {They are going 27 all; lit. }

7.10.11. VARIOUS EXPRESSIONS - *Zenbait Esapide*

In this section we will study a variety of numerical expressions.

7.10.11.1. *Josu ETA BIOK - JOSU AND THE TWO OF US*

In Euskara to talk about someone else and yourself you use **...ETA BIOK**: *...and the two of us*. To say *my father and I*, you use the construction: *my father and the two of us*. Here are some examples:

Aita ETA BIOK joango gara.	: My father and I will go. {Father and the two of us will go; lit. }
Jon ETA BIOK egin dugu.	: Jon and I have done it. {Jon and the two of us have done it; lit. }
Jon, Ana ETA HIRUROK joan ginen.	: Ana, Jon and I went. {Ana, Jon, and the three of us went; lit. }
Josu, Ane, zu ETA LAUROK.	: Josu, Ane, you and I . {Josu, Ane, you and the four of us ; lit. }
Zuk ETA BIOK egingo dugu.	: You and I will do it. {You and the two of us will do it; lit. }

As shown, to reference three people you use the form **...eta hirurok**, and if it is four **...eta laurok**, and so on. This expression can be declined. Here are some examples:

Mikel ETA BIOI oparitu dizkigute.	: They presented it to Mikel and I.
Zu ETA BIONTZAT ekarri dute.	: They brought it for you and me.

7.10.11.2. *ZazpiNA / zazpiNAKA - EACH, BOTH*

The suffix **-NA**, shown above, is used in other cases as well. It means *each one, both of them*. Here are some examples:

Liburu BAT erosi dugu.

We bought **one** book (between all of us).

Liburu BANA erosi dugu.

We bought a book **each**.

EhuNA pezeta eman dizkiet umeei.

I gave one-hundred pesetas to **each** child.

Neska BANAREKIN etorri dira.

Each one has come with a girl. { **With each one** has come a girl; lit. }

HamarNA mila pezeta ordaindu dizkigute.

They paid us ten-thousand pesetas **each**.

Kotxe BANATAN etorri gara.

Each one of us has come in a car. { We have come **each one (of us)** in a car; lit. }

It is convenient to note that numbers over one thousand do not go with the following forms: **hiru milaNA, *bost milaNA...* Instead they use these: **mila baNA, hiruNA mila, bosNA milioi, bost mila eta hogeita hamarNA...** In other words, the suffix is not applied to the words **mila** and **milio**, but is applied to the digits.

7.10.11.3. *BANAKA - ONE BY ONE, ONE AT A TIME, IN ONES*

By adding the suffix **-KA** to the previous form, we get the following:

BANAKA-BANAKA (BANAN-BANAN) begiratu dugu.

We looked at it/him **one by one**.

Horrek BINAKA igotzen ditu eskailerak.

That (person) goes up the stairs **two by two**.

Nik LAUNAKA jaten ditut gailetak.

I eat biscuits **four at a time**.

BOSNAKA jarri behar duzue.

You must put them **in fives**.

7.10.11.4. *hoge* BAT - APPROXIMATE NUMBERS, ABOUT

This form is used to indicate an approximate number:

Hoge BAT etorriko dira.	: About twenty will come.
Hamabost BAT izango gara.	: We will be about fifteen.
Bostehun BAT izango ziren.	: They (would) have been about five-hundred.

In some places you also use the form **-(R)EN BAT**. Here are some examples:

Hoge REN BAT etorri dira.	: About twenty have come.
Hamabost EN BAT izango gara.	: We will be about fifteen.

7.10.11.5. GUTXI GORABEHERA - MORE OR LESS

This form is equivalent to the expression *more or less* in English. Here are some examples:

Zazpi edo zortzi gara GUTXI GORABEHERA. We are more or less seven or eight.
Mila pezeta dauzkat GUTXI GORABEHERA. I have one thousand pesetas more or less.
Hauek GUTXI GORABEHERAKO datuak dira. These are the approximate data.

7.10.11.6. *ehun* INGURU - AROUND 100

This is very similar to the previous construction:

Ehun INGURU etorriko dira.	: Around one-hundred will come.
Hamabi INGURU ekarri ditut.	: I have brought around twelve.

TYPICAL ERRORS - OHIKO AKATSAK

1. To express quantities putting the article on the word indicating material. For example:

Three kilos of apples	* Hiru kilo sagarrAK. Hiru kilo sagar_.
A litre of milk	* Litro bat esneA. Litro bat esne_.
A plate of red beans	* Platerkada bat indaba gorriAK. Platerkada bat indaba gorri_.
A dozen eggs	* Dozena bat arraultzeAK. Dozena bat arraultze_.

2. To place the word for the material in front of the expressed quantity:

A kilo of potatoes

***PATATA kilo bat.**

Kilo bat PATATA.

A glass of water

***UR baso bat.**

Basobete (baso bat) UR.

A litre of wine

***ARDO litro bat.**

Litro bat ARDO.

3. It is also common to confuse the form kilo ERDI (*half a kilo*) with kilo T'ERDI (*a kilo and a half*). If in doubt, then remember that kilo T'ERDI is an abbreviation of kilo ETA ERDI.
4. Another mistake is to translate from English using the case NORENGATIK instead of NON and NONGO. Here are some examples of this:
- I sell it **for** one-hundred pesetas
- *Ehun pezetaGATIK saltzen dut.**
Ehun pezetaTAN saltzen dut.
- I bought it **for** one-thousand pesetas
- *Mila pezetaGATIK erosi dut.**
Mila pezetaTAN erosi dut.
- They are one-thousand pesetas (**for**) each
- *BakoitzaGATIK mila pezeta dira.**
BakoitzEKO mila pezeta dira.
- Five pesetas (**for** each) photocopy
- *Bost pezeta fotokopiaGATIK.**
Bost pezeta fotokopiaKO.
5. It is common to copy English when expressing a score. Here are some examples:
- They are seven to six
- *Zazpi sei doaz.**
Zazpi ETA sei doaz.
- We won five to one
- *Bost bat irabazi dugu.**
Bost ETA bat irabazi dugu.
- They are tied at one
- *BANTERA doaz.**
BANA doaz.
- They tied at six
- *SEI SEI geratu dira.**
SEINA geratu dira.

Appendices

APPENDIX 2 : IMPERATIVE VERB CONJUGATION - Agintera

NOR - NORK

	NI	HI	HURA	GU	ZU	ZUEK	HAIK
NIK	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
HIK	nazak/n	-	ezak/n	gaitzak/n	-	-	itzak/n
HARK	naza	-	beza	gaitza	-	-	bitza
	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
ZUK	nazazu	-	ezazu	gaitzazu	-	-	itzazu
ZUEK	nazazue	-	ezazue	gaitzazue	-	-	itzazue
HAIEK	nazate	-	bezate	gaitzazue	-	-	bitzate

NOR-NOR

	NI	HI	HURA	GU	ZU	ZUEK	HAIK
NIRI	-	hakit	bekit	-	zakizkit	zakizkidate	bekizkit
HIRI	-	-	bekik/n	-	-	-	bekizkik/n
HARI	-	hakio	bekio	-	zakizkio	zakizkiote	bekizkio
GURI	-	hakigu	bekigu	-	zakizkigu	zakizkigute	bekizkigu
ZURI	-	-	bekizu	-	-	-	bekizkizu
ZUEI	-	-	bekizue	-	-	-	bekizkizue
HAIEI	-	hakie	bekie	-	zakizkie	zakizkiote	bekizkie

NOR - NORI - NORK

	NIRI	HIRI	HARI	GURI	ZURI	ZUEI	HAIEI
NIK	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
HIK	iezadak/n	-	ieziaok/n	iezaguk/n	-	-	ieziaek/n
HARK	biezat	biezak/n	biezaio	biezagu	biezazu	biezazue	biezaie
GUK	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
ZUK	iezadazu	-	ieziaozu	iezaguzu	-	-	ieziaezu
ZUEK	iezadazue	-	ieziaozue	iezaguzue	-	-	ieziaezue
HAIEK	biezadate	biezaate biezanate	biezaiote	biezagute	biezazute	biezazuete	biezaiete

APPENDIX 3 : CONJUGATION OF SYNTHETIC VERBS

1. ATXIKI - TO HOLD, HOLD ONTO, HOLD BACK

Oraina			Iragana		
uaxe	T		nentxe	DA	N
hatxe	KIN		hentxe	KIN	N
datxe	O		zetxe	O	N
gaxe	GU		gentxe	GU	N
zaxe	ZU		zentxe	ZU	N
zaxe	ZUE	te	zentxe	ZUE	te
datxe	E		zetxe	E	N

2. EDUKI - TO HAVE, TO POSSESS

Orainaldia				Iraganaldia				
NOR		NORK		NOR		NORK		
na	u	ka	t	nin	u	ka	da n	
ha	u	ka	k/n	hin	u	ka	a/n a n	
da	u	ka	-	-	u	ka	- n	
ga	u	z	ka	gind	u	z	ka	gu n
za	u	z	ka	zind	u	z	ka	zu n
za	u	z	ka	zind	u	z	ka	(te) zuc n
da	u	z	ka	-	u	z	ka	te n

Iraganaldia			Baldintza			Ondorioa		
NORK		NOR	NORK		NOR	NORK		NOR
neu	(z)	kan	baneu	(z)	ka	neu	(z)	kake
heu	(z)	kan	baheu	(z)	ka	heu	(z)	kake
zeu	(z)	kan	baleu	(z)	ka	leu	(z)	kake
geneu	(z)	kan	bageneu	(z)	ka	geneu	(z)	kake
zeneu	(z)	kan	bazeneu	(z)	ka	zeneu	(z)	kake
zcneu	(z)	ka (ten)	bazencu	(z)	ka (te)	zeneu	(z)	kake (te)
zeu	(z)	ka (ten)	baleu	(z)	ka (te)	leu	(z)	kake (te)

3. EGIN - TO DO, TO MAKE

Orainaldia	Iraganaldia	Baldintza	Ondorioa	Agintera
dagit dagik/-n dagi dagigu dagizu dagizue dagite	negien hegien zegien genegien zenegien zenegiten zegiten	banegi bahegi balegi bagenegi bazenegi bazenegite balegite	negike hegike legike genegike zenegike bazenegikete legikete	egik/-n begi egizu egizue begite
dagitzat dagitzak/-n dagitza dagitzagu dagitzazu dagitzazue dagitzate	negitzan hegitzan zegitzan genegitzan zenegitzan zenegitzaten zegitzaten	banegitza bahegitza balegitza bagenegitza bazenegitza bazenegitzate balegitzate	negiz ke hegizke legizke genegizke zenegizke zenegizkete legizkete	egitzak/-n begitza egitzazu egitzazue begitzate

4. EGON - TO BE (LOCATION, PRESENT STATE), TO STAY, TO WAIT

Orainaldia	Iraganaldia	Baldintza	Ondorioa	Agintera
nago hago dago gaude zaude zaudete daude	nengoen hengoen zegoen geunden zeunden zeundeten zeuden	banengo bahengo balego bageunde bazeunde bazeundete baleude	nengoke hengoke legoke geundeke zeundeke zeundekete leudeke	nagoen hago bego gauden zaude zaudete beude

Oranaldia

Iraganaldia

NOR				NORI				NOR				NORI			
na	go			ki			t	nen	go			ki	da		n
ha	go			ki			k/n	hen	go			ki	a/na		n
da	go			ki			o	ze	go			ki	o		n
ga	go	z		ki			gu	gen	go	z		ki	gu		n
za	go	z		ki			zu	zen	go	z		ki	zu		n
za	go	z		ki			zue te	zen	go	z		ki	zue te		n
da	go	z		ki			e	ze	go	z		ki	e		n

Baldintza (ba-)

Ondorioa (-ke)

NOR				NORI			
(ba)	nen	go		ki	da		(ke)
(ba)	hen	go		ki	a/na		(ke)
(ba)	le	go		ki	o		(ke)
(ba)	gen	go	z	ki	gu		(ke)
(ba)	zen	go	z	ki	zu		(ke)
(ba)	zen	go	z	ki	zue te		(ke)
(ba)	le	go	z	ki	e		(ke)

5. EKARRI - TO BRING

Orainaldia			Iraganaldia					
NOR	NORI	NORK	NORK			NORI		
	t/da	t	ne	kar	(z)	ki	da	n
	k/n/a/na	k/n	he	kar	(z)	ki	a/na	n
	o	-	ze	kar	(z)	ki	o	n
dakar(z)ki	gu	gu	gen	kar	(z)	ki	gu	n
	zu	zu	zeu	kar	(z)	ki	zu	n
	zue	zue	zen	kar	(z)	ki	zue	te n
	e	te	ze	kar	(z)	ki	e	te n

Orainaldia		Iraganaldia			Baldintza		Ondorioa	
NOR	NORK	NORK	NOR	NORK	NOR	NORK	NOR	
na	kar	t	nekar (tza)	ren	banekar (tza)	nekar (z)	ke	
ha	kar	k/n	hekar (tza)	ren	bahekar (tza)	hekar (z)	ke	
da	kar	-	zekar (tza)	ren	balekar (tza)	lekar (z)	ke	
ga	kar tza	gu	genekar (tza)	ren	bagekar (tza)	genekar (z)	ke	
za	kar tza	zu	zenekar (tza)	ren	bazekar (tza)	zenekar (z)	ke	
za	kar zte	zue	zenekar (tza) (te)	n	bazekar (te) (tza)	zenekar (z)	ke (te)	
da	kar tza	te	zekar (tza) (te)	n	balekar (te) (tza)	lekar (z)	ke (te)	

6. EMAN - TO GIVE, TO SEEM, TO DEVOTE ONESELF

Agintera

NOR-NORK	NOR (sing.)-NORI (3. pers.)-NORK	NOR(pl.)-NORI (3. pers.)-NORK
demadan	-	-
emak	emaiok/n	emaizkiok/n
eman	bemakio	bemazkio
bema	-	-
emagun	-	-
emazu	emaiozu	emazkiozu
emazue	emaiozue	emazkiozue
bamate	bernakiote	bemazkiote

7. ENTZUN - TO LISTEN, TO HEAR

Orainaldia	Iraganaldia	Baldintza	Ondorioa
dantzut dantzuk/n dantzu dantzugu dantzuzu dantzuzue dantzute	nentzuen hentzuen zentzuen genentzuen zenentzuen zenentzuten zentzuten	banentzu bahentzu balentzu bagenentzu bazenentzu bazenentzute balentzute	nentzuke hentzuke lentzuke genentzuke zenentzuke zenentzukete lentzukete
dantzuzkit dantzuzkik/n dantzuzki dantzuzkigu dantzuzkizu dantzuzkizue dantzuzkite	nentzuzkien hentzuzkien zentzuzkien genentzuzkien zenentzuzkien zenentzuzkiten zentzuzkiten	banentzuzki bahentzuzki balentzuzki bagenentzuzki bazenentzuzki bazenentzuzkite balentzuzkite	nentzuzke hentzuzke lentzuzke genentzuzke zenentzuzke zenentzuzkete lentzuzkete

8. ERABILI - TO USE

Orainaldia		Ondorioa		Iraganaldia		Baldintza	
NOR	NORK	NORK	NOR	NORK	NOR	NORK	NOR
na rabil	t	nerabil	(tza) en	banerabil	(tza)	nerabil	(z) ke
ha rabil	k/n	herabil	(tza) en	baherabil	(tza)	herabil	(z) ke
da rabil	-	zerabil	(tza) en	balerabil	(tza)	lerabil	(z) ke
ga rabil tza	gu	generabil	(tza) en	bagenerabil	(tza)	generabil	(z) ke
za rabil tza	zu	zenerabil	(tza) en	bazenerabil	(tza)	zenerabil	(z) ke
za rabil zte	zue	zenerabil	(tza)(te)n	bazenerabil	(tza) (te)	zenerabil	(z) ke(te)
da rabil tza	te	zerabil	(tza)(te)n	balerabil	(tza) (te)	lerabil	(z) ke(te)

Orainaldia

NOR	NORI	NORK
	t/da	t
	k/n/a/na	k/n
	o	-
darabil(z)ki	gu	gu
	zu	zu
	zue	zue
	e	te

9. ERAMAN - TO CARRY, TO TRANSPORT, TO ENDURE

Orainaldia			Iraganaldia				
NOR		NORK	NOR		NORK		
ua	rama		t	niud	erama	da	u
ha	raua		k/n	hind	erama	a/na	n
da	rama		o	-	erama	-	n
ga	raua	tza	gu	giud	erama	tza	gu
za	raua	tza	zu	ziud	erama	tza	zu
za	rama	zte	zue	ziud	erama	zte	zue
da	rama	tza	e	-	erama	te	n

Orainaldia			Iraganaldia					
NOR	NORI	NORK	NORK		NORI			
	t/da	t	ne	raua	(z)	ki	da	n
	k/u/a/na	k/n	he	rama	(z)	ki	a/na	n
	o	-	ze	raua	(z)	ki	o	n
daraua(z)ki	gu	gu	geu	raua	(z)	ki	gu	n
	zu	zu	zen	raua	(z)	ki	zu	n
	zue	zue	zeu	rama	(z)	ki	zue	te
	e	te	ze	raua	(z)	ki	e	te

Iraganaldia		Baldintza		Ondorioa	
NORK	NOR	NORK	NOR	NORK	NOR
herana	(tza)	baneraua	(tza)	herana	(z) ke
herana	(tza)	baheraua	(tza)	herana	(z) ke
zeraua	(tza)	baieraia	(tza)	lerama	(z) ke
generama	(tza)	bagenerama	(tza)	generana	(z) ke
zenerama	(tza)	bazenerama	(tza)	zenerama	(z) ke
zeuerama	(tza) te	bazenerama	(tza) te	zenerama	(z) ke (te)
zcrama	(tza) te	baleraua	(tza) te	lerama	(z) ke (te)

10. ERION - TO FLOW, TO POUR

Orainaldia		Iraganaldia	
darit	darizkit	zeridan	zerizkidan
darik/n	darizkik/n	zeri(n)an	zerizki(n)an
dario	darizkio	zerion	zerizkion
darigu	darizkigu	zerigun	zerizkigun
darizu	darizkizu	zerizun	zerizkizun
darizue	darizkizue	zerizuen	zerizkizuen
darie	darizkie	zerien	zerizkien

11. EROAN - TO TAKE, TO ENDURE

Oraina		Iragana	
daroat	daroatzat	neroan	eroatzan
daroak/n	daroatzak/n	heroan	heroatzan
daroa	daroatza	zeroan	zeroatzan
daroagu	daroatzagu	generoan	generoatzan
daroazu	daroatzazu	zeneroan	zeneroatzan
daroazue	daroatzazue	zeneroaten	zeneroatzaten
daroate	daroatzate	zeroaten	zeroatzaten

12. ESAN (ERRAN) - TO SAY, TO TELL

Orainaldia	Iraganaldia	Agintera
diot	nioen	derradan
diok/n	hioen	errak/n
dio	zioen	berra
diogu	genioen	derragun
diozu	zenioen	errazu
diozue	zenioten	errazue
diote	zioten	berrate

13. ETORRI - TO COME

Orainaldia	Iraganaldia	Baldintza	Ondorioa	Agintera
nator	nentorren	banentor	nentorke	natorren
hator	hentorren	bahentor	hentorke	gator
dator	zeturren	baletor	letorke	betor
gatoz	gentozen	gabentoz	gentozke	gatozen
zatoz	zentozen	bazentoz	zentozke	zatoz
zatozte	zentozten	bazentozte	zentozkete	zatozte
datoz	zetozen	baletoz	letozke	betoz

Orainaldia				Iraganaldia						
NOR		NORI		NOR		NORI				
na	tor	ki	t	nen	tor	ki	da	n		
ha	tor	ki	k/n	hen	tor	ki	a/na	n		
da	tor	ki	o	ze	tor	ki	o	n		
ga	to	z	ki	gen	to	z	ki	gu	n	
za	to	z	ki	zen	to	z	ki	zu	n	
za	to	z	ki	zen	to	z	ki	zue	te	n
da	to	z	ki	ze	to	z	ki	e	n	

14. ETZAN- TO LAY DOWN, TO SET

Oraina	Iragana
natza	nctzan
hatza	hetzan
datza	zatzan
gautza	guentzan
zautza	zeuntzan
zautzate	zeuntzaten
dautza	zeutzan

15. EZAGUTU - TO KNOW (SOMEONE), TO RECOGNISE

Orainaldia			Iraganaldia		
NORK	NOR		NORK	NOR	
dazagu	(zki)	t	nezagu	(zki)	en
dazagu	(zki)	k/n	hezagu	(zki)	en
dazagu	(zki)		zezagu	(zki)	en
dazagu	(zki)	gu	genczagu	(zki)	en
dazagu	(zki)	zu	zenezagu	(zki)	en
dazagu	(zki)	zue	zenezagu	(zki)	(te) n
dazagu	(zki)	te	zezagu	(zki)	(te) n

16. IBILI - TO GO, TO MOVE, TO WALK, TO BE OCCUPIED

Orainaldia	Iraganaldia	Baldintza	Ondorioa	Agintera
nabil	nenbilen	banenbil	nenbilke	nabilen
habil	henbilen	bahenbil	henbilke	habil
dabil	zenbilen	balebil	lebilke	bebil
gabiltza	genbiltzan	bagenbiltza	genbilzke	gabiltzan
zabiltza	zenbiltzan	bazenbiltza	zenbilzke	zabiltza
zabiltzate	zenbiltzaten	bazenbiltzate	zenbilzketete	zabiltzate
dabiltza	zebiltzan	balebiltza	lebilzke	bebiltza

Orainaldia					Iraganaldia				
NOR		NORI			NOR		NORI		
na	bil	ki	t		nen	bil	ki	da	n
ha	bil	ki	k/n		hen	bil	ki	a/na	n
da	bil	ki	o		ze	bil	ki	o	n
ga	bil	z	ki	gu	gen	bil	z	ki	gu
za	bil	z	ki	zu	zen	bil	z	ki	zu
za	bil	z	ki	zue	zen	bil	z	ki	zue
da	bil	z	ki	e	ze	bil	z	ki	e

17. IHARDUN - TO SPEND TIME

Orainaldia	Iraganaldia
dihardut diharduk/n dihardu dihardugu diharduzu diharduzue dihardute	niharduen hiharduen ziharduen geniharduen zeniharduen zeniharduten ziharduten

18. IKUSI - TO SEE, TO VISIT, TO NOTICE

Orainaldia	Iraganaldia	Baldintza	Ondorioa	Agintera
dakusat dakusak/n dakusa dakusagu dakusazu dakusazue dakusate	nekusan hekusuan zekusan genekusan zenekusan zenekusaten zekusaten	banekusa bahekusa balekusa bagenekusa bazenekusa bazenekusate balekusate	nekuske hekuske lekuske genekuske zenekuske zenekuskete lekuskete	dakusadan ikusak/n bekusa dakusagun ikusazu ikusazue bekusate
dakuskit dakuskik/n dakuski dakuskigu dakuskizu dakuskizue dakuskite	nekuskien hekuskien zekuskien genekuskien zenekuskien zenekuskiten zekuskiten	banekuski bahekuski balekuski bagenekuski bazenekuski bazenekuskite balekuskite	nekusazke hekusazke lekusazke genekusazke zenekusazke zenekusazkete lekusazkete	dakuskidan ikusikik/n bekuski dakuskigun ikuskizu ikuskizue bekuskite

19. IRAKIN - TO BOIL, TO FERMENT

Orainaldia	Iraganaldia
dirakit dirakik/n diraki dirakigu dirakizu dirakizue dirakite	nirakien hirakien zirakien genirakien zenirakien zenirakiten zirakiten

20. IRAUN - TO ENDURE, TO LAST

Oriana	Iragana			Alegiazkoa		
diraut dirauk/n dirau diraugu dirauzu dirauzue diraute	nirau hirau irau genirau zenirau zenirau irau	tc te	eN eN eN eN N N	bairau bahirau balirau bagenirau bazenirau bazenirau balirau	te te	
				nirau hirau lirau genirau zenirau zenirau lirau	ke ke ke ke ke ke ke	te te

21. IRITZI - TO THINK OF, TO HAVE AN OPINION ABOUT

Oriana	Iragana			Alegiazkoa			
deritz T/DA K/N O GU ZU ZUE E	T K/N - GU ZU ZUF TE	neritz heritz zeritz generitz zeneritz zeneritz zeritz	DA K/N O GU ZU ZUF E	N N N N N N te te N	baueritz baheritz baleritz bageritz bazeneritz bazeneritz baleritz	T K/N O GU ZU ZUE E	te te te te te te te te
				neritz heritz leritz generitz zeneritz zeneritz leritz	DA K/N O GU ZU ZUE E	ke ke ke ke ke ke ke ke	te te te te te te te

22. IRUDI - TO SEEM

Oriana	Iragana			Alegiazkoa		
dirudit dirudik/n dirudi dirudigu dirudizu dirudzue dirudite	nirudi hirudi zirudi genirudi zenirudi zenirudi zirudi		eN eN eN eN eN N N	banirudi bahirudi balirudi bagenirudi bazenirudi bazenirudi balirudi		te te
				nirudi hirudi lirudi genirudi zenirudi zenirudi lirudi	ke ke ke ke ke ke ke	te te

23. JAKIN - TO KNOW (ABOUT), TO DISCOVER

Orainaldia		Iraganaldia			Baldintza			Ondorioa		
NORK	NOR	NORK	NOR		NORK	NOR	NORK	NOR		
dak	(zki) it	neki	(zki) en		baneki	(zki)	neki	(z)	ke	
daki	(zki) k/n	heki	(zki) en		baheki	(zki)	heki	(z)	ke	
daki	(zki) gu	zeki	(zki) en		baleki	(zki)	leki	(z)	ke	
daki	(zki) zu	geneki	(zki) en		bageneki	(zki)	geneki	(z)	ke	
daki	(zki) zue	zeneki	(zki) n		bazeneki	(zki)	zeneki	(z)	ke	
daki	(zki) te	zeneki	(zki) te n		bazeneki	(zki) te	zeneki	(z)	ke	te
daki	(zki) te	zeki	(zki) te n		baleki	(zki) te	leki	(z)	ke	te

24. JARIO - TO FLOW, TO POUR OUT

Orainaldia		Iraganaldia	
niri	darit	zeridan	
hiri	darik/n	zeri(n)an	
hari	dario	zerion	
guri	darigu	zerigun	
zuri	darizu	zerizun	
zeuei	darizue	zerizuen	
haiei	darie	zerien	

25. JARRAIKKI/JARRAITU - TO FOLLOW

Orain				Iragana			
narrai		T		ninderrai		T	N
harrai		K/N		hinderrai		K/N	N
darrai		O		zerrai		O	N
garrai	zki	GU		ginderrai	zki	GU	N
zarrai	zki	ZU		zinderrai	zki	ZU	N
zarrai	zki	ZUE	te	zinderrai	zki	ZUE	te
darrai	zki	E		zerrai	zki	E	N

26. JOAN - TO GO, TO LEAVE

Orainaldia	Iraganaldia	Baldintza	Ondorioa	Agintera
noa	nindoan	banindoa	nindoake	noan
hoa	hindoan	bahindoa	hindoake	hoa
doa	zihoan	balihoa	lihoake	bihoa
goaz	gindoazen	bagindoaz	gindoazke	goazen
zoaz	zindoazen	bazindoaz	zindoazke	zoaz
zoazte	zindoazten	bazindoazte	zindoazkete	zoazte
doaz	zihoazen	balihoaz	lihoazke	bihoaz

Orainaldia				Iraganaldia							
NOR				NORI							
n	oa		ki	t	nind	oa	ki	da	n		
h	oa		ki	k/n	hind	oa	ki	a/na	n		
d(ih)	oa		ki	o	zih	oa	ki	o	n		
g	oa	z	ki	gu	gind	oa	z	ki	gu		
z	oa	z	ki	zu	zind	oa	z	ki	zu		
z	oa	z	ki	zue	te	zind	oa	z	ki	zue	te
d(ih)	oa	z	ki	e	zih	oa	z	ki	e	n	

APPENDIX 4 : THE FIRST FOUR LEVELS OF THE HABE CURRICULUM

LEVEL ONE

DECLINATION	MORPHOLOGY	VERBS	SYNTAX
NOR NONGO(A) NON NOREN(A) NOREKIN NORENTZAT NORK <i>Partitive: <-(r)IK></i> NORI NONDIK NORA ZEREZ	<i>Definite article: <-A>/<-AK></i> <i>Indefinite article: BAT/BATZUK</i> <i>Personal pronouns: NI, ZU, GU...</i> <i>Demonstratives: HAU, HORI, HURA...</i> <i>Numbers (1-100)</i> ZENBAT? (lau ume_ / lau umeAK) NOLA / NOLAKO(A) <i>Participle: eginDA, apurtuTA...</i> <i>Postpositions:</i> ONDOAN GAINEAN / AZPIAN AURREAN / ATZEAN BARRUAN / KANPOAN <i>The time:</i> ZER ORDU DA? ZER ORDUTAN? NOIZ?: igandeAN, goizEAN... BESTEA / BESTE BAT <i>Weight: kilo bi sagar_</i> <i>Capacity: litro bat ur_</i>	<i>Auxiliaries:</i> NOR (naiz) NOR-NORI (zait/zaizkit) NOR-NORK (du/ditut) <i>Synthetic forms:</i> IZAN (naiz) EGON (nago) EDUKI (daukat/dauzkat) ETORRI (nator) JOAN (noa) IBILI (nabil) <i>Aspect:</i> etorri / etortZEN / etorriKO <i>The impersonal form:</i> ikusten DA <i>Verbal expressions (present):</i> ARI IZAN, BIZI IZAN, NAHI (GURA) IZAN, NAHI-AGO IZAN (GURAGO IZAN), BALIO IZAN, USTE IZAN, EZIN / AHAL IZAN NOMINALISATION ZERTARA: <-T(Z)ERÁ> ZERTARAKO: <-T(Z)ERAKO>	<i>Word order:</i> <i>he inquired element (galdegaia)Finals:</i> <-T(Z)EKO> <-T(Z)ERA> <i>Causals:</i> ETA <-LAKO> <i>Conditionals:</i> BA-> <i>Completives:</i> <-LA> <-NIK> <-T(Z)EKO> BAIETZ / EZETZ <i>Indirect interrogatives:</i> <(EA) ...-N>

LEVEL TWO

DECLINATION	MORPHOLOGY	VERBS	SYNTAX
<p><i>The indefinite form</i> (mugagabea)</p> <p>NOR NORI NORK Partive: <-(r)IK> NOREN NOREKIN NORENTZAT NON NONGO(A) NONDIK NORA NORENGAN NORENGANA NORENGANDIK ZERTAZ / NORTAZ / ZEREZ</p>	<p><i>Declined demonstratives:</i> HAU. HONEK, HONI...</p> <p><i>Postpositives:</i> NOREN BILA NOREN ALDE / KON TRA NOREN ARTEAN</p> <p><i>Indefinites:</i> EZER. INOR. INON... HONELA / HONELAKO(A)</p> <p><i>Weather:</i> NOIZ NOIZKO NOIZTIK NOIZ ARTE ORAIN DELA gutxi / DUELA gutxi gutxi BARRU</p> <p><i>Feelings:</i> GOSE IZAN. egarri izan...</p> <p>Io GURA izan...</p> <p><i>Uses of ERE</i></p> <p><i>The atmosphere:</i> EURIA ari du...</p> <p><i>Numbers</i> (1 - 1.000.000)</p>	<p><i>Present:</i> NOR-NORI-NORK (diot/ dakizkit)</p> <p><i>Verbal expressions</i> (<i>present</i>): BIZI IZAN. ARI IZAN. NAHI IZAN. BALIO IZAN. USTE IZAN. AHAL IZAN. EZIN IZAN...</p> <p><i>Potential:</i> NOR (naiteke) NOR-NORK (dezaket/ ditzaket)</p> <p><i>Past:</i> NOR (nintzen) NOR-NORK (nuen/hit- uen)</p> <p>NOMINALISATION ZER?: <-T(Z)EA> ZERTAN?: <-T(Z)EN> ZERTARAKO?: <- T(Z)EKO></p>	<p><i>Conditionals:</i> <BA></p> <p><i>Temporals:</i> <-T(Z)EAN> <-NEAN></p> <p><i>Causals:</i> <-LAKO> ETA</p> <p><i>Competives:</i> <-LA> / <-NIK> / <- T(Z)EKO> BAIETZ / EZETZ</p> <p><i>Indirect interrogatives:</i> <(EA) ...-N> <-N ALA EZ></p> <p><i>Finals:</i> <-T(Z)EKO> <- T(Z)EKO ASMOA></p>

LEVEL THREE

DECLINATION	MORPHOLOGY	VERBS	SYNTAX
<p>NORAINO (Sing. / Plur. / Indet.)</p> <p>NORANTZ (Sing. / Plur. / Indet.)</p> <p>NORAKO (ZERTARAKO) (Sing. / Plur. / Indet.)</p>	<p>NOIZKO?: biharKO/ igandeRAKO</p> <p><i>Intensive personal pronouns:</i> NEU, ZEU, BERA, GEU...</p> <p>NIK NEUK</p> <p><i>The suffix <-TXE>:</i> oraintxe, hortxe...</p> <p><i>Postpositions:</i> ZERI BURUZI/ BURUZKO(A) ZEREN BIDEZ (BITARTEZ) <-N ZEHAR></p> <p><i>Uncountable nouns:</i> ASKO ≠ HANDIA ZER ORDUTATIK? ZER ORDUTARA? ZER ORDUTAKO? ZENBATETAN?: biTAN, hiruTAN...</p> <p><i>Measurements:</i> <i>Weight:</i> kilo t'erdi sagar_ <i>Capacity:</i> litro bat esne_ <i>Quantity:</i> Botila bat ur_ <i>Dimensions:</i> hiru metro luze_ <i>Velocity:</i> ehun kilometro orduKO <i>Percentages:</i> ehunEKO hogeit_ <i>Adding up:</i> hiru ETA bi</p>	<p><i>Present:</i> ERAMAN (daramat/dara matzat) EKARRI (dakart/dakart- zat) JAKIN (dakit/dakizkit) ESAN (diot) IRUDITU (dirudi) NOR-NORK (nau)</p> <p><i>Past:</i> NOR (nintzen) NOR-NORK (nuen/nit- uen) EGON (nengoen) EDUKI (neukan/neuz- kan) IBILI (nenbilen) JOAN (nindoan) ETORRI (nentorren)</p> <p><i>Verbal expressions (past):</i> BIZI IZAN, ARI IZAN, NAHI IZAN, GURA IZAN. NAHIAGO IZAN. BALIO IZAN, USTE IZAN, AHAL IZAN, EZIN IZAN...</p> <p><i>Problem cases:</i> LAGUNDU, UTZI, DEITU</p> <p><i>Impersonal form:</i> ikusten ZAIO</p>	<p><i>Clause order (GALDE- GAIA)</i></p> <p><i>Interrogatives</i></p> <p><i>Affirmatives</i></p> <p><i>Negatives</i></p> <p><i>Relative:</i> <-N mutilA> <-N(A)></p> <p><i>Completives:</i> <-LA>/<-NIK>/ <- T(Z)EKO></p> <p><i>Comparatives:</i> <-AGO> <-EGI> <-EN(A)> <-BAINO ...-AGO> BAINO ...GEHIAGO/ GUTXIAGO <-N BAINO ...-AGO></p> <p><i>Irregular forms:</i> HOBE, HOBETO...</p> <p><i>Modals:</i> BEZALA / BEZAL AKO(A) <-N BEZALA> <-N BEZALAKO(A)></p>

LEVEL FOUR

DECLINATION	MORPHOLOGY	VERBS	SYNTAX
NORENGATIK NONGO(A)/ NOREN(A) <i>The indefinite form:</i> 1. <i>Proper nouns</i> ZER. ZEIN. 2. <i>Interrogatives</i> ZER. ZEIN. ZENBAT 3. <i>Numbers:</i> LAU <i>ume</i> / LAU <i>ume</i> AK 4. <i>Indefinite adjectives</i> ASKO GUTXI EDOZEIN ZENBAIT HAINBAT PILA BAT	<i>Indefinites:</i> EDONOR (NORNAHI) NORBAIT (NOR EDO NOR) ZER ORDUTARAKO? DATORREN HUR- RENGO <i>Expressions for Quantity:</i> aita ETA BIOK GUTXI GORABEHARA ehun BAT chun INGURU <(R)EN BAT / BAT- ZUK> <i>Borrowed words:</i> kamiOI. naZIO. fuSIO. berTSO. zienTZIA. falTSU... EGIN nahi dut ≠ zuk EGITEA nahi dut <i>Arithmetic operations</i>	<i>Passive tense:</i> NOR-NORI (zitzaidan/zitzaizkidan) NOR-NORI-NORK (nion/nizkion) JAKIN (nekien/nekizk- ien) <i>Imperative:</i> NOR (zaitez) NOR-NORK (ezazu/ itzazu) <i>Non-conjugated forms:</i> ETORRI! EGON / IZAN / ARI IZAN NOMINALISATION ZER?: <-T(Z)EA> ZERTAN?: <-T(Z)EN> ZERTARA?: <- T(Z)ERA> ZERTARAKO?: <- T(Z)EKO> ZERGATIK?: <- T(Z)EAGATIK>	<i>Concessives:</i> ARREN NAHIZ ETA <i>Exclamatories:</i> BAI ...-LA! ZEIN ...-N! A ZER NOLAKO ...-N! ZENBAT ...-N! HAU hotza! BAIETZ egin! / EZETZ joan! <i>Comparatives:</i> BEZAIN/ BESTE <i>Causatives:</i> <BAIT-> <i>Relatives:</i> <-TAKO>, <-RIKO> <i>Distributives:</i> BAI... BAI... / EZ... EZ... BATA... BESTEA... ALDE BATETIK... BESTETIK. <i>Modals:</i> <-N MODUAN> / <-N MODUKOA> <-T(Z)EKO MODUAN> <i>Temporal:</i> <-N BITARTEAN> <-N BAKOITZEAN> <-N GUZTIETAN> <-N GEHIENETAN>

APPENDIX 5 : DECLENSION TABLES

DEMONSTRATIVES						
NOR	hau	hori	hura	hauek	horiek	haiek
NORK	honek	horrek	hark	hauek	horiek	haiek
NORI	honi	horri	hari	hauei	horiei	haiei
NOREN	honen	horren	haren	hauen	horien	haien
NOREKIN	honekin	horrekin	harekin	hauekin	horiekin	haiekin
NORENTZAT	honentzat	horrentzat	harentzat	hautentzat	horientzat	haientzat
ZERTAZ	honetaz	horretaz	hartaz	hautetaz	horietaz	haietaz
NON	honetan	horretan	hartan	hautetan	horietan	haietan
NONDIK	honetatik	horretatik	hartatik	hautetatik	horietatik	haietatik
NORA	honetara	horretara	hartara	hautetara	horietara	haietara
NORAINO	honetaraino	horretaraino	hataraino	hautearaino	horietaraino	haietaraino
NORANTZ	honetarantz	horretarantz	hatarantz	hautearantz	horietarantz	haietarantz
NONGO	honetako	horretako	hartako	hautetako	horietako	haietako
NORAKO	honetarako	horretarako	hartarako	hautetarako	horietarako	haietarako
NORENGAN	honengan	horrengan	harengan	hauengan	horiengan	haiengan
NORENGANDIK	honengandik	horrengandik	harengandik	hauengandik	horiengandik	haiengandik
NORENGANA	honengana	horrengana	harengana	hauengana	horiengana	haiengana
NORENGATIK	hone(n)gatik	horre(n)gatik	hare(n)gatik	haue(n)gatik	horie(n)gatik	haie(n)gatik

INTERROGATIVES					
NOR	nortzuk	zer	zein	zeintzuk	zenbat
NORK	nortzuek	zerk	zeinek	zeintzuek	zenbatek
NORI	nortzuei	zeri	zeini	zeintzuei	zenbati
NOREN	nortzuen	zeren	zeinen	zeintzuen	zenbaten
NOREKIN	nortzuekin	zerekin	zeinekin	zeintzuekin	zenbatekin
NORENTZAT	nortzuentzat	zerentzat	zeinentzat	zeintzuentzat	zenbatentzat
NORTAZ	nortzuetaz	zertaz	zeinetaz	zeintzuetaz	zenbatetaz
-	-	ZEREZ	zeinez	zeintzuz	zenbatez
NON	-	zertan	zeinetan	zeintzuetan	zenbate(t)an
NONDIK	-	zertatik	zeinetatik	zeintzuetatik	zenbatetatik
NORA	-	zertara	zeinetara	zeintzuetara	zenbatetara
NORAINO	-	zertaraino	zeinetaraino	zeintzuetaraino	zenbatetaraino
NORANTZ	-	zertarantz	zeinetarantz	zeintzuetarantz	zenbatetarantz
NONGO	-	zereko	zeinetako	zeintzuetako	zenbate(ta)ko
NORAKO	-	zertarako	zeinetarako	zeintzuetarako	zenbatetarako
NORENGAN	nortzuegan	-	zeinengan	zeintzuegan	zenbatengan
NORENGANDIK	nortzuegandik	-	zeinengandik	zeintzuegandik	zenbatengandik
NORENGANA	nortzuegana	-	zeinengana	zeintzuegana	zenbatengana
NORENGATIK	nortzuegatik	zergatik	zeinengatik	zeintzuegatik	zenbatengatik

DECLENSION OF NOUN PHRASES			
CASE	<i>Singular</i>	<i>plural</i>	<i>indeterminate</i>
NOR	-A	-AK	-Æ
NORK	-AK	-IK	-(e)K
NORI	-ARI	-EI	-(r)I
NOREN	-AREN	-EN	-(r)EN
NOREKIN	-AREKIN	-EKIN	-(r)EKIN
NORENTZAT	-ARENZAT	-ENTZAT	-(r)ENTZAT
ZERTAZ	-AZ	-EZ	-(e)Z
NON	-(e)AN	-ETAN	-(e)(TA)N
NONDIK	-(e)TIK	-ETATIK	-(e)(TA)TIK
NORA	-(e)RA	-ETARA	-(e)(TA)RA
NORAINO	-(e)RAINO	-ETARAINO	-(e)(TA)RAINO
NORANTZ	-(e)RANTZ	-ETARANTZ	-(e)(TA)RANTZ
NONGO	-(e)KO	-ETAKO	-(e)(TA)KO
NORAKO	-(e)RAKO	-ETARAKO	-(e)(TA)RAKO
Partative	-	-	-(r)IK
NORTZAT	-	-	-TZAT
NORENGAN	-A(REN)GAN	-ENGAN	-(r)ENGAN
NORENGANDIK	- A(REN)GANDIK	-ENGANDIK	-(r)ENGANDIK
NORENGANA	- A(REN)GANA	-ENGANA	-(r)ENGANA
NORENGATIK	- A(REN)GATIK	-ENGATIK	-(r)ENGATIK

MORPHOLOGICAL RULES FOR DECLENSIONS

1. Before adding the corresponding suffix, you should remove the article:

mahaiA --> mahai-RA; aulkiA --> aulki-RA

2. The letters which appear in parenthesis are used as follows:

Consonant --> **-E-**
Vowel --> **-R-**

(mutil + K --> mutil-**E-k**)
(seme + I --> seme-**R-i**)

3. A + A = A
A + E = E
E + A = A
E + E = E

(neskA + AREN --> neskAren)
E (neskA + EN --> neskEn)
EA (semE + AREN --> semEAren)
EE (semE + EN --> semEEen)

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

NOR	ni	hi	hura	gu	zu	zuek	haiek
NORK	nik	hik	hark	guk	zuk	zuek	haiek
NORI	niri	hiri	hari	guri	zuri	zuei	haiei
NOREN	nire	hire	haren	gure	zure	zuen	haien
NOREKIN	nirekin	hirekin	harekin	gurekin	zurekin	zuekin	haikin
NORENTZAT	niretzat	hiretzat	harentzat	guretzat	zuretzat	zuentzat	haientzat
ZERTAZ	nitaz	hitaz	hartaz	gutaz	zutaz	zuetaz	haietaz
NORENGAN	ni(re)gan	hi(re)gan	harengan	gu(re)gan	zu(re)gan	zuengan	haiengan
NORENGANDIK	ni(re)gandik	hi(re)gandik	harengandik	gu(re)gandik	zu(re)gandik	zuengandik	haiengandik
NORENGANA	ni(re)gana	hi(re)gana	harengana	gu(re)gana	zu(re)gana	zuengana	haiengana
NORENGATIK	ni(re)gatik	hi(re)gatik	harengatik	gu(re)gatik	zu(re)gatik	zuengatik	haiengatik

ADVERBS OF PLACE

NON	hemen	hor	han
NONDIK	hemendik	hortik	handik
NORA	hona	horra	hara
NORAINO	honaino	horraino	haraino
NORANTZ	honantz	horrantz	harantz
NONGO	hemengo	horko	hango
NORAKO	honako	horrako	harako

APPENDIX 6 - COMPOUND VERBS - Eman, Hartu, Izan, Ukan

EMAN

aburu eman; to express one's opinion.
aditzera eman; to explain.
aholku eman; to advise.
aintza eman; to glorify.
aitor eman; to believe.
aldia eman; to spend time.
amor eman; to give in.
amtza eman; to glorify.
argitara eman; to give birth, to publish.
arinari eman; to escape.
arrazoiak eman; to give reasons.
astia eman; to pass the time.
atzea eman; to disdain.
atzera eman; to give back.
aurpegi eman; to face, to confront.
aurrea eman; to face, to confront.
aurrez eman; to loan in advance.
azkena eman; to finish.
baietza eman; to agree, to assent.
baimena eman; to permit.
balio eman; to value, to appraise.
bide eman; to give an opportunity.
botu eman; to vote.
buru eman; to confront; to resist.
denbora eman; to spend time.
dolu eman; to sympathize, to console.
ederrak eman; to hit, to beat.
epai eman; to judge.
erakusten eman; to explain.
eskerrak eman; to thank.
eskuak eman; to reconcile.
eskubidea eman; to authorize.
ezetza eman; to refuse.
eztulak eman; to have a coughing fit.
fruitu eman; to produce.
gatz eman; to salt.
gerotan eman; to loan.
gibel eman; to throw away, to reject.
gogoak eman; to occur to.
hitz eman; to promise.
hur eman; to guess.
huts eman; to cheat, to disappoint.
ihesari eman; to escape.
indar eman; to strengthen.
itz eman; to promise.
jaten eman; to nourish.
kasketak eman; to occur to.
kontu eman; to account for.
leku eman; to approve, to welcome.
lepoa eman; to disdain.

lotsa eman; to earn respect.
lurra eman; to inter, to bury.
min eman; to hurt.
muin eman; to kiss the hand.
musu eman; to kiss.
nazka eman; to disgust.
ohore eman; to honor.
oneritzia eman; to approve of.
onespena eman; to accept.
ongi-etorria eman; to welcome.
ontzat eman; to confirm, to admit.
pot eman; to kiss, to hug.
poz eman; to give joy.
presa eman; to urge.
saria eman; to reward.
segida eman; to give continuity.
solas eman; to make conversation.
su eman; to set fire to.
tankera eman; to guess, to decipher.
tiro eman; to shoot.
titia eman; to suckle.
zeregin eman; to give (someone) a job to do.
zorionak eman; to congratulate.
zorretan eman; to loan.

HARTU

aintzat hartu; to take into consideration.
arnasa hartu; to breathe, to relax.
aurrehartu; to anticipate.
azkenohartu; to make the last remark.
babespain hartu; to take under one's protection.
begitan hartu; to hate.
behartu; to compel, to constrain.
buruan hartu; to memorize, to ponder.
burutan hartu; to consider.
ditia hartu; to nurse.
ederrak hartu; to be defeated.
eguzki hartu; to sunbathe.
eihartu; to dry; to wilt.
elkar hartu; to agree, to gather together.
erdiohartu; half-conscious.
esku hartu; to participate, to interfere.
estu hartu; to be a threat (in competition).
ezbehartu; to not force.
gain hartu; to dominate, to win, to conquer.
gaitz hartu; to become ill.
gaizki hartu; to maltreat.
gihartu; to become lean.
goganbehartu; to worry, to suspect.
gogoan hartu; to take notice of, to remember.
gogor hartu; to treat harshly, to reprimand.
gogotan hartu; to consider.
haizea hartu; to walk. {to take the air; lit.}
ihartu; to wither, to shrivel.
ondo hartu; to treat well.
onera hartu; to accept.
ontzat hartu; to approve (of).
parte hartu; to participate.

poz hartu; to enjoy.
semetzat hartu; to adopt a child.
su hartu; to catch fire.
susmo hartu; to suspect.
txartzat hartu; to take the wrong way.
usain hartu; to smell, to suspect.
zahartu; to grow old, to age.
zehartu; to twist (away), to avoid.
zor hartu; to be brilliant, to clear up (sky).
zorretan hartu; to buy on credit.

IZAN

abizena izan; to call by one's name.
ados izan; to agree.
ageri izan; to appear, to be obvious.
ahal izan; can.
aiher izan; to feel like, to long to.
ajola izan; to take care.
alboko izan; to confine.
aldameneko izan; to be contiguous, to border.
aldeko izan; to be a supporter of.
alferrik izan; to be in vain.
antza izan; to look like, to resemble.
ardura izan; to be careful, to take care of.
ari izan; to be busy with, to be occupied.
arrazoi izan; to be right.
asarre izan; to be angry.
aski izan; to be sufficient.
asmo izan; to intend, to pretend.
atsegin izan; to like, to please.
aurpegi izan; to be daring, to have nerve.
aurre izan; to precede.
axola izan; to care.
balio izan; to cost, to be worth.
bat izan; to be united; to agree.
bazkide izan; to belong.
begiramen izan; to respect, to esteem.
behar izan; to need, to have to.
beldur izan; to fear, to be frightened.
berdin izan; to equal, to be the same.
bihurri izan; to be a rascal.
bildur izan; to be afraid.
bitarteko izan; to intercede, to mediate.
buru izan; to lead, to chair.
damu izan; to repent, to regret.
duin izan; to deserve, to be worthy of.
eder izan; to be pleased, to appreciate.
egarri izan; to be thirsty.
egoki izan; to suit, to be convenient.
elkarrekin izan; to be together.
erruki izan; to be compassionate.
eskuko izan; to be the owner of.
ezagun izan; to be evident, to be clear.
ezin izan; to be impossible.
falta izan; to lack, to be missing.
gabe izan; to lack, to be without.
gai izan; to be capable of, to be apt.
gaitz izan; to be difficult.

gaitzi izan; to be disagreeable.
garaile izan; to be victorious.
gogaide izan; to be compatible, to be congenial.
gogoko izan; to be pleasing; to please.
gose izan; to be hungry.
gauza izan; to be useful, to be capable of.
gura izan; to want.
gurago izan; to prefer.
haurra izan; to give birth.
herabe izan; to be shy.
higuin izan; to be disgusting, to hate, to detest.
hobe izan; to be better.
hotz izan; to be cold, to feel the cold.
hozkirri izan; to feel chilly.
iduri izan; to seem like, to resemble.
ikara izan; to be afraid.
izu izan; to be afraid.
jabe izan; to own, to be in control of.
jai izan; to have a vacation, to be lost.
jantxakur izan; to sponge off people.
joera izan; to have a tendency.
jori izan; to be abundant.
kakagale izan; to want to defecate.
kakagura izan; to want to defecate.
kakalarri izan; to need to defecate.
kapaz izan; to be able to, to be of use.
kexu izan; to be preoccupied, to be anxious.
komeni izan; to be convenient, to be helpful.
larde izan; to be afraid, to be timid.
larregi izan; to be left over, to be too much.
Larri izan; to be afraid, to be nervous.
lehen izan; to be first, to precede.
logale izan; to be sleepy, to fall asleep.
logura izan; to be sleepy.
lotsa izan; to be ashamed, to be embarrassed,
to be afraid of.
luze izan; to endure.
maite izan; to love.
maiteago izan; to prefer.
maiz izan; to be frequent.
mendeko izan; to be dependent on.
menpeko izan; to be dependent on,
to be dominated by.
merezi izan; to deserve, to be worthwhile,
to be worth (doing).
min izan; to hurt, to feel pain.
mintzo izan; to say, to be talking.
morroi izan; to be a servant (male).
muga izan; to border on.
mugako izan; to border on.
munta izan; to be important.
nabari izan; to be obvious.
nagi izan; to be lazy.
nahi izan; to want.
nahiago izan; to prefer.
nahiko izan; to be sufficient.
ohi izan; to be accustomed to.
oinordeko izan; to inherit.
on izan; to be good.

ondoko izan; to be close to.
ondore izan; to have an effect.
ongi izan; to be well.
opa izan; to desire (for), to wish (for).
oparo izan; to be very rich.
partaide izan; to participate.
parte izan; to participate.
pixagale izan; to want to urinate.
presa izan; to be in a hurry.
segur izan; to be sure.
sori izan; to be permitted.
txizalarri izan; to want to urinate.
ugari izan; to be abundant.
ume izan; to have a child.
urri izan; to be scarce.
urrikal izan; to sympathize with.
zilegi izan; to be allowed.
zimir izan; to be a miser.
zoroa izan; to go crazy.

UKAN

ahal ukan; can, to be able to.
balio ukan; to cost to be worth.
behar ukan; to need, to have to,
must, should, ought to.
espero ukan; to expect, to hope.
ezin ukan; to be unable to, can't, cannot.
falta ukan; to need.
gogo ukan; to like, to desire.
gogoa ukan; to recall, to think of.
gorroto ukan; to hate, to detest, to despise.
haur ukan; to have a baby, to give birth.
maite ukan; to love.
merezi ukan; to deserve, to have merit,
to be worth (doing).
min ukan; to hurt, to feel pain.
nahi ukan; to want, to like.
nahiago ukan; to prefer.
narda ukan; to disgust, to incite loathing,
to repulse.
opa ukan; to desire (for), to wish (for), to offer.
parte ukan; to participate, to take part.
pena ukan; to suffer, to have pain.
plazer ukan; to please.
premia ukan; to need.
uste ukan; to think, to believe, to suppose, to trust.
zor ukan; to owe.

- A**
-a 47, 124
a 23, 40
 a few 125
a zer nolako... 256
-(a)z 108
abiadura 389
 about 68, 393
 about 130
 about enough 319
 about to 319
 about/around 349
 absolutely 120
 accent 13
 auxiliary verb 15
 plural 14
 stressed words 15
 verbs 14
 accompany 227
 according to 137, 319
 across 137
 adberbioak 30
adina 326
 aditz languntzailea 182
 inpertsonala 185
 numeroa 186
 pertsona 182
 aditza
 aditz bereziak 227
 aditz laguntzailea 219
 aditz lokuzioak 216
 adizki trinkoak 212
 agintera 207
 ahalera 203
 aspect
 etor zaitez 208
 etorri 207
 indikatiboa 189
 indikatibozko lehenaldia 197
 indikitibozko orainaldi 191
 nor (izan) 192
 nor-nori (izan) 192
 nor-nori-nork (ukan) 195
 nor-nork (ukan) 194
 lehenaldia 214
 modua 188
 orainaldia 212
 zatoz 208
 adizki
 perifrastikoak 176
 trinkoak 176
 adjectives 21, 110
 participles 21
 adjektiboak 21, 110
 partizipioak 21
 adverbioak 107
 adverbs 30, 107
 adverse 272
afaldu 187
 affirmatives 254
 affixes 165
 against 135
-ago 322
agurrak 377
ahalbait ...-en(a) 329
ahalik eta ...-en(a) 328
 ahalmenak 373
ahaztu 230, 245
 ahoskera 3
-ak 23, 56
ala 276
alboan 132
aldamenean 132
aldatu 231
alde 135
aldera 350
aldetik 139
 aldia 187
 transitive 188
 alfabetoa
 ahoskera 3
alfer hutsa 122
 alphabet
 pronunciation 3
 already 357
 also 272
 also 144, 162
 although 313
 among 134
 an 124
 and 186
 and...also 272

- another 127
 -any 126
 anyone 152
 anyway 274
 apart from 298
 apparently 236, 319
 approximate numbers 393
arabera 137
 -arazi 233
 -arazo 233
arduratu 231
are ...-ago 328
 -arekin 66
 -aren 60
 -a(ren)gan 88
 -a(ren)gana 92
 -a(ren)ganaino 96
 -a(ren)ganantz 94
 -a(ren)gandik 90
 -a(ren)gatik 97
 -arentzat 64
 -ari 58
ari 40
ari izan 225
 around 140, 393
 around about 350
arras 120
arrunt 120
artean 134
 article, the 23
 artikulu
 zehaztua 23
 zehaztugabea 24
 artikulua 23
 as 295, 315, 318, 319, 320
 as far as 80
 as for what 294
 as it is 274
 as well 145, 272
 as well 145
 as well as... 277
 as...as 326
 as...as possible 328
aski 116
asko 33, 43, 155, 186
asko is not handia 155
askotan 339
 aspect 177
 future 179
 habitual 178
 imperative 177
 near past 177
 perfect 180
 potential 177
 subjunctive 177
 aspektua 177
 etorri 177
 etorria 180
 etorriko 179
 etortzen 178
astea 354
 at 133
 at about 350
 at what time 345, 347
atzean 132
 atzizkiak 165
 -au 46
 aurkariak 272
aurrean 132
 auxiliary verb 182
 impersonal 185
 number 186
 person 182
 average 390
 -az 68
 azentua 13
 aditz laguntzaileak 15
 aditzak 14
 hitz markatuak 15
 plurala 14
azpian 130

B
ba 296
 back 132
 background 30
bai...bai... 277
bai...-la! 256
baietz! 258
baiezkoak 254
baina 272
baino ...-ago 325

- bait** 149
bait 293
baita 145
baita...ere 145, 272
baldin ba- 297
 baldintzako perpausak 296
 baldintzako perpausak 54
baliatu 231
balio izan 186
banaka 392
barik 130, 210, 275
barkamena 380
barnean 133
barruan 133
baso bat ur is not ur baso bat 386
bat 24, 124, 393
bata...bestea... 277
batean 24
batere 120
batetik...bestetik... 278
batez beste 390
bati 24, 40
 batua xix
batzu 125
batzuei 24
batzuetan 24
batzuk 124
batzu(k) 24
bazkaldu 187
 be difficult 245
 be easy 245
 be occupied in 233
 because 291, 295
 because of 295
 begin 228
begiratu 234
behar 231
beharra 231
behera 142
 behind 132
 believe 232
-bera 49
berandu 352
beraren 161
beraz (hortaz) 278
bere 161
 beside 132, 137
beste 326
beste bat 127
bestea 127
bezain 326
bezala 317
bezalako(a) 317
bidez 136
bila 136
bitartez 136
biziki 119
 boil 233
 bokalak 4
 borrowed words 11
 both 392
 both ... and 277
 both... as well as... 277
buruko mina 371
buruz 138
but 272, 273
 by 137, 297
 by means of 68
 by now 357
 by own means 139
- C**
 call 228
 cannot 232
 capacity 385
 cardinals 31
 causal sentences 291
 zergatik 291
 clauses
 comparative 321
 concessive clauses 312
 conditional 148
 conditional 150
 conditional clauses 54, 296
 interrogative 148
 interrogative 150
 negative 148, 150
 cold 369
 colours 373
 come 245
 completely 120
 compounds 169

verbs 172
 with nouns and adjectives 171
 comprehend 228
 concerning what 294
 conjunction 271
 consonants 12
 pronunciation of 4–6
 coordination 271
 cost 229
 courtesy expressions 377
 curious 370

D

-da 109
dagoeneko 357
data 361
 dates 361
datorren is not hurrengo 356
 day 353
 declension 37
 declension cases 39
 -a organic 48
 animates 45
 -au diphthong 46
 borrowings 48
 close proximity 44
 for what purpose (destinative) 86
 for where 86
 for whom (benefactive) 64
 from 74, 82
 inanimates 45
 indefinite case 41
 indefinite expressions 43
 interrogatives 42
 morphology of composition 46
 number 40
 numbers 42
 partitive 53
 proper nouns 41
 special cases 43
 suffixes 49
 through 74
 towards (directional) 78
 where 74
 where (inessive) 72
 where (inessive/locative) 88

where, of 82
 where, to (allative) 76
 where, up to 80
 who (ergative) 56
 who(absolute) 51
 whom, for 58
 whom, for (causal) 97
 whom, from (ablative) 90
 whom, from (dative) 58
 whom, to 58, 92
 whom, to (allative) 92
 whom, towards (directional) 94
 whom, up to (termative) 96
 whose (possessive-genitive) 60
 with whom (comitative) 66
 word order 40
 words ending in a 47
 words ending in r 47
 definite article 23
 deitu 228
 deklinabidea 37
 deklinabide-kasuak 39
 amaitutako hitzak 47
 atzizkiak 49
 -au diptongoa 46
 bizidunak/bitzigabeak 45
 hitz elkarketa 46
 hitzen ordena 40
 izen bereziak 41
 kasu bereziak 43
 mugagabea 41
non 72
nondik 74
nongo 82
nor (absolutiboa) 51
nora 76
noraino 80
norako 86
norantz 78
norekin 66
noren 60
norengan 88
norengana 92
norenganaino 96
norenganantz 94
norengandik 90

norengatik 97
norentzat 64
nori (datiboa) 58
nork (ergatiboa) 56
nortzat 100
 numeroa 40
 partitiboa 53
 plural hurbila 44
 zenbait esapide mugagabe 43
 zenbakiak 42
zerez 68
zertaz 68
 demonstratives 26
dena dela 274
dena den 274
 denbora 333
 denborazko perpausak 303
 depending on 137
 destinate clauses 288
dexente (sano) 118
 dialects xix
 dimensions 387
 dimentsioak 387
 diminutives 165
 diphthongs
 pronunciation of 4
 diptongoak 4
 disjunctive 275
 distributiboak 277
 distributive 277
 domination 141
 down 142
-dura 49
 during 137

E

-(e)an 72
-(e)k 56
-(e)ko 82
-(e)n 72
-(e)ra 76
-(e)raino 80
-(e)rako 86
-(e)rantz 78
-(e)tako 82
-(e)tan 72
-(e)tara 76
-(e)taraino 80
-(e)tarako 86
-(e)tarantz 78
-(e)tatik 74
-(e)taz 68
-(e)tik 74
-(e)z 68
 each 392
edo 149, 275
edo...edo 276
edonor 148, 152
edozein 33, 43
eduki 100, 182, 371
 edukiera 385
-egi 323
egin/egitea 221
egon 225
eguna 353
egunak 353
eguraldia 364
ehunekoak 389
-ei 58
ei 235
 either 272
 either ... or 276
-ek 56
-ekin 66
 ekin 234
 elative 278
elkar 163
eman 100
ematen 380
 emphasis 121
-en 60
-engan 88
-engana 92
-enganaino 96
-enganantz 94
-engandik 90
-engatik 97
 enough 116, 118
 entirely 120
-entzat 64
erabat 120
 eragiketa matematikoak 388

erakusleak 26
erazi 233
-erazo 233
ere 272
ere
 uses of 144
ere ba 272
ere bai / ere ez 145
ere ez 272
 ere-ren erabilera 144
 erlatibozko perpausak 299
erraza 245
esker 139
eskerrak ...-n 258
esku 140
eta 186, 292
eta biok 391
-etako 82
-etan 72
-etara 76
-etaraino 80
-etarako 86
-etarantz 78
-etatik 74
etorri 245
euria 365, 366
etsi 234
 even 272
 even so 274
 exactly 348
 except for 298
 exclamations 255
 expressions
 comparative 328
 extremely 119
ez 10, 28, 68
 instrument 69
 material 69
 space 69
 theme 69
 time 69
 time(duration) 69
 way/manner 69
ez...ez... 277
ezetz 258
enezik...ere 298

ezezko perpausak 53
ezezkoak 254
ezik 298
ezin 232
ezta 145
ezta...ere 145, 272

F

fairly 116
falta izan 229
 farewells 377
 feelings 369
 focus 30
 fonetika 12
 for 141
 for that 279
 for what intention 288
 for what purpose/outcome 289
 for what time 347
 for when 335
 for whom (benefactive) 64
 forget 230, 245
 forgiveness 380
 fractions 388
 frequency 337
 from 74, 345
 from what 291, 319
 from when 335, 337
 lul(l) 386

G

gabe (barik) 130
ganean 130
 galdegai 28
 galdetzailak 35
 galdezkoak 253, 262
 baiezkoak 262
 galdegai 263
 negitiboak 265
garaiz 352
garren 32
gaurkoan 340
gehiago 43
gehintasunak 54
 gender 20
 generoa 20

gero 257, 352
gero eta ...-ago 328
-gintza 49
-go 84
go 245
 go to do something 288
gogor 155
gogoratu 230
 going to be 349
gora 142
gosaldu 187
gose 369
 greetings 377
gu 22
gura 370
gure 60
gurekin 66
guretzat 64
gustatu 235
gutaz 68
gutxi 33, 43, 155
gutxi gorabehera 393
guzti 33
guztiz (zeharo) 120

H

h, use of 6, 10
haiek 26
hain 324
hainbat 33, 43
hainbeste 324
hala 108
hala ere 274
hala eta guztiz ere 274
hala...nola... 277
halako 112
halakoa! 258
han 72
hanantz 78
handi 155
handik 74
hango 82
hara 76
haraino 80
harako 86
harantz 78

haren 161
harengandik 90
harridurazkoak 255
hartu 100
hasi 228
 nahi 228
 nahian 228
hau 26
hauei 40
hauek 26, 40
 hautakariak 275
 headache 371
 helburuzko perpausak 288
 help 227
hemen 72
hemendik 74
hemengo 82
 her's 161
hi 22
hik 56
 hilabeteak 355
hire 60
hi(re)gan 88
hi(re)gana 92
hi(re)ganaino 96
hi(re)ganantz 94
hi(re)gandik 90
hi(re)gatik 97
hirekin 66
hirezat 64
hiri 58
 his 161
hitaz 68
hona 76
honaino 80
honako 86
honela 108
honelako 112
honetaz 69
honez 69
honezaz 69
honezkero 357
hor 72
hori 26
horiek 26
horko 82

horra 76
horraino 80
horrako 86
horrantz 78
horregatik 279
horrela 108
horrelako 112
hortik 74
hotzak 369
 how 107, 315, 318
 how 111
 how is it/what is it like? 114
 how little 257
 how many 257
 how many times 339
 how much 257
 how often 338
 hungry 369
hura 26

I
 I myself 159
 I personally 162
 I wonder 235
 if by any chance 235
ihardun 233
-ik 108
ikaragarri 119
ilargia 367
 ilatiboak 278
 in between 134
 in case 297
 in favour of 135
 in front of 132, 135
 in ones 392
 in place of 275
 in spite of all 274
 in the case that 297
 in the custom of 232
 in the hands of, in the care of 140
 in the way 318
 in whom 140
 inanimates 45
 indefinite article 24
 indefinite determinants 33
inguru 349, 393

inguruan 140
inolako 149
inongo 149
inor 148
inor ez 148
 inside 133
 instead of 141, 275
 intensifiers 116
 interjections 259
 interrogative 35, 253, 262
 affirmative 262
 general 253
 general interrogatives 262
 inquired element 263
 negatives 265
 partial 253
 partial interrogatives 262
 interrogative clause 285
iraki 233
iraun 233
iritzi/eritzi 233
 its 161
itxaron (itxoin) 234
itzel 119
izan 182, 225, 371
izan ezik 298
izenak 19
izugarri 119

J
jabetu 231
jan 187
jardun 233
jarraitu 234
jo 100
joan 245
jota 349
jotzeko 349
 just as well 258

K
-(k)ada 49
-(k)era 49
-(k)eria 49
-(k)eta 49
-ka 49, 108

ka 30
kabuz 139
-kada 386
kanpoan 133
 kantitatea 386
 kardinalak 31
kasa 139
 kausazko perpausak 291
kezkatu 231
ki 30
-ko 70, 84, 165
 koloreak 373
 konparaziozko perpausak 321
kontra 135
konturatu 231
 kontzesiboa 312
 koordinazio 271
 elkarritzak 271
 kortesiazko esapideak 377
kosta 229
-kuntza 49

L

-la eta 295
labur 155
 lack 229
laga 229
lagundu 227
laket 235
-lako 291
lar 328
 leave 227, 229
 less 130
 let 227
leun 155
 like 315, 319, 320
 like that 258
 little 117
 look for 136
 looking for 136
luze 155

M

maileguak 11
 maiztasuna 337
 many times 339

mathematical operations 388
 measurements 384
menpean 141
 menperakuntza 280
 konpletiboko perpa 280
 mine 160
 modal clauses 315
 moduzko perpausak 315
 months 355
 moon 367
 more 322
 more or less 393
 morfologia 105
 morfologiari sarrera 17
 morphology 17, 105
 most 323
 mugatzaile zehaztugabeak 33
 must 231
 my own 160

N

-n 299
-n bezala 315
-n bezalako(a) 315
-n legez 320
-n moduan 318
-n moduko(a) 318
-na 391
nahiko 116
nahiko (aski) 116
nahiz eta 313
 nearby 140
 need to 231
 negative sentences 53
 negatives 254
 neither 145, 272, 277
 neither... nor... 277
neu 159
neuk ere 162
neure 160
 next to 132
-nez 319
-nez gero 294
ni 22, 159
nik 56
nik neuk 162

- nire** 60, 160
ni(re)gan 88
ni(re)gana 92
ni(re)ganaino 96
ni(re)ganantz 94
ni(re)gandik 90
ni(re)gatik 97
nirekin 66
niretzat 64
niri 58
nitaz 68
no 149
-no 165
nogaz 67, 69
noiz 333
 arte 336
noiz arte is not noraino 337
noizdanik 334
noizera 337
noizero 338
noizetik 337
noizko 335
noiztik (noizdanik) 334
nola 110
nola edo hala 151
nola is not nolako 112
nola (zelan) 107
nola/nolako 107
nolako (zelako) 111
nominalisation 238
 for what (purpose) 244
 in what 241
 problem cases 245
 relative clauses 246
 to what (outcome) 243
 verbs that do not accept 244
 what 238
nominalizazioa 238
 zertan? 241
 zertara? 243
 zertarako? 244
non 39
non behera 142
non gora 142
non zehar 137
nondik 39, 74

none of 149
nongo 82
no-one 148
nor 35, 36, 39, 51, 183, 191
nor (edin) 205
nor edo nor 149
nor (izan) 199
nora 39, 76
noraino 80
norako 86
norantz 78
norbait 148, 149
norekin 35, 39, 66
noren 35, 39
 esku 140
 inguruan 140
 kontura 139
 menpean 141
norengan 88
norengana 92
norenganaino 96
norenganantz 94
norengatik 97
norentzat 39, 64
norgura 152
nori 35, 39, 40, 58
nork 35, 56
nornahi 152
nor-nori 183, 191
nor-nori (izan) 199
nor-nori-nork 183, 191
nor-nori-nork (ukan) 201
nor-nork 183, 191
nor-nork (ezan) 205
nor-nork (ukan) 200
nortzat 100
nortzuei 40
nortzuk 35
not at all 120
not even I 162
not only ...but ... (also)... 298
not...also 272
nothing but 122
nouns 19
 countable 155
 measurable 155

numbers 381
numerals 31

O

-ø 108
ohi 232
-oi 58
-ok 56
-okin 66
omen 236
omen (ei) 235
-on 60
on 130, 138
on one side... from the other... 278
on own accord 139
on own account 139
on the other hand 273
on top of 130
ondoan 132
ondoko 133
one 124
one at a time 392
one by one 392
-ongan 88
-ongana 92
-onganaino 96
-ongandik 90
-ongatik 97
on-the-dot 348
-ontzat 64
or (excluding) 276
or (non-excluding) 275
orain 352
oraingoan 340
ordinalak 32
ordinals 32
ordua 343
orduan 278
orthography 3
ortografia 3
ortzi 364
oso 116, 119
oste 364
ostean 132
-otako 82
-otan 72

-otara 76
-otaraino 80
-otarako 86
-otarantz 78
-otatik 74
ote 235
other 127
out of 133
outside 133
over 137
-oz 68

P

palatal consonants 6
pare bat 187
participles 54, 108
partitive 54
partizipioak 54, 108
pasa 229
pass time 229
pensatu 232
percentages 389
personal pronouns 22
pertsone-izenordainak 22
phonetics 12
pila bat 33, 43
pisua 385
posposizioak 129
postpositions 129
precisely 348
prefixes 167
prices 384
pronouns
 intensive personal 159
 reciprocal 163
 reflexive 163
pronunciation 3

Q

quantity 386
quite 116, 117, 118

R

-r 47
-(r)ekin 66
-(r)en 60

-**(r)en bat** 126
 -**(r)en batzuk** 126
 -**(r)(en)ganaino** 96
 -**(r)(en)ganantz** 94
 -**(r)(en)gatik** 97
 -**(r)engan** 88
 -**(r)engana** 92
 -**(r)engandik** 90
 -**(r)entzat** 64
 -**(r)i** 58
 -**(r)ik** 108
 -**(r)ik** 53
 -**(r)ik ...-en** 323
 rain 366
 rather 116, 117
 relative clauses 299
 remain 233
 remember 230
 repetition 121
 -**riko** 301
 -**ro** 30

S

salneurriak 384
samar 116, 117
 same 315
sano 118
sasoiz 352
 scoring 390
 search for 136
 seasons 355
 scek 136
 sensations 369
 senses 373
 sentences
 focus 28
 simple sentences 28
 topic 29
 sentipenak 369
 several 125
 should 231
 similar 258
 since 294
 since what time? 345
 since when 334
 since when (ablative) 74

sintaxis
 perpaus bakuna 253
 -**ska** 165
 so 272, 278, 324
 so as to 290
 so much 324
 some 125
 some 126
 someone 148, 149
 somewhat 117
 sorry 380
 stop 227
 subordination 280
 completive clause 280
 sufficiently 116
 suffixes 165
 adverb 167
 noun and adjective 165
 pseudo 168
 verb 166
 superlatives 54
 surround 140
 syntax
 simple clauses 253

T

-**ta** 108
 -**tako** 301
 tanteoa 390
 tastes 376
 temporal
 clauses 303
 expressions 348, 352
tenore 343
 tense
 future-in-the-past 198
 intransitive 188
 past habitual tense 198
 remote past tense 198
 thank goodness 258
 thank you 380
 thanks to 139
 that 299, 324
 that is why 279
 that kind of thing 258
 that many 324

the one... the other 277
 think 232
 thinking about doing something 290
 this time 340
 through 136, 137
 throughout 137
-tila 165
 time 333
 to 30
 to be made to 233
 to when 337
 too 145, 328
 too much 323
 topic 30
 totally 120, 122
 towards (directional) 78
 tremendous 119
truke 141
-tto 165
 two of us 391
-txa 165
txiki 121, 155
txikia 121
txit 120
-txo 165
-txu 165
-t(z)ea 239, 246
-t(z)eak 247
-t(z)eari 247
-t(z)earren 290, 295
-t(z)eko 244, 246, 289
-t(z)eko asmotan 290
-t(z)eko moduan 319
-t(z)eko moduko(a) 319
-t(z)ekotan 290
-t(z)en 241, 246
-t(z)era 243, 246, 288
-t(z)erakoan 304
-t(z)erik 241
t(z)erik 247
-tza 49
-tzat 100

U

ukan 182
ulertu 228

un- 130
 under 130
 under the command of 141
 underneath 130
 understand 228
 until
 until what time 346, 348
 until when 336
 up 142
 up to me 139
urtaroak 357
 urteak 356
uste 232
 utterly 122
utzi 227

V

velocity 389
 verbs
 accompanying verbs 218
 auxiliary 219
 compound verbs 216
 imperative 207, 209
 indicative 189
 past 197
 mode 188
 participle 207
 past tense 214
 periphrastic 176
 periphrastic form 208
 potential 203
 present
 indicative 191
 nor (izan) 192
 nor-nori (izan) 192
 nor-nori-nork (ukan) 195
 nor-nork (ukan) 194
 present tense 212
 problematic 224
 special verbs 227
 synthetic 176
 synthetic form 208, 212
 tense 187
 very 119, 121
 via 137
 vowels 12

pronunciation of 4

W

wait for 136
 waiting for 136
 wanting to 370
 weather 364
 week 354
 weight 385
 what 68, 239
 what a... 256
 what about 138
 what is it like? 114
 what is the time 343
 what side 135
 what sort of 111
 when 333
 where 74, 88
 where (inessive) 72
 where, up to 80
 where, up to 80
 who 299
 who (ergative) 56
 whoever 148
 whom, for 97
 whom, from 90
 whom, to 92
 whom, towards 94
 whom, up to 96
 whose (possessive-genitive) 60
 why 291
 with who(m) (comitative) 66
 without 130
 word order 261

X

-xka 165

Y

years 356

Z

-z gero 297
zaila izan 245
zain 136
 zaporeak 376

zatikiak 388
zazpina 392
zazpinaka 392
ze... -n! 257
 zehar galderako perpausa 285
zeharo 120
zein 36, 42
zein...-n! 256
zeini 40
zeintzuk 35
zelan 107, 110
zenbait 33, 43
 zenbakiak 31, 381
zenbat 42
zenbat ...-n! 257
zenbat aldiz? 339
zenbat bider? 339
zenbatasuna 384
zenbatetan? 339
zenbati 40
zer 35, 42
zer moduz/zer moduzko 114
zer moduzko(a/ak) 114
zer ordu 343
zer ordutako? 347
zer ordutan 345
zer ordutara arte? 348
zer ordutara? 346
zer ordutarako? 347
zer ordutatik? 345
zera baino ...-ago 328
zerekin 35
zeren 35
zeren alde 135
zeren arabera 137
zeren bidez (bitartez) 136
zeren bila 136
zeren truke 141
zeren zain 136
zerez 68
zeri 35, 40
zeri buruz 138
zeri esker 139
zerk 35
zertara 288
zertarako 289

zertaz 68
zertzuk 35
zu 22
zuei 58
zuek 22, 56
zuekin 66
zuen 60
zuengan 88
zuengana 92
zuenganaino 96
zuenganantz 94
zuengandik 90
zuengatik 97
zuentzat 64
zuetaz 68
zuk 56
zure 60
zu(re)gan 88
zu(re)gana 92
zu(re)ganaino 96
zu(re)ganantz 94
zu(re)gandik 90
zu(re)gatik 97
zurekin 66
zuretzat 64
zuri 58
zutaz 68